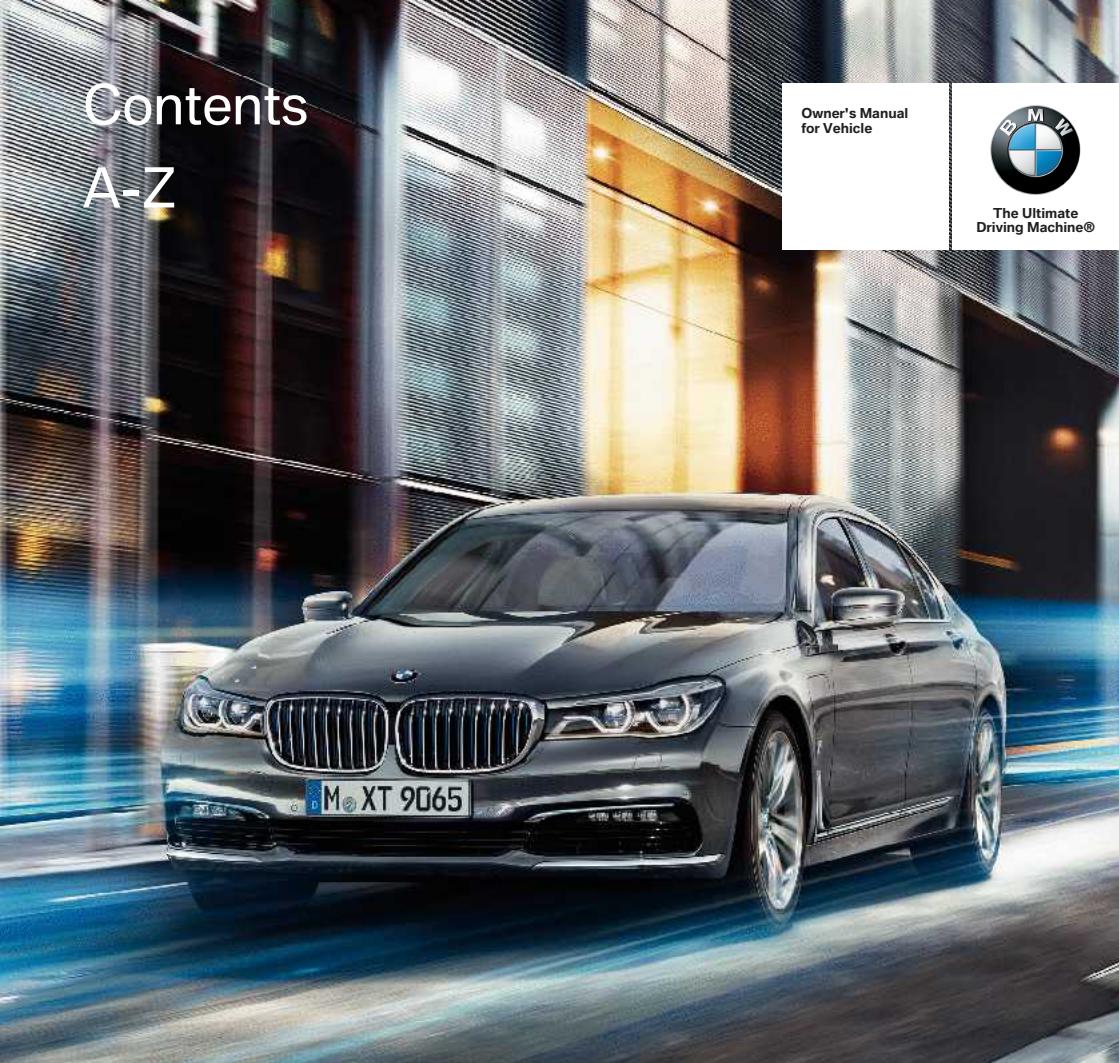


# Contents A-Z

Owner's Manual  
for Vehicle



The Ultimate  
Driving Machine®



# THE BMW 7 SERIES PLUG- IN HYBRID. OWNER'S MANUAL.

**i** PERFORMANCE



# 7 Series Plug-In Hybrid

## Owner's Manual for the vehicle

Thank you for choosing a BMW.

The more familiar you are with your vehicle, the better control you will have on the road. We therefore strongly suggest:

Read this Owner's Manual before starting off in your new BMW. Also use the Integrated Owner's Manual in your vehicle. It contains important information on vehicle operation that will help you make full use of the technical features available in your BMW. The manual also contains information designed to enhance operating reliability and road safety, and to contribute to maintaining the value of your BMW.

Any updates made after the editorial deadline can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

You can find supplementary information in the additional brochures in the onboard literature.

We wish you a safe and enjoyable ride.



The Owner's Manual is available in many countries as an app.  
Additional information on the Internet:

[www.bmw.com/bmw\\_drivers\\_guide](http://www.bmw.com/bmw_drivers_guide)

© 2017 Bayerische Motoren Werke  
Aktiengesellschaft  
Munich, Germany  
Reprinting, including excerpts, only with the written  
consent of BMW AG, Munich.  
US English VI/17, 07 17 490  
Printed on environmentally friendly paper, bleached  
without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

# Contents

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic or item is by using the index, refer to page 352.

The topics of Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can be called up via the following Owner's Manuals: Integrated Owner's Manual on the Control Display in the vehicle, Online Owner's Manual, BMW Driver's Guide App.

## 6 Information

### At a glance

- 16 Cockpit
- 21 Idle state, standby state, and drive-ready state
- 23 iDrive
- 32 BMW Gesture Control
- 35 Voice activation system
- 38 BMW Touch Command
- 40 General settings
- 53 Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle
- 55 BMW eDRIVE
- 57 Safety of the hybrid system

### Controls

- 60 Opening and closing
- 86 Settings
- 104 Transporting children safely
- 109 Driving
- 129 Displays
- 149 Lights
- 157 Safety
- 188 Driving stability control systems
- 192 Driver assistance systems
- 226 Driving comfort
- 228 Climate control
- 242 Interior equipment
- 251 Storage compartments
- 256 Cargo area

### Driving tips

- 264 Things to remember when driving
- 268 Saving fuel

### Mobility

- 276 Charging the vehicle
- 285 Refueling
- 288 Fuel
- 290 Wheels and tires
- 314 Engine compartment
- 316 Engine oil
- 320 Coolant
- 322 Maintenance
- 324 Replacing components
- 327 Breakdown assistance
- 334 Care

### Reference

- 342 Technical data
- 344 Appendix
- 352 Everything from A to Z

# Information

## Using this Owner's Manual

### Orientation

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic is by using the index.

An initial overview of the vehicle is provided in the first chapter.

### Updates made after the editorial deadline

Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the following Owner's Manuals:

- ▷ Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.
- ▷ Online Owner's Manual.
- ▷ BMW Driver's Guide app.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

### Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication

The Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can be obtained as printed book from the service center.

The topics of Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can be called up via the following Owner's Manuals:

- ▷ Integrated Owner's Manual on the Control Display in the vehicle.
- ▷ Online Owner's Manual.
- ▷ BMW Driver's Guide app.

## Additional sources of information

### Dealer's service center

A dealer's service center will be glad to answer questions at any time.

### Internet

The Owner's Manual and general information on BMW, for example on technology, are available on the Internet: [www.bmwusa.com](http://www.bmwusa.com).

### BMW Driver's Guide App



The Owner's Manual is available in many countries as an app. Additional information on the Internet:

[www.bmw.com/bmw\\_drivers\\_guide](http://www.bmw.com/bmw_drivers_guide)

## Symbols and displays

### Symbols in the Owner's Manual

⚠ Indicates precautions that must be followed precisely in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury and serious damage to the vehicle.

→ Marks the end of a specific item of information.

🌐 Refers to measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.

"..." Identifies display texts in vehicle used to select individual functions.

... Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.

»...« Identifies the answers generated by the voice activation system.

## Action steps

Action steps to be carried out are presented as numbered list. The steps must be carried out in the defined order.

1. First action step.
2. Second action step.

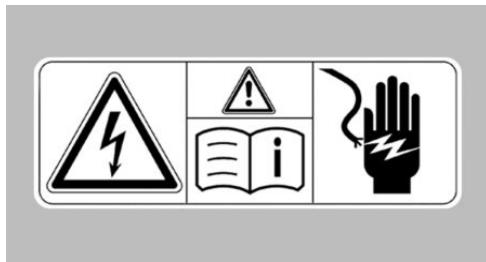
## Enumerations

Enumerations without mandatory order or alternative possibilities are presented as list with bullet points.

- ▷ First possibility.
- ▷ Second possibility.

## Symbols on vehicle components

 Indicates that you should consult the relevant section of this Owner's Manual for information on a particular part or assembly.



Indicates, on certain parts or assemblies, that incorrect use of high-voltage equipment or of orange-colored high-voltage components results in the risk of life-threatening injury from electric shock.

## Vehicle features and options

This Owner's Manual describes all models and all standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series. Therefore, this Owner's Manual also describes

and illustrates features and functions that are not available in your vehicle, for example because of the selected optional features or the country-specific version.

This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

For any options and equipment not described in this Owner's Manual, refer to the Supplementary Owner's Manuals.

Your BMW dealer's service center is happy to answer any questions that you may have about the features and options applicable to your vehicle.

## Status of the Owner's Manual

### Basic information

The manufacturer of your vehicle pursues a policy of constant development that is conceived to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards. In rare cases, therefore, the features described in this Owner's Manual may differ from those in your vehicle.

### Updates made after the editorial deadline

Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the following Owner's Manuals:

- ▷ Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.
- ▷ Online Owner's Manual.
- ▷ BMW Driver's Guide app.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

# For Your Own Safety

## Intended use

Observe the following when using the vehicle:

- ▷ Owner's Manual.
- ▷ Information on the vehicle. Do not remove stickers.
- ▷ Technical vehicle data.
- ▷ The traffic, speed, and safety laws where the vehicle is driven.
- ▷ Vehicle documents and statutory documents.

## Warranty

Your vehicle is technically configured for the operating conditions and registration requirements applying in the country of first delivery, also known as homologation. If your vehicle is to be operated in a different country it might be necessary to adapt your vehicle to potentially differing operating conditions and registration requirements. If your vehicle does not comply with the homologation requirements in a certain country you may not be able to lodge warranty claims for your vehicle there. Further information on warranty is available from a dealer's service center.

## Maintenance and repairs

Advanced technology, e. g. the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires suitable maintenance and repair work.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you entrust corresponding procedures to a BMW dealer's service center. If you choose to use another service facility, BMW recommends use of a facility that performs work, for instance maintenance and repair, according to BMW specifications with properly trained personnel, referred to in this Owner's Manual as "another qualified service center or repair shop".

If work is performed improperly, for instance maintenance and repair, there is a risk of subsequent damage and related safety risks.

## Parts and accessories

BMW recommends the use of parts and accessory products approved by BMW.

Approved parts and accessories, and advice on their use and installation are available from a BMW dealer's service center.

BMW parts and accessories have been tested by BMW for their safety and suitability in BMW vehicles.

BMW warrants genuine BMW parts and accessories.

BMW does not evaluate whether each individual product from another manufacturer can be used with BMW vehicles without presenting a safety hazard, even if a country-specific official approval was issued. BMW does not evaluate whether these products are suitable for BMW vehicles under all usage conditions.

## California Proposition 65 Warning

California laws require us to state the following warning:

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash your hands after handling. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.

## Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly. Your vehicle is covered by the following warranties:

- ▷ New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- ▷ Rust Perforation Limited Warranty.
- ▷ Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty.
- ▷ Federal Emissions Performance Warranty.
- ▷ California Emission Control System Limited Warranty.

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

Your vehicle has been specifically adapted and designed to meet the particular operating conditions and homologation requirements in your country and continental region in order to deliver the full driving pleasure while the vehicle is operated under those conditions. If you wish to operate your vehicle in another country or region, you may be required to adapt your vehicle to meet different prevailing operating conditions and homologation requirements. You should also be aware of any applicable warranty limitations or exclusions for such country or region. In such case, please contact Customer Relations for further information.

## Maintenance

Maintain the vehicle regularly to sustain the road safety, operational reliability and the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Specifications for required maintenance measures:

- ▷ BMW Maintenance system
- ▷ Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models
- ▷ Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

If the vehicle is not maintained according to these specifications, this could result in seri-

ous damage to the vehicle. Such damage is not covered by the BMW New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

## Data memory

### General information

Electronic control devices are installed in the vehicle. Some of these are necessary for the vehicle to function safely or provide assistance during driving, for instance driver assistance systems. Furthermore, control devices facilitate comfort or infotainment functions.

Electronic control devices contain data memories, which are able to temporarily or permanently store information about the condition of the vehicle, component load, maintenance requirements, technical events or faults.

This information generally records the state of a component, a module, a system, or the environment, for instance:

- ▷ Operating states of system components, e.g., fill levels, tire pressure, battery status.
- ▷ Status messages for the vehicle and its individual components, e.g., wheel rotational speed, wheel speed, deceleration, transverse acceleration, engaged safety belt indicator.
- ▷ Malfunctions and faults in important system components, for instance lights and brakes.
- ▷ Information on vehicle-damaging events.
- ▷ Responses by the vehicle to special situations such as airbag deployment or engagement of the stability control systems.
- ▷ Ambient conditions, e.g., temperature, rain sensor signals.

The data is required to perform the control device functions. Furthermore, it also serves to recognize and correct malfunctions, and helps the vehicle manufacturer to optimize vehicle functions. The majority of this data is transient and is only processed within the vehicle itself.

Only a small proportion of the data is stored in event or fault memories and, if needed, in the vehicle key.

## Reading out data

When servicing, for instance during repairs, service processes, warranty cases, and quality assurance measures, this technical information can be read out from the vehicle together with the vehicle identification number. A dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop can read out the information. The socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis required by law in the vehicle is used to read out the data. The data is collected, processed, and used by the relevant organizations in the service network. The data documents the technical conditions of the vehicle, helps in locating faults and improving quality, and is transferred to the vehicle manufacturer, if needed.

Furthermore, the manufacturer has product monitoring duties to meet in line with product liability law. To fulfill these duties, the vehicle manufacturer needs technical data from the vehicle. Fault and event memories in the vehicle can be reset when a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop performs repair or servicing work.

Data on the scope of servicing work performed and maintenance records are stored in the vehicle by means of the service history and transferred to the vehicle manufacturer. The vehicle owner can contact a dealer's service center to object to the data being stored and transferred to the vehicle manufacturer. This objection applies for as long as the vehicle owner remains the proprietor of the vehicle.

## Data entry and data transfer into the vehicle

### General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, some data can be transferred into the vehicle when

using comfort and infotainment functions, for instance:

- ▷ Multimedia data such as music, films or photos for playback in an integrated multimedia system.
- ▷ Address book data for use in conjunction with an integrated hands-free system or an integrated navigation system.
- ▷ Entered navigation destinations.
- ▷ Data on the use of Internet services.

This data can be stored locally in the vehicle or is found on a device that has been connected to the vehicle, e.g., a smartphone, USB stick or MP3 player. If this data is stored in the vehicle, it can be deleted at any time. This data is only transmitted to third parties if expressly desired. This depends on the personal settings selected for using online services.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following comfort and individual settings can be stored in the vehicle and modified at any time, for instance:

- ▷ Settings for the seat and steering wheel positions.
- ▷ Suspension and climate control settings.
- ▷ Individual settings, for instance lighting in the car's interior.

## Control via mobile devices

Depending on the vehicle equipment, mobile devices connected to the vehicle, for instance smartphones, can be controlled via the vehicle control elements. The sound and picture from the mobile device can be played back and displayed through the multimedia system. Certain information is transferred to the mobile device at the same time. Depending on the type of connection, this includes, for instance position data and other general vehicle information.

This optimizes the way in which selected apps, for instance navigation or music playback, work.

There is no further interaction between the mobile device and the vehicle, for instance active access to vehicle data. How the data will be processed further is determined by the provider of the particular app being used. The extent of the possible settings depends on the respective app and the operating system of the mobile device.

## Services

### General information

If the vehicle has a wireless network connection, this enables data to be exchanged between the vehicle and other systems. The wireless network connection is realized via an in-vehicle transmitter and receiver unit or via personal mobile devices brought into the vehicle, for instance smartphones. This wireless network connection enables 'online functions' to be used. These include online services and apps supplied by the vehicle manufacturer or by other providers.

### Services from the vehicle manufacturer

Where online services from the vehicle manufacturer are concerned, the corresponding functions are described in the appropriate place, for instance the Owner's Manual or manufacturer's website. The relevant legal information pertaining to data protection is provided there too. Personal data may be used to perform online services. Data is exchanged over a secure connection, for instance with the IT systems of the vehicle manufacturer intended for this purpose. Any collection, processing, and use of personal data above and beyond that needed to provide the services must always be based on a legal permission, contractual arrangement or consent.

In addition, the vehicle manufacturer evaluates anonymized information on transport infrastructure and how the infotainment system is used. This information cannot be traced back to individual vehicles or people. Evaluating the

data enables the manufacturer to further improve its products or services, for instance by incorporating the most up-to-date traffic bulletins. The data transfer feature can be deactivated in the vehicle. Certain services and functions, some of which are subject to a charge, can be deactivated by the driver. It is also possible to activate or deactivate the data connection as a whole. That is, with the exception of functions and services required by law such as Assist systems.

### Services from other providers

When using online services from other providers, these services are the responsibility of the relevant provider and subject to their data privacy conditions and terms of use. The vehicle manufacturer has no influence on the content exchanged during this process. Information on the way in which personal data is collected and used in relation to services from third parties, the scope of such data, and its purpose, can be obtained from the relevant service provider.

## Event Data Recorder EDR

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder EDR. The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- ▷ How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- ▷ Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were fastened.
- ▷ How far, if at all, the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal.

- ▶ How fast the vehicle was traveling.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

EDR data is recorded by your vehicle only if a nontrivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data, for instance name, gender, age, and crash location, are recorded.

However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

## Vehicle identification number



The vehicle identification number can be found in the engine compartment, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.



The vehicle identification number can also be found behind the windshield.

## Reporting safety defects

### For US customers

The following only applies to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration NHTSA, in addition to notifying BMW of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or BMW of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

## For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may call the toll-free hotline 1-800-333-0510. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety>.



## At a glance

This chapter shows the arrangement of the buttons, switches and displays. Moreover, you will become familiar with the available control concepts and options quickly.

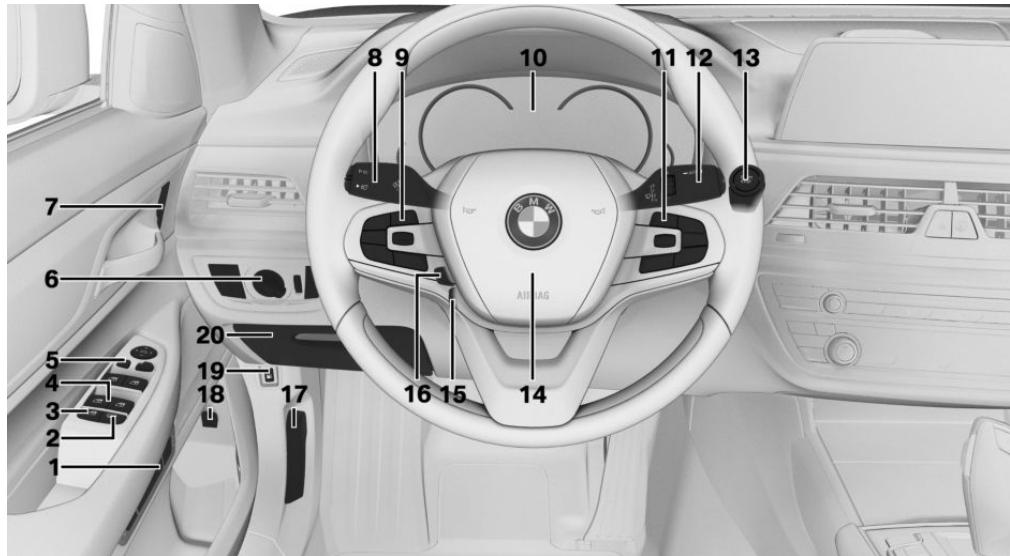
# Cockpit

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due

to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

## In the vicinity of the steering wheel

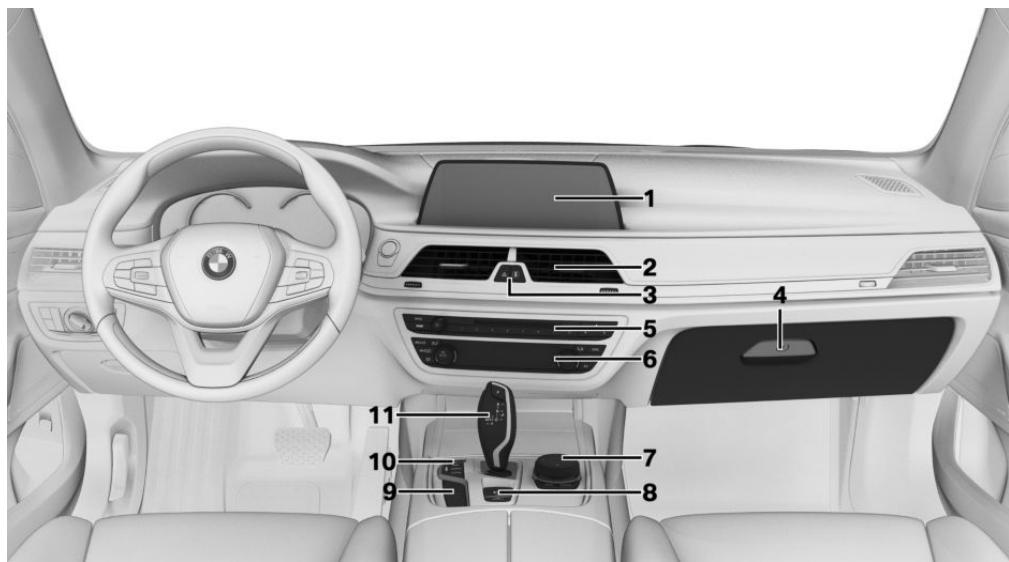


1 Seating comfort features	3 Safety switch for the windows and roller sunblinds
	88
	Memory function 98
	Massage function 99
2	Roller sunblind in the rear window 81
4	Power windows 80
5	Exterior mirror operation 96
6	Lights
	Front fog lights 153
	Night Vision 171

	Light switch 149		Cruise control on/off 192
	Lights off		Active Cruise Control on/off 195
	Daytime running lights 151		Steering and lane control assistant on/off 201
	Parking lights 149		Cruise control: store speed
	Automatic headlight control 150		Pause or continue cruise control
	Adaptive light functions 151		
	High-beam Assistant 151		Active Cruise Control: increase distance
	Low beams 149		Active Cruise Control: reduce distance
	Instrument lighting 153		With steering and lane control assistant: adjust distance
	Right roadside parking light 150		
	Left roadside parking light 150		
			Cruise control rocker switch
<b>7</b>	Central locking system	<b>10</b>	Instrument cluster 129
	Unlock 69	<b>11</b>	Steering wheel buttons, right
	Lock 69		Entertainment source, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
<b>8</b>	Steering column stalk, left		Volume, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
	Turn signal 118		Voice activation system 35
	High beams, headlight flasher 118		Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
	High-beam Assistant 151		Thumbwheel for selection lists 142
	Onboard Computer 142	<b>12</b>	Steering column stalk, right
<b>9</b>	Steering wheel buttons, left		

	Wiper <a href="#">118</a>		16 <a href="#">Adjust steering wheel 98</a>
	Rain sensor <a href="#">119</a>		17 <a href="#">Unlock hood 315</a>
	Clean the windshield and head-lights <a href="#">120</a>		18 <a href="#">Open/close tailgate 72</a>
	13 <a href="#">Switch drive-ready state on/off 109</a>		19 <a href="#">Tank vent 285</a>
	14 <a href="#">Horn, entire surface</a>		20 <a href="#">Glove compartment 252</a>
	15 <a href="#">Heated steering wheel 98</a>		

## In the vicinity of the center console

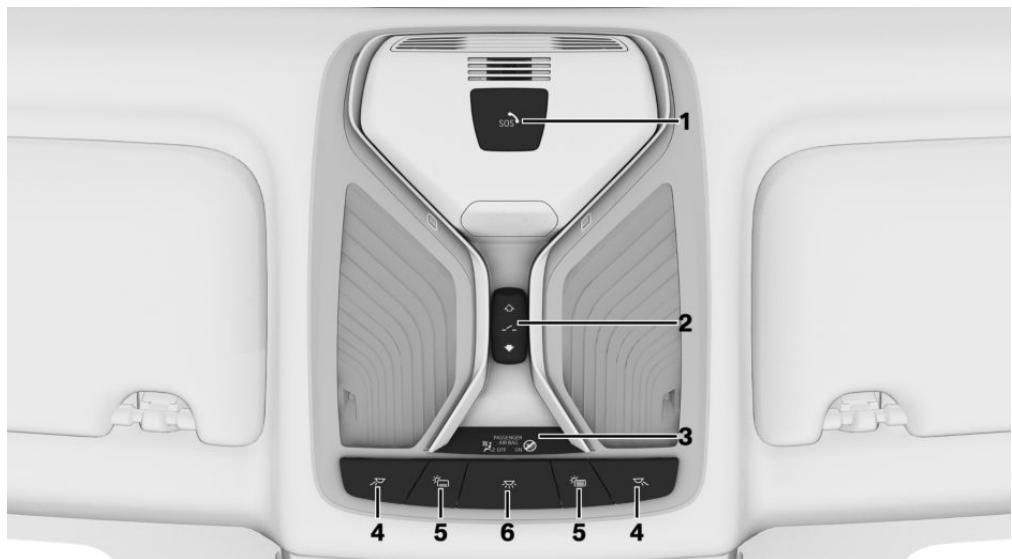


1 Control Display [23](#)

2 Ventilation [232](#)

<p><b>3</b>  Hazard warning system <a href="#">327</a></p> <p><b>4</b>  Intelligent Safety <a href="#">160</a></p> <p><b>5</b> Glove compartment <a href="#">251</a></p> <p><b>6</b> Radio/multimedia, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication <a href="#">6</a></p> <p><b>7</b> Automatic climate control <a href="#">228</a></p> <p><b>8</b>  Controller with buttons <a href="#">24</a></p> <p><b>9</b>  Parking brake <a href="#">115</a></p> <p><b>10</b>  Automatic Hold <a href="#">116</a></p> <p><b>11</b>  eDRIVE <a href="#">111</a></p> <p><b>12</b>  PDC Park Distance Control <a href="#">205</a></p> <p>Without Surround View: rearview camera <a href="#">209</a></p> <p>Surround View <a href="#">211</a></p> <p>Crossing traffic warning <a href="#">223</a></p> <p>Parking assistant <a href="#">218</a></p>	<p><b>13</b>  Surround View: Panorama View <a href="#">211</a></p> <p><b>14</b>  Air suspension level adjustment <a href="#">226</a></p> <p><b>15</b>  Driving Dynamics Control <a href="#">126</a></p> <p><b>16</b>  SPORT driving mode</p> <p><b>17</b>  COMFORT driving mode</p> <p><b>18</b>  ECO PRO driving mode</p> <p><b>19</b>  ADAPTIVE driving mode</p> <p><b>20</b>  DSC Dynamic Stability Control <a href="#">188</a></p> <p><b>21</b>  Steptronic transmission selector lever <a href="#">122</a></p>
--	--

## In the vicinity of the roofliner



1	 SOS	Emergency Request, SOS <a href="#">329</a>	5		Depending on the vehicle equipment: opening the rear sliding visor <a href="#">84</a>
2		Glass sunroof <a href="#">82</a>			Depending on the vehicle equipment: closing the rear sliding visor <a href="#">84</a>
3	 PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON	Indicator light, front-seat passenger airbag <a href="#">160</a>	6		Interior lights <a href="#">153</a>
4		Reading lights <a href="#">154</a>			

# Idle state, standby state, and drive-ready state

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

## General information

Depending on the situation, the vehicle is in one of the three states:

- ▷ Idle state.
- ▷ Standby state.
- ▷ Drive-ready state.

## Idle state

### Concept

If the vehicle is in idle state, it is switched off. All electronic systems/power consumers are deactivated.

### General information

The vehicle is in idle state prior to opening from the outside and after exiting and locking.

### Safety information

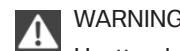


#### WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, e.g., with a wheel chock.◀



#### WARNING

Unattended children or animals can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, e.g., due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the remote control with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.◀

### Automatic idle state

The idle state is automatically established under the following conditions:

- ▷ After several minutes, if no operation takes place on the vehicle.
- ▷ If the charge state of the vehicle battery is low.
- ▷ Depending on the setting via iDrive, if one of the front doors is opened when exiting the vehicle.

The idle state is not automatically established while a phone call is active.

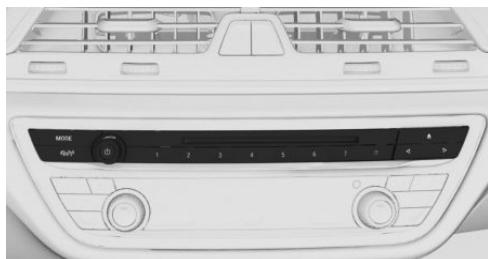
## Establishing idle state when opening the front doors

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4. "Turn off after door opening"

## Manual idle state

To establish idle state in the vehicle after end of trip:



Hold button down until the OFF indicator on the instrument cluster goes out.

## Standby state

### Concept

When standby state is switched on, most functions can be used while the vehicle is stationary. Desired settings can be adjusted.

### General information

The vehicle is in standby state after opening the front doors.

## Display in the instrument cluster



OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster. The drivetrain is switched off and standby state switched on.

## Drive-ready state

### Concept

Switching on drive-ready state corresponds to starting the engine.

### General information

Some functions, such as DSC Dynamic Stability Control, can only be used with drive-ready state switched on.

Follow further information on the drive-ready state, refer to page 109.

### Switching on drive-ready state



Drive-ready state is switched on via the Start/Stop button:

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

## Display in the instrument cluster



When the drive-ready state is switched on, READY is displayed in the instrument cluster.

### Switching off drive-ready state

Press the Start/Stop button to switch off drive-ready state. The vehicle switches into standby state.

# iDrive

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

## Concept

The iDrive combines the functions of many switches. These functions can be operated via the Controller or touchscreen.

## Safety information

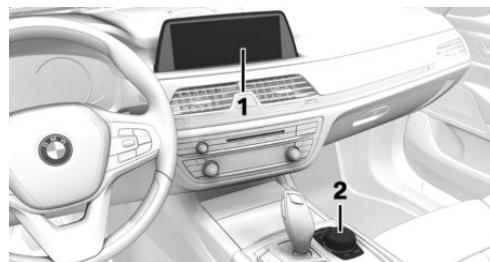


### WARNING

Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of an accident. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. If necessary, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.◀

## Operation

### Overview



- 1 Control Display with touchscreen
- 2 Controller with touchpad

### Control Display

#### General information

To clean the Control Display, follow the care instructions, refer to page 337.

In the case of very high temperatures on the Control Display, for instance due to intense solar radiation, the brightness may be reduced down to complete deactivation. Once the temperature is reduced, for instance through shade or air conditioning, the normal functions are restored.

#### Safety information



### NOTE

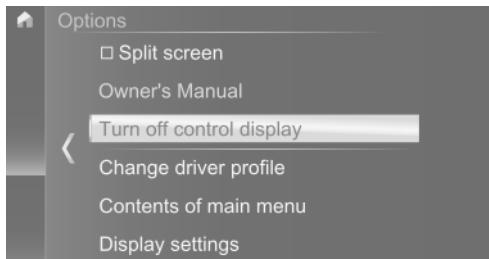
Objects in the area in the front of the Control Display can shift and damage the Control Display. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not place objects in the area in front of the Control Display.◀

### Switching on

1. Turn on standby state.
2. Press the controller.

## Switching off

1.  Press button.
2. "Turn off control display"



## Controller

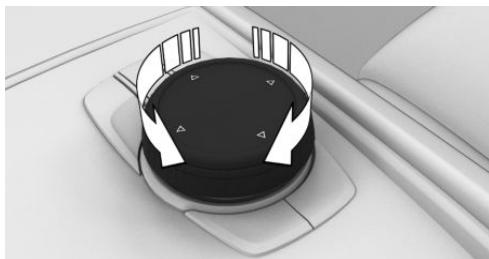
### General information

The buttons can be used to open the menus directly. The Controller can be used to select menu items and enter the settings.

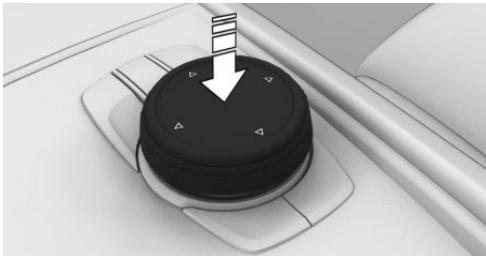
Some iDrive functions can be operated using the touchpad on the Controller, refer to page [28](#).

### Operation

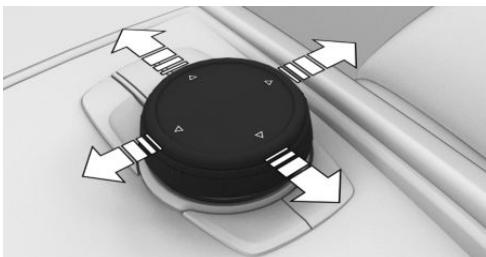
► Turn.



► Press.



► Move in four directions.



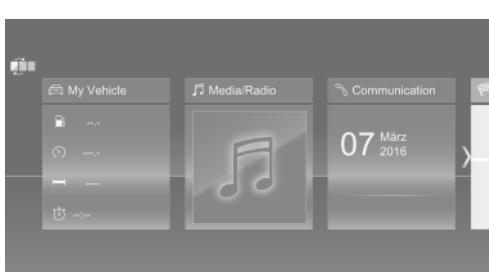
### Buttons on the Controller

Button	Function
	Press once: call up main menu. Press twice: display all menu items of the main menu.
	Open the Communication menu.
	Open the Media/Radio menu.
	Open destination input menu for navigation.
	Open navigation map.
	Press once: open the previous display. Press and hold: open the menus used last.
	Open the Options menu.

# Operating with the Controller

## Opening the main menu

Press button.



The main menu is displayed.

All iDrive functions can be called up via the main menu.

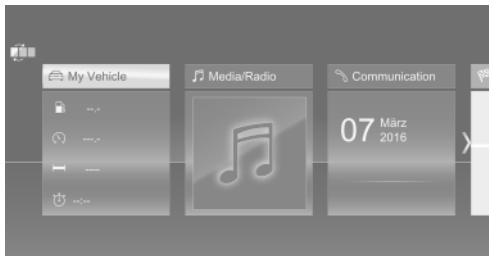
## Adapting the main menu

1. Press the button twice.  
All menu items of the main menu are displayed.
2. Select a menu item.
3. To move the menu item to the desired position, tilt the Controller to the right or left.

## Selecting menu items

Highlighted menu items can be selected.

1. Turn the Controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.



2. Press the Controller.

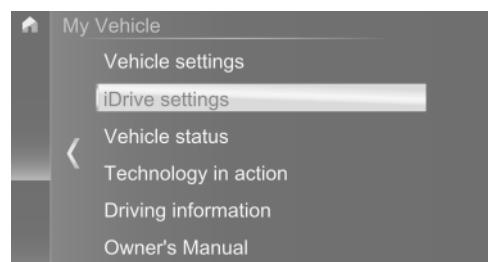
## Menu items in the Owner's Manual

In the Owner's Manual, menu items that can be selected are set in quotation marks, e.g., "iDrive settings".

## Changing between displays

After a menu item is selected, for instance "iDrive settings", a new display appears.

- ▷ Move the Controller to the left.  
Closes the current display and shows the previous display.
- ▷ Press button.  
The previous display opens.
- ▷ Move the Controller to the right.  
New display is opened.



The arrow indicates that additional displays can be opened.

## Opening recently used menus

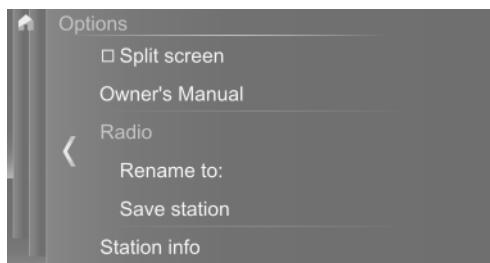
The recently used menus can be displayed.

Press and hold this button.

## Opening the Options menu

Press button.

The "Options" menu is displayed.

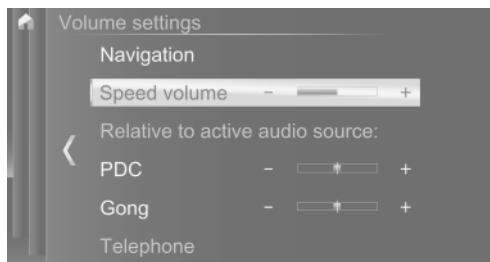


The Options menu consists of various areas:

- ▷ Screen settings, for instance "Split screen".
- ▷ Control options for the selected main menu, for instance for "Media/Radio".
- ▷ If applicable, further operating options for the selected menu, for instance "Save station".

## Changing settings

1. Select a field.
2. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is displayed.



3. Press the Controller.

## Activating/deactivating the functions

Several menu items are preceded by a checkbox. The checkbox indicates whether the function is activated or deactivated. Selecting the menu item activates or deactivates the function.

Function is activated.

Function is deactivated.

## Entering letters and numbers

### General information

Letters and numbers can be entered using the Controller or the touchscreen. The keyboard's display changes automatically.

### Input

1. Turn the Controller: select letters or numbers.
2. **OK** : confirm entry.

### Deleting

Symbol	Function
◀	Press the Controller: delete letters or number.
◀	Hold the Controller down: delete all letters or numbers.

### Switching between upper/lower case, numbers and characters

Depending on the menu, you can switch between entering upper and lower case, letters and numbers.

Symbol	Function
ABC	Enter the letters.
1@+	Enter the numbers.
abc or ABC	Change between capital and lower-case letters.

### Entry comparison

When entering names and addresses, the choice is narrowed down with every letter entered and letters may be added automatically.

Entries are continuously compared with data stored in the vehicle.

- ▷ Only those letters are offered during entry for which data is available.

- ▶ Destination search: place names can be entered in all languages that are available in iDrive.

## Using alphabetical lists

For alphabetical lists with more than 30 entries, the letters for which there is an entry are displayed at the left edge.

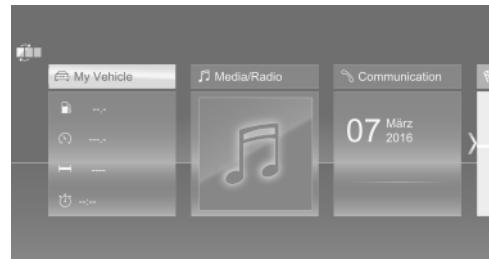
1. Turn the controller to the left or right quickly.  
All letters for which there are entries are displayed on the left edge.
2. Select the first letter of the desired entry.  
The first entry of the selected letter is displayed.

All menu items of the main menu are displayed.

2. Drag the menu item to the desired position on the right or left.

## Selecting menu items

Tap desired menu item.



## Operating via touchscreen

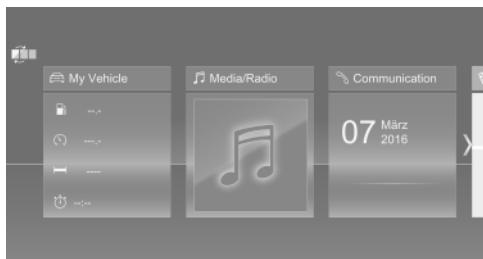
### General information

The Control Display is equipped with a touchscreen.

Touch screen with your fingers. Do not use any objects.

### Opening the main menu

⌂ Tap on symbol.



All iDrive functions can be called up via the main menu.

### Adapting the main menu

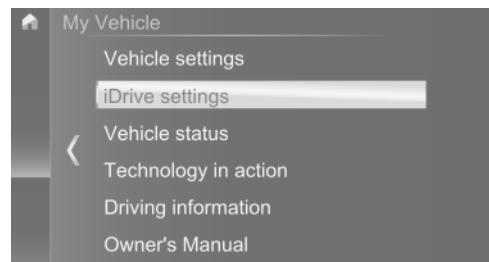
1. ⌂ Tap on symbol.

### Menu items in the Owner's Manual

In the Owner's Manual, menu items that can be selected are set in quotation marks, e.g., "iDrive settings".

### Changing between displays

After a menu item is selected, a new display opens.



The arrow indicates that additional displays can be opened.

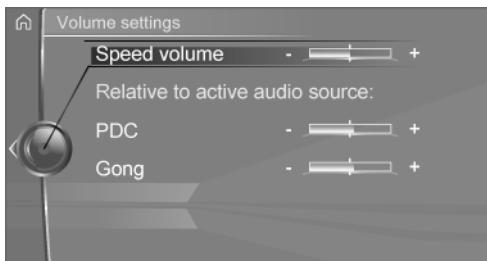
- ▶ Swipe to the left.
- ▶ Tap on symbol.

New display is opened.

### Changing settings

Settings such as volumes can be changed via the touchscreen.

- ▶ Slide in the selected field to the right or left, until the desired setting is displayed.
- ▶ - , + Tap on symbol.



## Activating/deactivating the functions

Several menu items are preceded by a checkbox. The checkbox indicates whether the function is activated or deactivated. Selecting the menu item activates or deactivates the function.

Function is activated.

Function is deactivated.

## Entering letters and numbers

### General information

Letters and numbers can be entered using the controller or the touchscreen.

The keyboard's display changes automatically.

Symbol	Function
◀	Tapping the symbol: delete the letter or number.
◀	Tapping and holding the symbol for an extended period: delete all letters or numbers.

### Switching between upper/lower case, numbers and characters

Symbol	Function
ABC	Enter the letters.
1@+	Enter the numbers.
ABC or abc	Change between capital and lower-case letters.

### Operating navigation map

The navigation map can be moved with the touchscreen.

Function	Operation
Enlarge/shrink map	Drag in or out with the fingers.

## Touchpad

### General information

Some iDrive functions can be operated using the touchpad on the controller.

### Selecting functions

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Touchpad"
4. Select the desired setting.
  - ▶ "Speller": enter letters and numbers.
  - ▶ "Map": using the map.
  - ▶ "Search fields": write letters without selecting the list field.
  - ▶ "Audio feedback": pronounces entered letters and numbers.

### Entering letters and numbers

Entering letters requires some practice at the beginning. When entering, pay attention to the following:

- ▷ The system distinguishes between upper and lower-case letters and numbers. To make entries, it may be necessary to change between upper and lower-case letters, numbers and characters, refer to page 26.
- ▷ Enter characters as they are displayed on the Control Display.
- ▷ Always enter associated characters, such as accents or periods so that the letter can be clearly recognized. The set language determines what input is possible. Where necessary, enter special characters via the Controller.

## Entering special characters

Input	Operation
Delete a character.	Swipe to the left on the touchpad.
Enter a blank space.	Swipe to the right in the center of the touchpad.
Enter a hyphen.	Swipe to the right in the upper area of the touchpad.
Enter an underscore.	Swipe to the right in the lower area of the touchpad.

## Using the map

The map in the navigation system can be moved via the touchpad.

Function	Operation
Move map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
Enlarge/shrink map.	Drag in or out on the touchpad with fingers.
Display menu.	Tap once.

## Split screen

### General information

Additional information can be displayed in several menus on the right side of the split screen, e.g., information from the onboard computer.

In the divided screen view, the so-called split screen, this information remains visible even when switching to another menu.

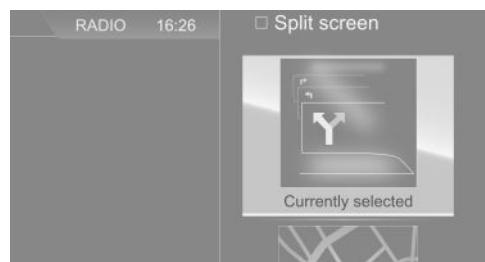
### Switching the split screen on/off

1.  Press button.
2. "Split screen"

### Selecting the display

The display can be selected in menus, where the split screen is supported.

1. Move the Controller to the right until the split screen is selected.
2. Press the Controller.



3. Select the desired setting.

### Specifying the number of displays

It is possible to specify the number of displays.

1. Move the Controller to the right until the split screen is selected.
2. Press the Controller.
3. "Personalize menu"
4. Select the desired setting.
5. Move the Controller to the left.

## Status information

### General information

The status field can be found in the upper area of the Control Display. Status information is displayed in the form of symbols.

### Status field symbols

#### Radio

Symbol	Meaning
	HD Radio station is being received.
	Satellite radio is switched on.

#### Telephone

Symbol	Meaning
	Incoming or outgoing call.
	Missed call.
	Signal strength of cellular network.
	Network search.
	Cellular network is not available.
	The critical charge state of the mobile phone has been reached.
	Roaming is active.
	SMS text message received.
	Message received.
	Reminder.
	Sending not possible.
	Contacts are loaded.

### Entertainment

Symbol	Meaning
	Music collection.
	AUX-IN port.
	AUX-IN port in the front or in the rear.
	Bluetooth audio.
	USB audio interface.
	Mobile phone audio interface.
	WiFi.
	iPod.

### Additional symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Check Control message.
	The sound output has been switched off.
	Request for the current vehicle position.
	Checking the current vehicle position.

## Programmable memory buttons

### General information

The iDrive functions can be stored on the programmable memory buttons and called up directly, e.g., radio stations, navigation destinations, phone numbers and menu entries or pages in the Integrated Owner's Manual.

Settings are stored for the driver profile currently used.

## Saving a function

1. Select function via iDrive.
2. **1 ... 7** Press and hold the desired button until a signal sounds.

## Running a function

**1 ... 7** Press button.

The function will work immediately. This means, e.g., that the number is dialed when a phone number is selected.

## Displaying the key assignment

Touch buttons with finger. Do not wear gloves or use objects.

The button assignment is displayed at the top edge of screen.



## Deleting the button assignments

1. Press and hold buttons 1 and  simultaneously for approx. 5 seconds.
2. "OK"

# BMW Gesture Control

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

## Concept

Several iDrive functions can be operated by hand motion only using BMW Gesture Control.

## Overview



The gestures that are performed underneath the interior mirror are captured by a camera in the roofliner.

## Activating/deactivating

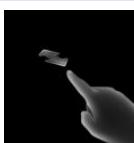
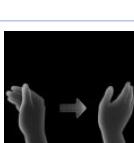
Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Gestures"
4. "Gesture control"

## Settings

- ▷ "Display tips": the possible gesture is shown on the Control Display.
- ▷ "Audio feedback": an acoustic signal is emitted once the gesture is recognized.

## Possible gestures

Gesture	Operation	Function
	Move index finger forward and backward in the direction of the screen.	Accept call. Confirm Check Control message. Select a highlighted entry in a list during voice activation.
	Swipe with the hand across the width of the Control Display in the direction of the front-passenger side.	Reject call. Close popup. Terminate voice activation.
	Slowly move forearm clockwise in a circular pattern with the index finger stretched out forward. Gesture is detected after one circular motion.	Increase the volume.
	Slowly move forearm counterclockwise in a circular pattern with the index finger stretched out forward. Gesture is detected after one circular motion.	Reduce the volume.
	Pinch with thumb and index finger and move hand horizontally to the right or left.	Surround View: turn camera view. This gesture can only be executed while the vehicle is stationary.
	Move stretched out index and middle finger forward.	Individually assignable gesture.

Perform gestures underneath the interior mirror and next to the steering wheel.

Execute gestures clearly.

The gestures can also be executed from the front-passenger side.

### Assigning gesture individually

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Gestures"

4. "Function assignment"
5. Select the desired setting.

## System limits

Gesture recognition by the camera can be disturbed by the following circumstances:

- ▷ The camera lens is covered.
- ▷ Objects are located on the rear-view mirror.
- ▷ The camera lens is dirty. Clean the camera lenses, refer to page [337](#).
- ▷ The gesture is executed outside of the detection range.
- ▷ Wearing of gloves or jewelry.
- ▷ Smoking in the vehicle's interior.

# Voice activation system

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

## Concept

Most functions displayed on the Control Display can be operated by voice commands via the voice activation system. The system supports you with announcements during input.

## General information

- ▷ Functions that can only be used when the vehicle is stationary can only be operated via the voice activation system to a limited extent.
- ▷ The system uses a special microphone on the driver's side.
- ▷ *....* in the Owner's Manual denotes verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.
- ▷ Say the commands, numbers, and letters smoothly and with normal volume, emphasis, and speed.
- ▷ Always say commands in the language of the voice activation system.

## Functional requirements

To enable voice command recognition, a language must be set via iDrive that is supported by the voice activation system.

To set the language, refer to page 40.

## Using the voice activation system

### Activating the voice activation system

1.  Press button on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for the signal.
3. Say the command.

 This symbol in the instrument cluster indicates that the voice activation system is active.

If no other commands are possible, operate the function via iDrive.

### Terminating the voice activation system

 Press the button on the steering wheel or *>Cancel*.

## Possible commands

### General information

Most menu items on the Control Display can be voiced as commands.

Commands from other menus can also be spoken.

You may select list entries such as phone list entries via voice activation. Read these list en-

tries out loud exactly as they are shown in the respective list.

## Displaying possible commands

The following is displayed in the top area of the Control Display:

- ▷ Some possible commands for the current menu.
- ▷ Some possible commands from other menus.
- ▷ Status of the voice recognition.
- ▷  Encrypted connection is not available.

## Help on the voice activation system

- ▷ To have the available spoken instructions read out loud: **»Voice commands«**.
- ▷ To have information on the operating principle of the voice activation system read out loud: **»General information on voice control«**.
- ▷ To have help for the current menu read out loud: **»Help«**.

## Example: opening the tone settings

The commands of the menu items are spoken just as they are selected via the Controller.

1. Switch on the Entertainment sound output, if needed.
2.  Press button on the steering wheel.
3. **»Media and radio«**
4. **»Tone«**

## Settings

### Setting the voice dialog

You can set the system to use standard dialog or a short version.

The short version of the voice dialog plays back short messages in abbreviated form.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Language"
4. "Speech mode:"
5. Select the desired setting.

## Selecting the input language

For some languages, the input language can be selected.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Language"
4. "Voice control:"
5. Select the desired setting.

## Activating voice recognition via the server

The voice recognition feature via the server provides a dictation function and a natural method of entering destinations while improving the quality of voice recognition. To use the functions, data is transmitted to a service provider via an encrypted connection and stored locally there.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Language"
4. "Server speech recognition"

## Speaking during voice output

It is possible to answer during inquiries of the voice activation system. The function can be deactivated if inquiries are often undesirably interrupted, for instance due to background noise or talking.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Language"
4. "Speaking during voice output"

## Adjusting the volume

Turn the volume button during the spoken instructions until the desired volume is set.

- ▷ The volume remains constant even if the volume of other audio sources is changed.
- ▷ The volume is stored for the driver profile currently used.

## Information for Emergency Requests

Do not use the voice activation system to initiate an Emergency Request. In stressful situations, the voice and vocal pitch can change. This can unnecessarily delay the establishment of a phone connection.

Instead, use the SOS button, refer to page [329](#), close to the interior mirror.

## Environmental conditions

- ▷ Keep the doors, windows, and glass sunroof closed to prevent noise interference.
- ▷ Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.

# BMW Touch Command

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

## Concept

The BMW Touch Command is a tablet computer, which can be used to operate important vehicle functions.

## General information

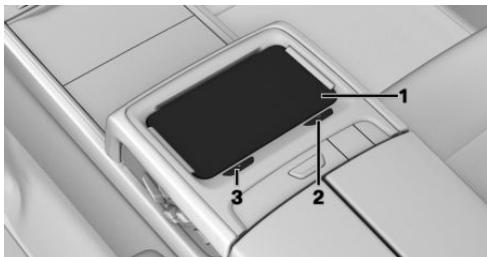
Depending on the equipment version, BMW Touch Command is located in the rear console or in the center armrest in the rear.

The following functions can be used via BMW Touch Command.

- ▷ Seat adjustments for front passenger seat and seats in the rear.
- ▷ Climate control in the rear.
- ▷ Sun protection.
- ▷ Ambient light.
- ▷ Ambient highlight.
- ▷ Bowers & Wilkins loudspeaker lighting.
- ▷ Audio sources in the front.
- ▷ Rear entertainment.

## Overview

### Operation



- 1 BMW Touch Command
- 2 Switching on/off
- 3 Removing

### Connecting BMW Touch Command

- ▷ Switch on BMW Touch Command.  
The connection is established automatically.
- ▷ If the connection is not established automatically: "Reconnect".

### Tray

The tray in the center armrest in the rear has the following functions:

- ▷ Storage and locking.
- ▷ Recharging the battery.

Insert BMW Touch Command into the tray with the screen facing upward to ensure proper locking. To charge the battery, insert BMW Touch Command with the multifunction socket to the left.

## Button and softkeys on the BMW Touch Command

### Button Function

 Display BMW application, press button twice as needed.

### Softkey Function

 Display list of last used applications.

 Back.

## Operation

### Concept

1.  Press button.  
The main menu of the BMW application is displayed.
2. Swipe to the left or right to display further menus.
3. Tap on the desired menu.
4. Adjust the settings.

### Exiting the BMW application

Tap on menu item: "Apps"

Further information is displayed.

### Language setting

The menu language depends on the iDrive settings.

### Resetting to factory settings

BMW Touch Command can be reset to factory settings.

All data and personal settings in the device memory are deleted and the connection to the vehicle is interrupted.

1. "Settings"
2.  Tap on symbol.

3. "Reset to factory settings"

# General settings

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

## Language

### Setting the language

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Language"
4. "Language:"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

### Setting the voice dialog

Voice dialog for the voice activation system, refer to page 36.

## Time

### Setting the time zone

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Date and time"
4. "Time zone:"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

### Setting the time

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Date and time"
4. "Time:"
5. Turn the Controller until the desired hours are displayed.
6. Press the Controller.
7. Turn the Controller until the desired minutes are displayed.
8. Press the Controller.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

### Setting the time format

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Date and time"
4. "Time format:"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

### Instrument cluster with enhanced features: setting the clock time display

The clock time can be displayed in analog or digital form.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"

3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument panel"
5. "Time"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

## Automatic time setting

Depending on your vehicle's optional features, the time, date and, if needed, the time zone are updated automatically.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Date and time"
4. "Automatic time setting"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

## Date

### Setting the date

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Date and time"
4. "Date:"
5. Turn the Controller until the desired day is displayed.
6. Press the Controller.
7. Make the settings for the month and year.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

### Setting the date format

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"

3. "Date and time"
4. "Date format:"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

## Setting the units of measurement

The units of measurement for different values can be adjusted, e.g., fuel consumption, distances, and temperature.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Units"
4. Select the desired menu item.
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

## Activating/deactivating the display of the current vehicle position

### Concept

If vehicle location has been activated, the current vehicle position can be displayed in the BMW Connected app or in the Connected-Drive customer portal.

### Activating/deactivating

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Vehicle tracking"
4. "Vehicle tracking"

## Activating/deactivating popup windows

For some functions, popup windows are displayed automatically on the Control Display. Some of these popup windows can be activated or deactivated.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Pop-ups"
4. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

## Control Display

### Brightness

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Control display"
5. "Brightness at night"
6. Turn the controller until the desired brightness is set.
7. Press the controller.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Depending on the light conditions, the brightness settings may not be clearly visible.

### Screensaver

If no settings are made via iDrive, a screensaver will be displayed after an adjustable time.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"

3. "Displays"
4. "Control display"
5. "Screensaver"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

### Selecting the contents of the main menu

For some menu items of the main menu, the displayed contents can be selected.

1.  Press button.
2. "Contents of main menu"
3. Select the desired menu and the desired content.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

## Messages

### Concept

The menu centrally displays all messages arriving in the vehicle in list form.

### General information

The following messages can be displayed:

- ▷ Traffic messages.
- ▷ Check Control messages.
- ▷ Communication messages, e.g., e-mail, SMS or reminders.
- ▷ Service requirements messages.

Messages are additionally displayed in the status field.

### Retrieving messages

Using iDrive:

1. "Notifications"
2. Select the desired message.

The respective menu is opened, where the message is displayed.

## Deleting messages

All messages, except Check Control messages, can be deleted from the list. Check Control messages are displayed as long as they are relevant.

Via iDrive:

1. "Notifications"
2. Select the desired message.
3.  Press button.
4. "Delete this notification" or "Delete all notifications"

## Settings

The following settings can be adjusted:

- ▷ Select the applications, from which messages will be permitted.
- ▷ Sort the messages according to date or priority.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Notifications"
4. Select the desired setting.

## Data protection

### Data transfer

#### Concept

The vehicle offers different functions, whose use requires a data transfer to BMW or a service provider. The data transfer can be deactivated for some functions.

#### General information

With data transfer deactivated, the respective function cannot be used.

Only make these settings while stationary.

### Activating/deactivating the data transfer

Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Using iDrive:

1. Switch on standby state.
2. "My Vehicle"
3. "iDrive settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. Select the desired setting.

### Deleting personal data in the vehicle

#### Concept

Depending on the usage, the vehicle saves personal data, such as stored radio stations. This personal data can be permanently deleted using iDrive.

#### General information

Depending on the equipment package, the following data can be deleted:

- ▷ Driver profile settings.
- ▷ Stored radio stations.
- ▷ Stored programmable memory buttons.
- ▷ Travel and Onboard Computer information.
- ▷ Music collection.
- ▷ Navigation, for instance stored destinations.
- ▷ Phone book.
- ▷ Online data, for instance Favorites, cookies.
- ▷ Office data, for instance voice notes.
- ▷ Login accounts.

Altogether, the deletion of the data can take up to 15 minutes.

#### Functional requirement

Data can only be deleted while stationary.

## Deleting data

Heed and follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Using iDrive:

1. Switch on standby state.
2. "My Vehicle"
3. "iDrive settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. "Delete personal data"
6. "Delete personal data"
7. "OK"
8. Exit and lock the vehicle.

After 15 minutes, the deletion process is completed.

If not all of the data was deleted, repeat the deletion.

## Cancelling deletion

Switch on the drive-ready state to cancel deletion of the data.

## Connections

### Concept

Various connection types are available for using mobile devices in the vehicle. The connection type to select depends on the mobile device and the desired function.

### General information

The following overview shows possible functions and the suitable connection types for them. The scope of functions depends on the mobile device.

Function	Connection type
Making calls via the hands-free system.	Bluetooth.
Using phone functions via iDrive.	
Using the smartphone Office functions.	
Playing music from the smartphone or the audio player.	Bluetooth or USB.
Using compatible apps via iDrive.	Bluetooth or USB.
USB storage device:	USB.
Exporting and importing driver profiles.	
Performing software updates.	
Exporting and importing stored trips.	
Playing music.	
Playing videos from the smartphone or the USB storage device.	USB.
Using the vehicle Internet access.	Internet hotspot.
Use Apple Carplay apps via iDrive and voice operation.	Bluetooth and WiFi.
Screen Mirroring:	WiFi
Showing the smartphone display on the Control Display.	

The following connection types require one-time pairing with the vehicle:

- ▷ Bluetooth.
- ▷ Internet hotspot.
- ▷ Apple CarPlay.
- ▷ Screen Mirroring.

Paired devices are automatically recognized later on and connected to the vehicle.

## Safety information



### WARNING

Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of an accident. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. If necessary, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.◀

## Compatible devices

### General information

Information on mobile devices compatible with the vehicle can be found at [www.bmwusa.com/bluetooth](http://www.bmwusa.com/bluetooth).

Malfunctions may occur with devices not listed or deviating software versions.

### Displaying the vehicle identification number and software part number

When looking for compatible devices, you may have to state the vehicle identification number and the software part number. These numbers can be displayed in the vehicle.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Settings"
5. "Bluetooth® info"
6. "System information"

A software update, refer to page 51, can be performed, if needed.

## Bluetooth connection

### Functional requirements

▷ Compatible device, refer to page 45, with Bluetooth interface.

- ▷ The remote control or BMW display key is in the vehicle.
- ▷ The device is ready for operation.
- ▷ Bluetooth is switched on in the vehicle, refer to page 45, and on the device.
- ▷ Bluetooth pre-settings may be required on the device, for instance visibility, refer to the owner's manual of the device.

## Switching on Bluetooth

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Settings"
5. "Bluetooth®"

### Activating/deactivating telephone functions

To use all supported functions of a mobile phone, the following functions must be activated prior to pairing the mobile phone with the vehicle.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Settings"
5. Select desired setting:
  - ▷ "Office"Activate function to transmit short messages, e-mails, calendars, tasks, notes, and reminders to the vehicle. Costs can be incurred by transmitting all data to the vehicle.
  - ▷ "Contact images"Activate function to show the contact pictures.
6. Move the Controller to the left.

## Pairing the mobile device with the vehicle

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Connect new device"
5. Select functions:

- ▷  "Telephone"
- ▷  "Bluetooth® audio"
- ▷  "Apps"
- ▷  "Apple CarPlay"

The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is displayed on the Control Display.

6. Search for Bluetooth devices in the vicinity of the mobile device.

The Bluetooth name of the vehicle appears on the mobile device display.

Select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle.

7. Depending on the mobile device, a control number is displayed or the control number must be entered.

▷ Compare the control number displayed on the Control Display with the control number on the display of the device.

Confirm the control number on the device and on the Control Display.

▷ Enter and confirm the same control number on the device and via iDrive.

The device is connected and displayed in the device list, refer to page 50.

## Frequently asked questions

All requirements are met and all required steps were completed in the specified order. Despite that, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In this case, the following explanations can help:

Why could the mobile phone not be paired or connected?

- ▷ There are too many Bluetooth devices connected to the mobile phone or vehicle. In the vehicle, delete Bluetooth connections with other devices. Delete all known Bluetooth connections from the device list on the mobile phone and start a new device search.
- ▷ The mobile phone is in power-save mode or has only a limited remaining battery life. Charge mobile phone.
- ▷ Depending on the mobile phone, it is possible that only one mobile phone can be connected to the vehicle. Unpair the connected mobile phone from the vehicle and pair and connect only one mobile phone.

Why does the mobile phone no longer react?

- ▷ The applications on the mobile phone do not function anymore. Switch the mobile phone off and on again.
- ▷ Too high or too low ambient temperature for mobile phone operation. Do not subject the mobile phone to extreme ambient temperatures.

Why can phone functions not be used via iDrive?

- ▷ The mobile phone may not be properly configured, for instance as Bluetooth audio device. Connect the mobile phone with the telephone or additional phone function.

Why are no or not all phone book entries displayed or why are they incomplete?

- ▷ Transmission of the phone book entries is not yet complete.
- ▷ It is possible that only the phone book entries of the mobile phone or the SIM card are transmitted.

- ▷ It may not be possible to display phone book entries with special characters.
- ▷ It may not be possible to transmit contacts from social networks.
- ▷ The number of phone book entries to be stored is too high.
- ▷ Data volume of the contact too large, for instance due to stored information such as notes.  
Reduce the data volume of the contact.
- ▷ A mobile phone can only be connected as audio source or as telephone.  
Configure the mobile phone and connect it with the telephone or additional phone function.

How can the phone connection quality be improved?

- ▷ Adjust the strength of the Bluetooth signal on the mobile phone, depending on the mobile phone.
- ▷ Insert the mobile phone into the snap-in adapter or place it in the area of the center console.
- ▷ Insert mobile phone into the wireless charging tray.
- ▷ Adjust the volume of the microphone and loudspeakers separately in the sound settings.

If all points in this list have been checked and the required function is still not available, contact the hotline, a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## USB connection

### General information

Mobile devices with a USB port are connected to the USB interface.

- ▷ Mobile phones.

The snap-in adapter features a separate USB port that is automatically connected

when a compatible mobile phone is inserted.

- ▷ Audio devices such as MP3 players.
- ▷ USB storage devices.  
Common file systems are supported. FAT32 and exFAT are the recommended formats.

The following applications are possible:

- ▷ Exporting and importing driver profiles, refer to page 74.
- ▷ Playing music files via USB audio.
- ▷ Playing videos via USB video.
- ▷ Loading of software updates, refer to page 51.

Follow the following when connecting:

- ▷ Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB interface.
- ▷ Use a flexible adapter cable.
- ▷ Protect the USB storage device against mechanical damage.
- ▷ Due to the large number of USB media available on the market, it cannot be guaranteed that every device is operable on the vehicle.
- ▷ Do not expose USB media to extreme environmental conditions, such as very high temperatures; refer to the owner's manual of the device.
- ▷ Due to the many different compression techniques, proper playback of the media stored on the USB storage device cannot be guaranteed in all cases.
- ▷ A connected USB storage device will be supplied with charging current via the USB interface if the device supports this.
- ▷ To ensure proper transmission of the stored data, do not charge a USB storage device via the onboard socket, when it is connected to the USB interface.

- Depending on how the USB storage device is being used, settings may be required on the USB storage device, refer to the owner's manual of the device.

Not compatible USB media:

- USB hard drives.
- USB hubs.
- USB memory card readers with multiple inserts.
- HFS-formatted USB media.
- Devices such as fans or lamps.

## Functional requirement

Compatible device, refer to page 45, with USB interface.

## Connecting the device

Connect the USB storage device using a suitable adapter cable to a USB interface, refer to page 248.

The USB storage device is displayed in the device list, refer to page 50.

## Internet connection

### General information

Up to 8 devices can be connected with the Internet hotspot.

### Functional requirements

- Compatible device, refer to page 45, with WiFi interface.
- ConnectedDrive contract.
- Data contract with a service provider.
- WiFi activated on the device.
- Internet hotspot activated in the vehicle.
- Standby state switched on.

## Activating the Internet hotspot

Via iDrive:

- "My Vehicle"
- "iDrive settings"
- "Mobile devices"
- "Settings"
- "Internet hotspot"

## Connecting device with Internet hotspot

Using iDrive:

- "My Vehicle"
- "iDrive settings"
- "Mobile devices"
- "Connect new device"
-  "Internet hotspot"

Hotspot name and hotspot code are displayed on the Control Display.

- Search for WiFi networks on the device. Select network name on the device.
- Enter hotspot code on the device and connect.

The device is displayed in the device list, refer to page 50.

With the first Internet usage via the Internet hotspot, data volume must be purchased from a service provider.

All devices connected via the Internet hotspot use this data volume.

If necessary, data volume can be purchased from the ConnectedDrive Store.

## Settings

The network name and hotspot code can be changed. In addition, the network name can be hidden so that it cannot be found by other devices.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4.  Press button.
5. ▷ "Change hotspot key"  
Enter the desired hotspot code.
- ▷ "Change hotspot name"  
Enter the desired network name.
- ▷ "Hide hotspot"  
Activate or deactivate the function.
6. Confirm the entry of the hotspot code or network name:  
**OK** Select the symbol.

## Apple CarPlay

### Concept

CarPlay allows certain functions of a compatible Apple iPhone to be used via Siri voice operation and iDrive.

### Functional requirements

- ▷ Compatible iPhone, refer to page 45.  
iPhone 5 or later with iOS 7.1 or later.
- ▷ Corresponding mobile wireless contract.
- ▷ Bluetooth, WiFi, and Siri voice operation are switched on on the iPhone.

## Switching on Bluetooth and CarPlay

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Settings"
5. Select the following settings:
  - ▷ "Bluetooth®"
  - ▷ "Apple CarPlay"

### Pairing iPhone with CarPlay

Pair iPhone via Bluetooth with the vehicle, refer to page 46.

Select CarPlay as the function:

- ▷ "Apple CarPlay"

The iPhone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list, refer to page 50.

### Operation

For more information, see the Integrated Owner's Manual, Online Owner's Manual, BMW Driver's Guide app or, if necessary, the Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication.

### Frequently asked questions

All requirements are met and all required steps were completed in the specified order. Despite that, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In this case, the following explanations can help:

The iPhone has already been paired with Apple CarPlay. When a new connection is established, CarPlay can no longer be selected.

- ▷ Delete the iPhone concerned from the device list.
- ▷ On the iPhone, delete the vehicle concerned from the list of stored vehicles under Bluetooth and under WiFi.
- ▷ Pair the iPhone as a new device.

If the steps listed have been carried out and the required function is still not available: contact the hotline, a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Screen Mirroring

### General information

Screen Mirroring enables mirroring (outputting) of the smartphone display on the Control Display.

## Functional requirements

- ▷ Compatible smartphone, refer to page 45, with Screen Mirroring interface.
- ▷ Screen Mirroring is switched on on the smartphone.
- ▷ WiFi is switched on in the vehicle.

## Switching on WiFi

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Settings"
5. "Vehicle Wi-Fi®"

## Pairing a smartphone with Screen Mirroring

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Connect new device"
5.  "Screen Mirroring"

The WiFi name of the vehicle is displayed on the Control Display.

6. Search for WiFi devices in the surroundings of the smartphone.

The WiFi name of the vehicle appears on the device display. Select the WiFi name of the vehicle.

7. Confirm the connection via iDrive.

The device is connected and displayed in the device list, refer to page 50.

## Managing mobile devices

### General information

- ▷ After one-time pairing, the devices are automatically recognized and reconnected when standby state is switched on.

- ▷ The data stored on the SIM card or in the mobile phone are transferred to the vehicle after recognition.
- ▷ For some devices, certain settings are necessary, for instance authorization; see the owner's manual of the device.

## Displaying the device list

All devices paired with or connected to the vehicle are displayed in the device list.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"

A symbol indicates, for which function a device is used.

Symbol	Function
	"Telephone"
	"Additional telephone"
	"Bluetooth® audio"
	"Apps"
	"Internet hotspot"
	"Apple CarPlay"
	"Screen Mirroring"

## Configuring the device

Functions can be activated or deactivated for paired and connected devices.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. Select the desired device.
5. Select the desired setting.

If a function is assigned to a device, the function will be deactivated where appropriate for a

device that is already connected and the device will be disconnected.

## Disconnecting the device

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. Select device.
5. "Disconnect device"

The device remains paired and can be connected again, refer to page 51.

## Connecting the device

A disconnected device can be reconnected.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. Select device.
5. "Connect device"

The functions that were assigned to the device before disconnecting are assigned to the device when it is reconnected. If the device is already connected, these functions are deactivated.

## Deleting the device

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. Select device.
5. "Delete device"

The device is disconnected and removed from the device list.

## Swapping the telephone and additional phone

If two mobile phones are connected to the vehicle, the functions of the phone and additional phone can be switched.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Settings"
5. "Swap telephone/additional tel."

## Software update

### General information

The vehicle supports a large number of mobile devices, for instance mobile phones and MP3 players. Software updates are available for many of the supported devices. The vehicle is maintained up-to-date via regular vehicle software updates.

Updates and related current information is available at [www.bmw.com/update](http://www.bmw.com/update).

### Displaying the installed software version

The software version installed in the vehicle is displayed.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Software update"
4. "Show current version"

If an update has been carried out before, select the desired version to display additional information.

### Updating software via USB

The software may only be updated when the vehicle is stationary.

Using iDrive:

1. Store the file for the software update in the main directory of a USB flash drive.
2. Connect the USB storage device to a USB interface, refer to page 248.
3. "My Vehicle"
4. "iDrive settings"
5. "Software update"
6. "Update software"
7. "USB"
8. "Install software"
9. "OK"
10. Wait for the update to complete.
11. "Shut down system"

If necessary, switch off the engine first.

## Updating software via BMW Teleservices

Updating software via BMW Teleservices is country-specific and may not be available.

The software is first transferred into the vehicle and can then be installed. The software can be installed at a time different from the time of transfer.

The software can be transferred while driving, and if the trip is interrupted it will resume automatically the next time the vehicle is driven. All other functions remain available during the transfer. Cellular network reception must be available for the transfer to take place.

The software may only be updated when the vehicle is stationary.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Software update"
4. "Update software"
5. "Teleservices"
6. "Load update"

The update is loaded but not installed.

7. Install or delete the update.
  - ▷ "Install software"The loaded update is installed.  
This step can be carried out at a later point in time.
- ▷ "Remove update"

  - The loaded update is removed.
  - The following steps are omitted.

8. "OK"
9. Wait for the update to complete.
10. "Shut down system"

If necessary, switch off the engine first.

## Restoring the software version

The software version before the last software update and the version before the first software update can be restored.

The software may only be restored when the vehicle is stationary.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Software update"
4. "Restore software"
5. ▷ "Previous version"
  - The previous software version is restored.
  - ▷ "Default software settings"
    - The first software version is restored.
6. "Remove software"
7. "OK"
8. Wait for restore.
9. "Shut down system"

If necessary, switch off the engine first.

# Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

## Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

### Concept

The Integrated Owner's Manual specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle. The Integrated Owner's Manual can be displayed on the Control Display.

### Components of the Integrated Owner's Manual

#### General information

The Integrated owner's manual consists of four parts, which offer various levels of information or possible access.

#### Quick Reference Guide

The Quick Reference Guide provides information on how to operate the vehicle, how to use basic vehicle functions and what to do in case of a breakdown. This information can also be displayed while driving.

#### Search by images

Based on illustrations, image search provides information and descriptions. This is useful, e.g., when the terminology for a feature is not known.

#### Keyword search

Search for information and descriptions by entering terms selected from the index.

#### Videos

The basic functions of selected systems are explained in the videos.

#### Select components

1.  Press button.
2. "My Vehicle"
3. "Owner's Manual"
4. Select the desired setting.

#### Scrolling through the owner's manual

Turn the controller, until the next or previous contents are displayed.

#### Context help - operating instructions for the currently selected function

#### General information

The relevant information can be opened directly.

#### Opening via iDrive

Change directly to the Options menu from the function on the Control Display:

1.  Press button.
2. "Owner's Manual"

#### Opening when a Check Control message is displayed

Directly from the Check Control message on the Control Display:

-  "Owner's Manual"

## Changing between a function and the operating instructions

To switch from a function, for instance radio, to the Owner's Manual on the Control Display and to alternate between the two displays:

1.  Press button.
2. "Owner's Manual"
3. Select the desired page in the Owner's Manual.
4.  Press button again to return to last displayed function.
5.  Press button to return to the page of the Owner's Manual displayed last.

To alternate continuously between the last displayed function and the last displayed page of the Owner's Manual, repeat steps 4 & 5.

Opens a new display every time.

## Programmable memory buttons

### General information

The jumps into the Owner's Manual can be stored on the programmable memory buttons, refer to page 30, and called up directly.

### Storing

1. Select the desired entry point via iDrive:
  - ▷ "Quick reference"
  - ▷ "Search by pictures"
  - ▷ "Keyword search"
  - ▷ "Animations"
2.  Press desired button and hold for more than 2 seconds.

### Executing

 Press the corresponding button.  
 The owner's manual is directly displayed at the selected entry point.

# BMW eDRIVE

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

## Hybrid system

### Concept

This BMW is a hybrid vehicle. In addition to the combustion engine, the vehicle features a high-voltage system that consists of an electric motor and a high-voltage battery among other things.

The hybrid system can move the vehicle purely electrically. It can also support the combustion engine in certain situations.

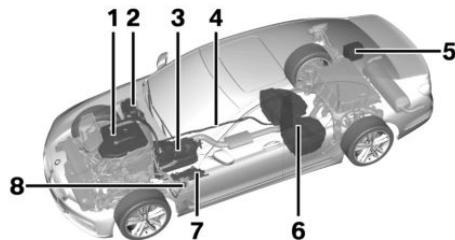
### General information

The vehicle does not consume any fuel while driving purely electrically. This enables environmentally friendly driving without emissions in inner-city traffic. If the combustion engine is used, the hybrid system support reduces fuel consumption even further.

In addition to this, the electric motor acts like an alternator: during braking and coasting, the electric motor converts the vehicle's kinetic energy into electricity. The current is stored in the high-voltage battery and is used to drive the electric motor.

The vehicle can be charged, refer to page 276, via the charging socket at charging stations or household sockets.

### Overview



- 1 Combustion engine
- 2 Power electronics
- 3 Electric motor
- 4 High-voltage cables: orange
- 5 Auxiliary battery, combustion engine
- 6 High-voltage battery
- 7 Charging control unit
- 8 Charging socket

### Functions while driving

#### Electric driving: ePOWER

Under certain conditions, refer to page 111, the vehicle is powered only by the electric motor.

#### Assistance from the electric motor

Driving off and accelerating require a lot of energy.

To optimize acceleration and to reduce fuel consumption, the electric motor boosts the combustion engine, refer to page 114. To do this, the electric motor uses the energy saved in the high-voltage battery.

#### Driving with the combustion engine: POWER

The combustion engine, refer to page 114, provides the main drive power to move the ve-

hicle. If necessary, the high-voltage battery is charged at the same time.

The hybrid system always starts the combustion engine automatically.

### Auto Start/Stop function, coasting

The Auto Start/Stop function, refer to page 110, switches the combustion engine off while the vehicle is moving, when braking, when rolling to a halt, and while the vehicle is stopped. The condition of rolling with the combustion engine switched off is referred to as coasting. Convenience functions such as the automatic climate control are supplied by the high-voltage battery and can remain switched on.

### Energy recovery: CHARGE

The high-voltage battery of the hybrid system is charged through energy recovery while driving.

The electric motor acts as a generator and converts the kinetic energy of the vehicle into electric current, refer to page 114.

### Charging the vehicle

The high-voltage battery of the vehicle can be charged, refer to page 276, via the charging socket at charging stations or household sockets.

Regular and complete charging of the high-voltage battery reduces the fuel consumption by using electric energy.

### Climate control while parking and charging

The hybrid system makes it possible to operate the automatic climate control prior to driving off and with the combustion engine switched off.

During vehicle charging or if the high-voltage battery is sufficiently charged, the vehicle's interior can be cooled or heated in advance of the trip, refer to page 240.

The stationary climate control, refer to page 239, can also be switched on directly.

### Display

The displays of the hybrid system, refer to page 131, provide information about the current state of hybrid operation and show the system activity in a chart.

### Energy-saving driving

To save energy while driving, read the following descriptions:

- ▷ Saving fuel, refer to page 268.
- ▷ Using the hybrid system efficiently, refer to page 269.
- ▷ ECO PRO driving mode, refer to page 270.
- ▷ Adapting to the course of the road, refer to page 133.

### Safety of the hybrid system

Read the information on safety, refer to page 57.

### Long-term vehicle storage

Follow the instructions for vehicle storage and for longer idle periods, refer to page 337.

# Safety of the hybrid system

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

- ▷ Water in the footwell, for instance after a rainstorm when sunroof was kept open.
- ▷ Vehicle is in water but only up to the allowed height.
- ▷ Fluid escapes in the cargo area.

## Automatic deactivation

If an accident occurs, the hybrid system is switched off automatically to prevent risk of danger to occupants and other road users.

Read the information on What to do after an accident, refer to page [330](#).

## Working on the hybrid system

### General information

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that no changes be made to the vehicle, for instance the retrofitting of accessories, that will have an effect on the vehicle's hybrid system.

### Safety information



#### DANGER

Improperly executed work, in particular maintenance and repair on the high-voltage system, can lead to electric shock. There is a risk of injury, fire and danger to life.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that the work on the vehicle, in particular maintenance and repair, be performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◀

## Hybrid system

### Contact with water

The hybrid system is typically safe even in the following example situations:



START  
STOP  
ENGINE

## Controls

The information in this chapter helps you in confidently operating your vehicle. All features and accessories that are useful for driving and your safety, comfort and convenience are described here.

# Opening and closing

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

## Remote control

### General information

The vehicle is supplied with two remote controls with integrated key.

Each remote control contains a replaceable battery. Replacing the battery, refer to page 63.

You may set the key functions depending on the optional features and country-specific version. Settings, refer to page 76.

The vehicle stores personal settings for every remote control. Driver profile, refer to page 74.

The remote controls hold information about required maintenance. Service data in the remote control, refer to page 322.

### Safety information

#### WARNING

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury. Take the remote control with you so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.◀



#### WARNING

For some country-specific variants, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

Persons who spend a lengthy time in the vehicle while being exposed to extreme temperatures are at risk of injury or death. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.◀



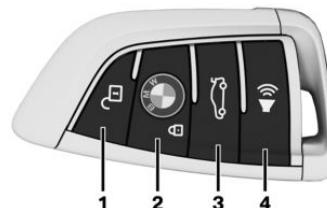
#### WARNING

Unattended children or animals can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, e.g., due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the remote control with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.◀

## Overview



1 Unlocking

2 Locking

- 3 Open tailgate
- 4 Press and hold or press three times in quick succession: panic mode  
Press briefly: headlight courtesy delay feature

## Unlocking



Press button on the remote control.

Depending on the settings, refer to page 76, the following access points are unlocked:

- ▷ Driver's door.  
Press the button of the remote control again to unlock the other vehicle access points.
- ▷ All doors and tailgate.

In addition, the following functions are executed:

- ▷ The settings stored in the driver profile, refer to page 74, are applied.
- ▷ The driver's seat is set to the last position saved in the driver's profile. This function must be activated in the settings, refer to page 76.
- ▷ The interior lights are switched on, unless they were manually switched off. Switch the interior lights on/off manually, refer to page 154.
- ▷ Depending on the settings, the welcome light and headlight courtesy delay feature, refer to page 150, are switched on.

Press the remote control button again to switch on Welcome Light Carpet for the already unlocked vehicle.

- ▷ Automatically folded in exterior mirrors are folded open. This function must be activated in the settings, refer to page 76.
- ▷ The rear sliding visor of the glass sunroof is moved into the position where it was prior to locking.

- ▷ With anti-theft protection: Anti-theft protection is switched off.
- ▷ The alarm system, refer to page 78, is switched off.

After opening one of the front doors, the vehicle is ready for operation, refer to page 22.

The light functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

## Convenient opening



Press and hold this button on the remote control after unlocking.

The windows and the glass sunroof are opened, as long as the button on the remote control is pressed.

## Locking

- 1 Close the driver's door.
- 2 Press button on the remote control.  
▷ All doors and the tailgate are locked.  
▷ The rear sliding visor of the glass sunroof is closed.  
▷ The exterior mirrors are folded in. This function must be activated in the settings, refer to page 76.  
▷ With anti-theft protection: Anti-theft protection is switched on. This prevents the doors from being unlocked using the lock buttons or the door openers.  
▷ The alarm system, refer to page 78, is switched on.

If the drive-ready state is still switched on when you lock the vehicle, the vehicle horn honks twice. In this case, the drive-ready state must be switched off by means of the Start/Stop button.

## With Comfort Access: convenient closing

### Safety information



#### WARNING

With convenient closing, body parts can be jammed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear during convenient closing.◀

### Closing



Press and hold this button on the remote control in the area close to the vehicle after locking.

The windows and the glass sunroof are closed, as long as the button on the remote control is pressed.

### Switching on the interior and exterior lights



Press button on the remote control with the vehicle locked.

The function is not available for the first 10 seconds after locking.

- ▷ The interior lights are switched on, unless they were manually switched off. Switch the interior lights on/off manually, refer to page 154.
- ▷ Depending on the settings, the headlight courtesy delay feature, refer to page 150, is switched on. The welcome light is only switched on when the vehicle is being unlocked.

The light functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

### Tailgate

#### General information

To avoid locking it in the vehicle, do not place the remote control in the cargo area.

Depending on the features and the country version, it is also possible to have the doors unlocked. Adjusting the settings, refer to page 76.

### Safety information



#### WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.◀



#### NOTE

During opening, the tailgate pivots back and up. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.◀

### Opening



Press and hold button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

### Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.



- ▷ Press button on the remote control and hold for at least 3 seconds.
- ▷ Briefly press the button on the remote control three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

### Switching on the headlight courtesy delay feature

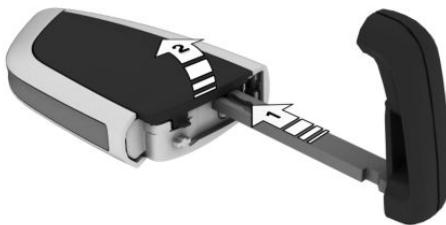


Press button on the remote control.

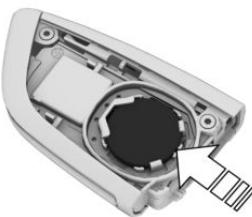
Set the duration, refer to page 150.

## Replacing the battery

1. Remove the integrated key from the remote control, refer to page 68.
2. Place the integrated key underneath the battery compartment cover, arrow 1, and lift the cover with a lever movement of the integrated key, arrow 2.



3. Push battery in the direction of the arrow using a pointed object and lift it out.



4. Insert a type CR 2032 battery with the positive side facing up.

5. Press the cover closed.



Have old batteries disposed of by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or take them to a collection point.

## Additional remote controls

Additional remote controls are available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Loss of the remote controls

A lost remote control can be blocked and replaced by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Malfunction

### General information

A Check Control message, refer to page 134, is displayed.

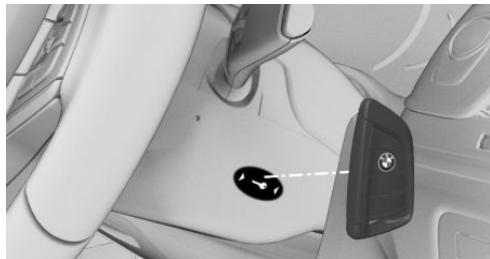
Remote control detection by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- ▷ The battery of the remote control is discharged. Replacing the battery, refer to page 63.
- ▷ Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- ▷ Shielding of the remote control due to metal objects.
- ▷ Do not transport the remote control together with metal objects.
- ▷ Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity to the remote control.
- ▷ Do not transport the remote control together with electronic devices.
- ▷ Interference of radio transmission by a charging process of mobile devices, for instance charging of a mobile phone.
- ▷ The remote control is in direct proximity of the wireless charging tray.

Place the remote control down at a different location.

In the case of interference, the vehicle can be unlocked and locked from the outside with the integrated key, refer to page 68.

## Switching the drive-ready state on via emergency detection of the remote control



1. Hold the remote control with its back against the marked area on the steering column.
2. Switch on drive-ready state within 10 seconds.

If the remote control is not detected, slightly change the position of the remote control and repeat the procedure.

## BMW display key

### General information

The BMW display key is supplied with an additional mechanical key. If the display key is used, the mechanical key should be carried with you, for instance in the wallet.

The display key supports all functions of the standard remote control.

In addition, the following functions are also available:

- ▷ Display status of doors and windows.
- ▷ Display status of the alarm system.
- ▷ Operate stationary climate control.
- ▷ Adjust charging times.
- ▷ Call up range with available fuel and the current battery charge state.
- ▷ Display charge state of the high-voltage battery.
- ▷ Display service information.

### Safety information

#### WARNING

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury. Take the remote control with you so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.◀

#### WARNING

For some country-specific variants, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

Persons who spend a lengthy time in the vehicle while being exposed to extreme temperatures are at risk of injury or death. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.◀

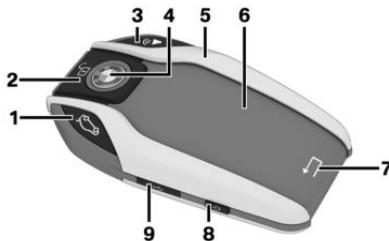
#### WARNING

Unattended children or animals can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, e.g., due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the remote control with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.◀

## Overview



- 1 Open tailgate
- 2 Unlocking
- 3 Press and hold or press three times in quick succession: panic mode  
Press briefly: headlight courtesy delay feature
- 4 Locking
- 5 Park button
- 6 Display
- 7 Back
- 8 Switch the display on/off
- 9 Micro-USB charging socket

## Reception range

The number of available display key functions depends on the distance from the vehicle.

- ▷ When you are in close proximity to the vehicle, all functions of the display key are available.
- ▷ When you are in the expanded reception range, you can access status information and use the stationary climate control.
- ▷ Outside of the reception range of the vehicle, you can display the last transmitted status information from the vehicle.
- ☒ The symbol is shown on the display if one of the buttons is pressed outside of the reception range.

## Display

### General information

The display is divided into the upper status line, the information area, and the lower status line.

### Upper status line

The upper status line displays the following information:

- ▷ Vehicle secured.
- ▷ Vehicle not secured.
- ▷ Set time in the vehicle.
- ▷ Charge state of the display key battery.

### Information area

The information area can be used to access information and perform additional functions.

If the information area contains more than one page, then page indicators are shown beneath the information.

The indicator for the current page has been filled in.

Swipe to the right or left with a finger to change between the pages.

If further information is available on a page, tap the appropriate symbol.

To return to the original page: tap on the symbol beneath the display.

Touch it again to display the charge state of the high-voltage battery.

### Lower status line

The lower status line indicates whether or not the display key is within reception range, refer to page 65.

- ▷ "Connected": the display key is within reception range.
- ▷ "Updated": the display key is not within reception range. It indicates when the last data transfer from the vehicle took place.

## Switching on/off

The display will go out automatically after a brief period to conserve battery power.

To hide the display manually:

Press the button on the left side of the display key. Overview, refer to page 65.

To show the display:

1. Press the button on the left side of the display key.
2. Then, swipe with your finger from bottom to top to unlock the screen lock.

To switch off the display to increase the usable battery life:

1. Press and hold the button on the left side of the display key for longer than 4 seconds.
2. "OK"

To switch the display on:

Press the button on the left side of the display key.

## Operating concept

Depending on the equipment, there are up to five main menus that provide access to the sub-menus.

Main menu	Information/Function
"Security information"	 /  Door status. Alarm system status. After alarm triggering: date, time, and reason for triggering the alarm.
	 Window status. Glass sunroof status.

Main menu	Information/Function
"Vehicle information"	Maintenance indicators of Condition Based Service CBS, refer to page 322.  Status of the roadside parking lights.
"Mobility info"	Range with available fuel.  Status during charging.
"Departure setting"	Operate stationary climate control.  High-voltage battery: schedule charging times.

## Display key battery

### General information

Observe the following information:

- ▷ If the charge state of the display key battery declines, the display is switched off automatically. The battery must be recharged so that the display can be switched back on. The operability of the standard buttons is retained until the battery is completely discharged.
- ▷ Charge the battery for at least three hours before using the display key for the first time or if the key has not been used for an extended period.
- ▷ The display key can be used while it is being charged. If the battery is fully discharged, it may take some time before the display key can be used again.
- ▷ Due to the large number of USB chargers available on the market, it cannot be guaranteed that every charger will function properly. The charging duration depends on the charger used.
- ▷ During charging, the charger and the display key may become warm. At higher temperatures, the display key may cause a reduction in the charging current, and in

isolated cases the charging process may be interrupted temporarily.

## Charging

- ▷ Connect the display key via the micro-USB charging socket to a USB port.



- ▷ Place the display key into the recess of the wireless charging tray underneath the center armrest.

Make sure that the display is on the side of the clamp and that the lock button points upward.

Close the center armrest.

## Malfunction

### General information

A Check Control message is displayed.

BMW display key detection by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- ▷ The battery of the display key is discharged. Charge the battery, refer to page 66.
- ▷ Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- ▷ Shielding of the display key due to metal objects.
- ▷ Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity.

- ▷ Interference of radio transmission by a charging process of mobile devices, for instance charging of a mobile phone.

Do not transport the display key together with metal objects or electronic devices.

In the case of interference, the vehicle can also be unlocked and locked from the outside with the mechanical key.

### Switching on drive-ready state via emergency detection of the BMW display key



1. Hold the display key with its back against the marked area on the steering column.
2. Switch on drive-ready state within 10 seconds.

If the display key is not detected, slightly change the position of the display key and repeat the procedure.

### Resetting the BMW display key

If the charged display key cannot be switched on anymore or if the display does not respond to entries anymore, the display key can be reset.

Press and hold the button on the left side of the display key for at least 20 seconds, until something appears on the display.

## Integrated key

### General information

The driver's door can be locked and unlocked without remote control using the integrated key.

The integrated key also fits the glove compartment.

### Safety information

#### **WARNING**

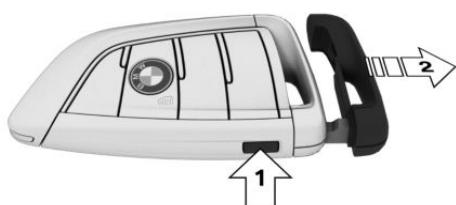
For some country-specific variants, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

Persons who spend a lengthy time in the vehicle while being exposed to extreme temperatures are at risk of injury or death. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.◀

#### **NOTE**

The door lock is permanently joined with the door. The door handle can be moved. When pulling the door handle with the integrated key inserted, paint or the integrated key can be damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Remove the integrated key before pulling the outside door handle.◀

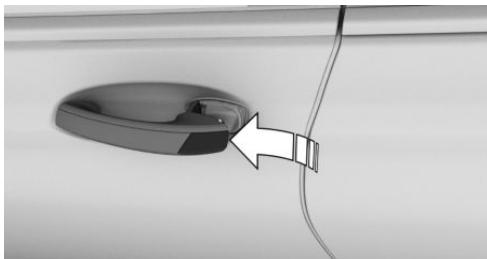
### Removing



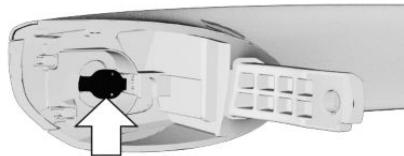
Press the button, arrow 1, and pull out the integrated key, arrow 2.

### Locking/unlocking via the door lock

1. Pull the door handle outward with the left hand and hold it.



2. Guide one finger of your right hand from the back under the cover, feel for the release there, and press it outward.



3. Use your left thumb to push the cover to the right.
4. Unlock or lock the door lock using the integrated key.



The other doors must be unlocked or locked from the inside.

### Alarm system

The alarm system is not switched on if the vehicle is locked with the integrated key.

The alarm system is triggered when the door is opened, if the vehicle has been unlocked via the door lock.

In order to stop the alarm, unlock the vehicle with the remote control, if necessary through emergency detection of the remote control, refer to page 63.

## Buttons for the central locking system

### General information

In the event of a severe accident, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The hazard warning system and interior lights come on.

### Overview



Buttons for the central locking system.

### Locking



Press the button with the front doors closed.

The vehicle is not secured against theft when locking.

### Unlocking



Press button.

### Opening



Press the button to unlock all the doors.

Pull the door opener above the armrest.

- ▷ Front doors: pull the door handle on the door to open the door. The other doors remain locked.
- ▷ Back doors: pull twice on the door handle on the door to be opened; the first time unlocks the door, the second time opens it. The other doors remain locked.

## Comfort Access

### Concept

The vehicle can be accessed without activating the remote control.

All you need to do is to have the remote control with you, such as in your pants pocket.

The vehicle automatically detects the remote control when it is in close proximity or in the vehicle's interior.

### General information

Comfort Access supports the following functions:

- ▷ Unlocking and locking the vehicle.
- ▷ Convenient closing.
- ▷ Opening tailgate.
- ▷ Opening and closing the tailgate with no-touch activation.

### Functional requirements

- ▷ To lock the vehicle, the remote control must be located outside of the vehicle near the doors.
- ▷ The next unlocking and locking cycle is not possible until after approx. 2 seconds.

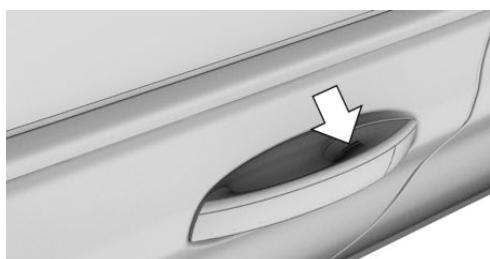
## Unlocking



Grasp the handle of a vehicle door completely. This corresponds with pressing the button  on the remote control.

## Locking

Close the driver's door.



Touch the grooved surface on the handle of a closed vehicle door with your finger for approx. 1 second without grasping the door handle.

This corresponds with pressing the button  on the remote control.

## Convenient closing

### Safety information



With convenient closing, body parts can be jammed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear during convenient closing.◀

## Closing



Touch the grooved surface on the handle of a closed vehicle door with your finger and hold it there without grasping the door handle.

This corresponds to pressing and holding the button  on the remote control.

In addition to locking, the windows and glass sunroof will be closed.

## Open tailgate

### General information

If you open the tailgate via Comfort Access, locked doors will not be unlocked.

To avoid locking it in the vehicle, do not place the remote control in the cargo area.

### Safety information



#### WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.◀



#### NOTE

During opening, the tailgate pivots back and up. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.◀

## Opening



Press button on the exterior of the tailgate. This corresponds with pressing the button  on the remote control.

## Opening and closing the tailgate with no-touch activation

### Concept

The tailgate can be opened and closed with no-touch activation using the remote control you are carrying. Two sensors detect a forward-directed foot motion in the central rear area and the tailgate is opened or closed.

### General information

To avoid locking it in the vehicle, do not place the remote control in the cargo area.

If the remote control is in the sensor range, the tailgate may open or close inadvertently if you unintentionally move your foot or if something else moves in the detection range.

The sensor has an approximate range of 5 ft/1.50 m extending from the rear of the vehicle.

If you open the tailgate with no-touch activation, locked doors will not be unlocked.

### Safety information

#### WARNING

During no-touch activation, vehicle parts may be touched, e.g., hot exhaust system. There is a risk of injury. When moving your

foot, make sure you have a firm stance and do not touch the vehicle.◀

#### WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.◀

#### NOTE

During opening, the tailgate pivots back and up. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.◀

### Performing the foot movement

1. Stand in the middle behind the vehicle at approx. one arm's length away from the rear of the vehicle.
2. Wave a foot under the vehicle in the direction of travel and immediately pull it back. With this movement, the leg must pass through the ranges of both sensors.



### Opening

Perform the foot movement described earlier.

The tailgate is opened.

Before the opening, the hazard warning system flashes.

You can pause the opening operation by moving your foot again.

### Closing

Perform the foot movement described earlier.

Before closing, the hazard warning system flashes and an acoustic signal sounds.

You can interrupt the closing operation by moving your foot again.

## Malfunction

Remote control detection by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- ▷ The battery of the remote control is discharged. Replace the battery, refer to page 63.
- ▷ Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- ▷ Shielding of the remote control due to metal objects.  
Do not transport the remote control together with metal objects.
- ▷ Interference of the radio connection by mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity of the remote control.  
Do not transport the remote control together with electronic devices.

In the case of a malfunction, unlock and lock the vehicle using the buttons of the remote control or using the integrated key, refer to page 68.

## Tailgate

### General information

To avoid locking it in the vehicle, do not place the remote control in the cargo area.

Depending on the features and the country version, it is also possible to have the doors unlocked. Adjusting the settings, refer to page 76.

The tailgate cannot be opened if it is locked using the switch in the glove compartment. Separately lock the tailgate, refer to page 73.

### Safety information

#### WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.◀

#### NOTE

During opening, the tailgate pivots back and up. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.◀

## Opening and closing

### Opening

#### From the outside



- ▷ Without Comfort Access: unlock vehicle.  
With Comfort Access: unlock the vehicle or have the remote control with you.

Press button on the exterior of the tailgate.

- ▷  Press and hold button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.  
Depending on the setting, the doors may also be unlocked. Opening with the remote control, refer to page 62.

#### From the inside

-  Press button in the storage compartment of the driver's door.

## Interruption of the opening procedure

The opening operation is interrupted:

- ▷ By pressing the button used for opening again.
- ▷ When the vehicle starts moving.
- ▷ By pressing the button on the inside of the tailgate.



## Closing

### From the inside



Pull and hold the button in the driver's door.

The remote control must be located inside the vehicle for this function.

An acoustic signal sounds before the tailgate is closed.

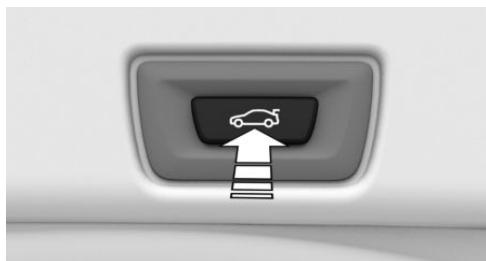
- ▷ Press button, arrow 1, on the inside of the tailgate.

- ▷ Press button, arrow 2.

The vehicle will be locked after closing the tailgate. The driver's door must be closed for this purpose and the remote control must be outside of the vehicle in the area of the tailgate.

### From inside the tailgate

Without Comfort Access:



Press button on the inside of the tailgate.

With Comfort Access:

### Interruption of the closing procedure

The closing operation is interrupted:

- ▷ By pressing the button used for closing again/releasing the button used for closing.
- ▷ If the vehicle starts off with a jerky movement.

## Malfunction

In the event of an electrical malfunction, operate the unlocked tailgate manually with a slow and smooth motion.

## Locking separately

### General information

The switch in the glove compartment decouples the tailgate from the central locking system, so it can no longer be opened.

If the glove compartment is locked with the integrated key, the remote control can be handed over without the integrated key, for instance to a valet parking service. It is then no longer possible for objects to be removed from the cargo area even with the remote control.

## Securing



- ▶ Tailgate secured, arrow 1.
- ▶ Tailgate not secured, arrow 2.

Slide the switch into the desired position.

## Trunk emergency unlocking



Pull the handle inside the cargo area.

The tailgate unlocks.

## Automatic Soft Closing

### Safety information



#### WARNING

Body parts can be jammed while operating the doors. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear during opening and closing.◀

### Closing

To close the doors, push lightly.

Closing occurs automatically.

## Driver profile

### Concept

In the driver profiles, individual settings for several drivers can be stored and called up again when required.

## General information

There are three driver profiles with which personal vehicle settings can be stored. Every remote control has one of these driver profiles assigned.

If the vehicle is unlocked using a remote control, the assigned personal driver profile will be activated. All settings stored in the driver profile are automatically applied.

If several drivers use their own remote control, the vehicle will adjust the personal settings during unlocking. These settings are also restored, if the vehicle has been used in the meantime by a person with a different remote control.

Changes to the settings are automatically stored in the driver profile currently activated.

If another driver profile is selected via iDrive, the settings stored in it will be applied automatically. The new driver profile is assigned to the remote control currently used.

There is an additional guest profile available that is not assigned to any remote control. It can be used to apply settings in the vehicle without changing the personal driver profiles.

### Functional requirements

For the system to be able to identify the driver profile associated to a particular driver, the detected remote control must be clearly allocated to the driver.

This is the case when:

- ▶ The driver is only carrying his or her own remote control.
- ▶ The driver unlocks the vehicle.
- ▶ The driver gets into the vehicle through the driver's door.

### Active driver profile

After switching on the Control Display, the name of the active driver profile is displayed.

Select driver profile, refer to page 75.

As soon as the engine is started or any key is pressed, the last selected display is shown on the Control Display.

To exit the welcome screen via iDrive:

"OK"

## Settings

The settings for the following systems and functions are stored in the active driver profile. The scope of storable settings depends on country and equipment.

- ▷ Unlocking and locking.
- ▷ Lights.
- ▷ Climate control.
- ▷ Radio.
- ▷ Instrument cluster.
- ▷ Programmable memory buttons.
- ▷ Volumes, tone.
- ▷ Control Display.
- ▷ Navigation.
- ▷ TV.
- ▷ PDC Park Distance Control.
- ▷ Rearview camera.
- ▷ Panorama View.
- ▷ Head-up Display.
- ▷ Driving Dynamics Control.
- ▷ Seat position, exterior mirror position, steering wheel position.

Both the positions saved via the seat memory and the last position set are saved.

- ▷ Intelligent Safety.
- ▷ Night vision.

## Profile management

### Selecting a driver profile

Regardless of the remote control in use, a different driver profile may be activated. This allows you to call up personal vehicle settings,

even if you did not unlock the vehicle with your own remote control.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Select driver profile.
4. "OK"

- ▷ All settings stored in the called-up driver profile are automatically applied.
- ▷ The called-up driver profile is assigned to the remote control being used at the time.
- ▷ If the driver profile is already assigned to a different remote control, this driver profile will apply to both remote controls.

### Guest profile

The guest profile is for individual settings that are stored in none of the three personal driver profiles.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. "Drive off (guest)"
4. "OK"

The guest profile cannot be renamed. It is not assigned to the current remote control.

### Renaming a driver profile

A personal name can be assigned to the active driver profile to avoid confusion between the driver profiles.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Select driver profile.
4. "Change driver profile name"

 The driver profile marked with this symbol can be renamed.

5. Enter profile name.
6. OK Select the symbol.

## Resetting a driver profile

The settings of the active driver profile are reset to their factory settings.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Select driver profile.  
    ⚙ The driver profile marked with this symbol can be reset.
4. "Reset driver profile"
5. "OK"

## Exporting driver profiles

Most settings of the active driver profile can be exported.

Exporting is helpful when storing and retrieving personal settings, for instance before delivering the vehicle to a workshop. The stored driver profiles can be taken into another vehicle.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Select driver profile.  
    ⚙ The driver profile marked with this symbol can be exported.
4. "Export driver profile"
5. Select a storage device for exporting the driver profile.
  - ▷ "USB device"  
Select USB storage device, as needed, refer to page [47](#).
  - ▷ Online  
Via the BMW ConnectedDrive customer portal.

## Importing driver profiles

The existing settings of the active driver profile are overwritten with the settings of the imported driver profile.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Select the driver profile to be overwritten.  
    ⚙ The driver profile marked with this symbol can be overwritten.
4. "Import driver profile"
5. Select a storage device for importing the driver profile.
  - ▷ USB storage device: "USB device"  
Select USB storage device as needed.
  - ▷ Online.
6. Select the driver profile to be imported.

## System limits

A clear assignment between the remote control and driver may not be possible in the following cases, for example.

- ▷ The passenger unlocks the vehicle with his or her own remote control, but another person is driving.
- ▷ The driver unlocks the vehicle via Comfort Access and has multiple remote controls with him or her.
- ▷ The driver changes, but the vehicle is not locked and unlocked.
- ▷ Multiple remote controls are located outside of the vehicle.

## Settings

### General information

Depending on the equipment and country-specific variant of your vehicle, different opening and closing settings are available.

These settings are stored for the driver profile, refer to page 74, currently used.

## Unlocking

### Doors

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4. "Driver's door" or "All doors"
5. Select desired setting:
  - ▷ "Driver's door only"
  - Only the driver's door is unlocked.
  - Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.
  - ▷ "All doors"
  - The entire vehicle is unlocked.

### Tailgate

Depending on optional features and country version, this setting is not offered in some cases.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4. "Tailgate" or "Tailgate and door(s)"
5. Select desired setting:
  - ▷ "Tailgate"
  - The tailgate is opened.
  - ▷ "Tailgate and door(s)"
  - The tailgate is opened and the doors are unlocked.

## Adjusting the last seat, mirror, and steering wheel position

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Select driver profile.
  - ⚙ The setting can be made for the driver profile marked with this symbol.
4. "Last seat position automatic"

When the vehicle is unlocked, the driver's seat and exterior mirrors resume their last set positions. When the drive-ready state is switched on, the steering wheel is moved to its last set position.

The most recent position is independent of the positions saved via the seat memory.

## Confirmation signals from the vehicle

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4. Deactivate or activate the desired confirmation signals.
  - ▷ "Flash for lock/unlock"
  - Unlocking is signaled by two flashes, locking by one.
  - ▷ With alarm system:
  - "Acoustic signal for lock/unlock"
  - Unlocking is signaled by two honks of the horn, locking by one.

## Automatic locking

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4. Select desired setting:
  - ▷ "Lock automatically"

The vehicle locks automatically after a short period of time if no door is opened after unlocking.

- ▷ "Lock after starting to drive"

The vehicle locks automatically after you drive off.

## Automatic unlocking

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4. "Unlock at end of trip"

After drive-ready state is switched off by pressing the Start/Stop button, the locked vehicle is automatically unlocked.

## Folding mirrors automatically

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4. "Fold mirrors in when locked"

Locking the vehicle folds in the exterior mirrors automatically. Unlocking the vehicle automatically folds out the exterior mirrors.

## Establishing idle state after opening the front doors

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4. "Turn off after door opening"

Opening the front doors establishes the idle state, refer to page 21.

# Alarm system

## General information

When the vehicle is locked, the vehicle alarm system reacts to the following changes:

- ▷ Opening a door, the hood or the tailgate.
- ▷ Movements in the car's interior.
- ▷ Changes in the vehicle tilt, e. g., during attempts at stealing a wheel or when towing the vehicle.
- ▷ Disconnected battery voltage.
- ▷ Improper use of the socket for OBD On-board Diagnosis.

The alarm system signals these changes visually and acoustically:

- ▷ Acoustic alarm.  
Depending on local regulations, the acoustic alarm may be suppressed.
- ▷ By switching on the hazard warning system.
- ▷ By flashing the daytime running lights.

## Switching on/off

When you unlock or lock the vehicle, either with the remote control or with Comfort Access, the alarm system is switched on and off at the same time.

## Opening the doors with the alarm system switched on

The alarm system is triggered when a door is opened if the door was unlocked using the integrated key in the door lock.

Switching off the alarm, refer to page 80.

## Opening the tailgate with the alarm system switched on

The tailgate can be opened even when the alarm system is switched on.

After the tailgate is closed, it is locked and monitored again provided the doors are

locked. The hazard warning system flashes once.

## Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.



- ▷ Press button on the remote control and hold for at least 3 seconds.
- ▷ Briefly press the button on the remote control three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

## Indicator light on the interior mirror



- ▷ The indicator light flashes briefly every 2 seconds:  
The alarm system is switched on.
- ▷ Indicator light flashes for approx. 10 seconds, then it flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

Interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor are not active, as doors, hood, or tailgate are not correctly closed. Correctly closed access points are secured.

When the still open access points are closed, interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor will be switched on.

- ▷ The indicator light goes out after unlocking:  
The vehicle has not been tampered with.
- ▷ The indicator light flashes after unlocking until drive-ready state is switched on, but no longer than approx. 5 minutes:

An alarm has been triggered.

## Tilt alarm sensor

The tilt of the vehicle is monitored.

The alarm system responds in situations such as attempts to steal a wheel or when the vehicle is towed.

## Interior motion sensor

The windows and the glass sunroof must be closed for the system to function properly.

## Avoiding unintentional alarms

### General information

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor can trigger an alarm, although no unauthorized action occurred.

Possible situations for an unwanted alarm:

- ▷ In automatic vehicle washes.
- ▷ In duplex garages.
- ▷ During transport on trains carrying vehicles, at sea or on a trailer.
- ▷ With animals in the vehicle.

The tilt alarm sensor and the interior motion sensor can be switched off in such situations.

## Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor



Press the remote control button again within 10 seconds as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator lamp lights up for approx. 2 seconds and then continues to flash.

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor are turned off until the vehicle is locked again.

## Switching off the alarm

- ▷ Unlock the vehicle using the remote control, if needed, through emergency detection of the remote control, refer to page 63.
- ▷ With Comfort Access: if you are carrying the remote control on your person, grasp the driver side or front passenger side door handle completely.

## Power windows

### Safety information

#### **WARNING**

When operating the windows, body parts and objects can be jammed. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the windows is clear during opening and closing.◀

### Overview



 Power windows

 Safety switch

### Functional requirements

The windows can be operated under the following conditions.

- ▷ Standby state is established.
- ▷ Drive-ready state is established.
- ▷ The remote control is in the car's interior.

## Opening

- ▷  Press the switch to the resistance point.  
The window opens while the switch is being held.
- ▷  Press the switch beyond the resistance point.  
The window opens automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Convenient opening via the remote control, refer to page 61.

## Closing

- ▷  Pull the switch to the resistance point.  
The window closes while the switch is being held.
- ▷  Pull the switch beyond the resistance point.  
The window closes automatically if the door is closed. Pulling again stops the motion.

Closing via Comfort Access, refer to page 69.

### Jam protection system

#### General information

If closing force exceeds a specific threshold as a window closes, closing is interrupted.

The window opens slightly.

### Safety information

#### **WARNING**

Accessories on the windows such as antennas can impact jam protection. There is a risk of injury. Do not install accessories in the area of movement of the windows.◀

## Closing without the jam protection system

In case of danger from the outside or if ice might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

1.  Pull the switch past the resistance point and hold it there.  
The window closes with limited jam protection. If the closing force exceeds a specific threshold, closing is interrupted.
2.  Pull the switch past the resistance point again within approx. 4 seconds and hold it there.  
The window closes without jam protection.

## Safety switch

### Concept

With the safety switch, it is possible to block particular functions in the rear. This makes sense, for instance if children or animals are carried in the rear.

### General information

The following functions can be blocked using the safety switch:

- ▷ Opening and closing of the rear windows using the switches in the rear.
- ▷ Operation of the roller sunblind in the rear window using the switches in the rear.
- ▷ Operation of the roller sunblinds in the side windows using the switches in the rear.
- ▷ Adjustment of the power rear seats.
- ▷ Operation of the rear sliding visor using the switches in the rear.

If an accident of a certain severity occurs, the safety function is switched off automatically.

## Switching on/off



Press button.

The LED lights up if the safety function is switched on.

## Rear window roller sunblind

### General information

The safety switch, refer to page 81, in the driver's door can be used to prevent children from operating the roller sunblind using the switches in the rear, for instance.

### Overview

#### Driver's door



Button for the roller sunblind.

#### Rear doors



Button for the roller sunblind.

## Operation

 Press the button to open the closed roller sunblind or to close the open roller sunblind.

If the button is pressed again during the movement, the roller sunblind is moved in the opposite direction.

Hold the button down to operate the roller sunblinds on the rear window and on the side windows at the same time.

## BMW Touch Command

The roller sunblind can also be operated using BMW Touch Command.

## System limits

If you are no longer able to move the roller sunblind after having activated it consecutively a number of times, the overheating protection mechanism is active. The system is blocked for a limited time to prevent overheating. Let the system cool.

The roller sunblind cannot be moved at low interior temperatures.

## Roller sunblinds, rear side windows

### General information

The safety switch, refer to page 81, in the driver's door can be used to prevent children, for instance from operating the roller sunblinds using the switches in the rear.

## Overview



Buttons for the roller sunblinds.

## Operation

 Press the button to open the closed roller sunblind or to close the open roller sunblind.

If the button is pressed again during the movement, the roller sunblind is moved in the opposite direction.

## BMW Touch Command

The roller sunblinds can also be operated using BMW Touch Command.

## System limits

If you are no longer able to move the roller sunblinds after having activated them consecutively a number of times, the overheating protection mechanism is active. The system is blocked for a limited time to prevent overheating. Let the system cool.

The roller sunblinds cannot be moved at low interior temperatures.

## Glass sunroof

### General information

The glass sunroof and the sliding visor can be operated together or separately using the same switch.

The rear sliding visor is operated using separate buttons.

The glass sunroof is ready for operation when standby state is switched on.

## Safety information



### WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating the glass sunroof. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the glass sunroof is clear during opening and closing. ▲

## Overview



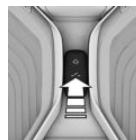
- 1 Open/close the glass sunroof/sliding visor. Depending on the vehicle equipment: open/close the glass sunroof/front sliding visor.
- 2 Depending on the vehicle equipment: close the rear sliding visor.
- 3 Depending on the vehicle equipment: open the rear sliding visor.

## Functional requirements

The windows can be operated under the following conditions.

- ▷ Standby state is established.
- ▷ Drive-ready state is established.
- ▷ The remote control is in the car's interior.

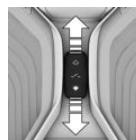
## Lifting/closing glass sunroof



Push switch briefly upward.

- ▷ The closed glass sunroof tilts and the sliding visor opens slightly.
- ▷ The opened glass sunroof closes until it is in the tilted position. The sliding visor does not move.
- ▷ The tilted glass sunroof closes.

## Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sliding visor separately



- ▷ Press the switch in the desired direction to the resistance point and hold it there.

The sliding visor opens while the switch is being held. If the sliding visor is already fully open, the glass sunroof opens.

The glass sunroof closes while the switch is being held. If the glass sunroof is already closed or in the tilted position, the sliding visor closes.

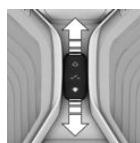
- ▷ Press the switch in the desired direction past the resistance point.

The sliding visor opens automatically. If the sliding visor is already fully open, the glass sunroof opens automatically.

The glass sunroof closes automatically. If the glass sunroof is already closed or in the tilted position, the sliding visor closes automatically.

Pressing the switch upward stops the motion.

## Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sliding visor together



Briefly press the switch twice in succession in the desired direction past the resistance point.

The glass sunroof and sliding visor move together. Pressing the switch upward stops the motion.

Convenient opening via the remote control, refer to page 61.

Closing by means of Comfort Access, refer to page 69.

### Comfort position

If the glass sunroof is not completely opened automatically, the comfort position has been attained. In this position the wind noises in the interior are the least.

If desired, continue the movement by pressing the switch.

### With panoramic glass sunroof: opening/closing the rear sliding visor

#### On the roofliner control panel



Press button to open the rear sliding visor.

Press button again to stop the movement.



Press button to close the sliding visor.

Press button again to stop the movement.

#### On the control panel in the rear doors

The rear sliding visor cannot be used via the buttons in the rear if the safety function, refer to page 81, is switched on.



Press the button to open the closed sliding visor or to close the open sliding visor.

Press button again to stop the movement.

When the button is pressed again, the sliding visor will move in the opposite direction.

### BMW Touch Command

The front and rear sliding visor can also be operated using BMW Touch Command.

### Actions during unlocking/locking

If the vehicle is locked from the outside, the rear sliding visor is automatically closed.

During unlocking, the sliding visor is automatically moved into the position, where it was prior to locking.

### Jam protection system

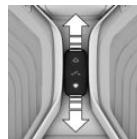
#### General information

If the closing force exceeds a certain value when closing the glass sunroof, the closing operation is interrupted once the roof reaches the half-open position, or it is stopped when closing from the tilted position.

The glass sunroof opens slightly.

#### Closing from the open position without jam protection

If there is an external danger, proceed as follows:

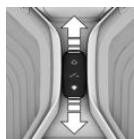


1. Push the switch forward past the resistance point and hold.

The glass sunroof closes with limited jam protection. If the closing force exceeds a specific threshold, closing is interrupted.

2. Push the switch forward again past the resistance point and hold until the glass sunroof closes without jam protection. Make sure that the closing area is clear.

## Closing from the raised position without jam protection



If there is an external danger, push the switch forward past the resistance point and hold it.

The glass sunroof closes without jam protection.

## Initializing after a power interruption

### General information

After a power failure during the opening or closing process, the glass sunroof can only be operated to a limited extent.

The system can be initialized under the following conditions.

- ▷ The vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- ▷ The drive-ready state is established.
- ▷ The external temperature is above 41 °F/5 °C.

During initialization, the glass sunroof closes without jam protection.

Make sure that the closing area is clear.

## Initializing the system



Press the switch up and hold it until the initialization is complete:

Initialization begins within 15 seconds and is completed when the glass sunroof and sliding visor are completely closed.

# Settings

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

## Sitting safely

An ideal seating position that meets the needs of the occupants can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving.

In the event of an accident, the correct seating position plays an important role. Follow the information in the following chapters:

- ▷ Seats, refer to page 86.
- ▷ Safety belts, refer to page 91.
- ▷ Head restraints, refer to page 92.
- ▷ Airbags, refer to page 157.

## Front seats

### General information

The seat adjustment for the driver's seat is stored for the driver profile currently used. When the vehicle is unlocked via the remote control, the position is automatically retrieved if the function, refer to page 77, is activated for this purpose.

The current seat position can be stored using the memory function, refer to page 98.

## Safety information

### WARNING

Seat adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected movements of the seat. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of an accident. Only adjust the seat on the driver's side when the vehicle is stationary.◀

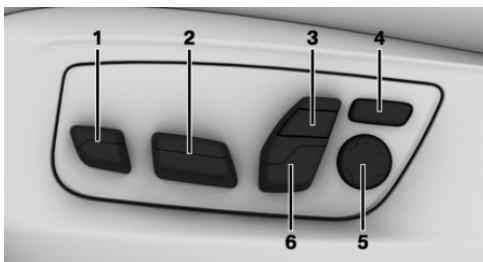
### WARNING

With a backrest inclined too far to the rear, the efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts can no longer be ensured. There is a risk of sliding under the safety belt in an accident. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Adjust the seat prior to starting the trip. Adjust the backrest so that it is in the most upright position as possible and do not adjust again while driving.◀

### WARNING

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.◀

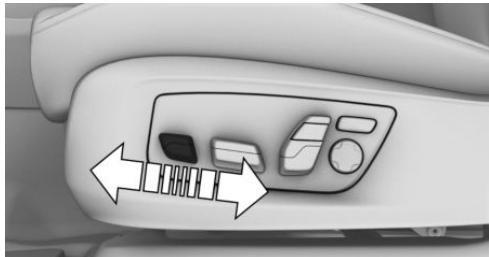
## Overview



- 1 Thigh support
- 2 Forward/backward, height, seat tilt
- 3 Upper backrest
- 4 Backrest width
- 5 Side bolsters
- 6 Headrest

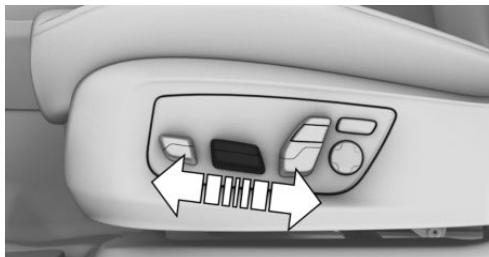
- 5 Lumbar support
- 6 Backrest tilt, head restraint

## Thigh support



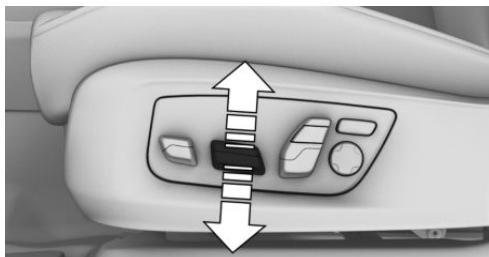
Push switch forward or backward.

## Forward/backward



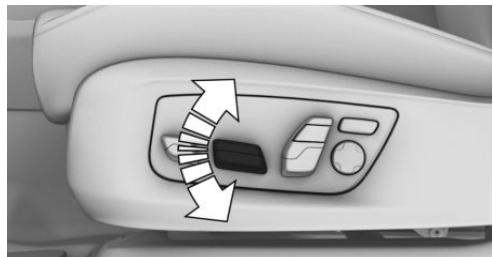
Push switch forward or backward.

## Height



Push switch up or down.

## Seat tilt



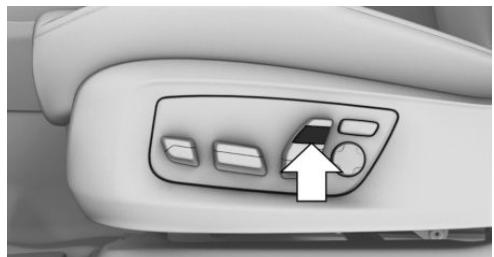
Move switch up or down.

## Upper backrest

### Concept

The upper backrest supports the back in the shoulder area. A correct setting leads to a relaxed seating position and reduces strain on the shoulder muscles.

### Settings



- ▶ Press the front section of the button:  
The upper backrest is inclined forward.
- ▶ Press the rear section of the button:  
The upper backrest is inclined backward.

## Backrest width

### General information

You can change the backrest width by adjusting the side wings of the backrest.

## Settings



- ▷ Press the front section of the button:  
The backrest width decreases.
- ▷ Press the rear section of the button:  
The backrest width increases.

## Functional limitations

It may not be possible to adjust the backrest width at very high and very low temperatures.

## Lumbar support

### Concept

The curvature of the seat backrest can be adjusted in a way that it supports the lumbar region of the spine. The lower back and the spine are supported for upright posture.

## Settings

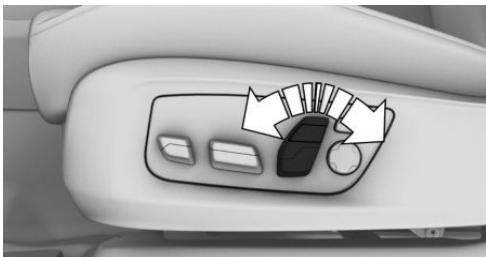


- ▷ Press the front/rear section of the button:  
The curvature is increased/decreased.
- ▷ Press the upper/lower section of the button:  
The curvature is shifted up/down.

## Functional limitations

It may not be possible to adjust the lumbar support at very high and very low temperatures.

## Backrest tilt



Move switch forward or backward.

## Gentleman function

### Concept

The front passenger seat can be adjusted with the switches of the driver's seat, e.g., to increase the legroom in the rear.

### Overview



Gentleman function

### Switching on

1.  Press button. The LED lights up.
2. Adjust the front passenger seat at the driver's seat.  
If needed, store the memory position, refer to page 98, for the front passenger seat.

### Switching off



Press button and hold until LED goes out.

The function deactivates itself automatically after some time.

## BMW Touch Command

The front passenger seat can also be operated using BMW Touch Command.

## Rear seats

### General information

The seat adjustment switches are located on the center armrest of the rear seats.

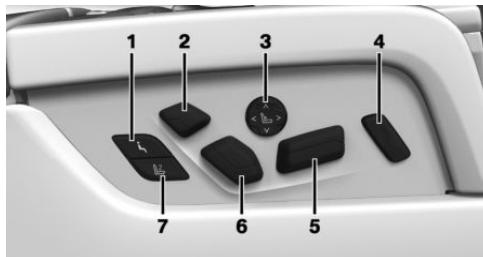
If the safety switch, refer to page 81, is pressed, the seats cannot be adjusted.

### Safety information

#### **WARNING**

There is a risk of jamming when folding down the center armrest in the rear. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the center armrest is clear during folding down.◀

### Overview



- 1 Resetting to standard position
- 2 Head restraint, upper backrest
- 3 Lumbar support
- 4 Folding the footrest out/in
- 5 Forward/backward, seat tilt
- 6 Backrest tilt
- 7 Adjust front passenger seat

### Resetting to standard position



 Press button to reset to standard position.

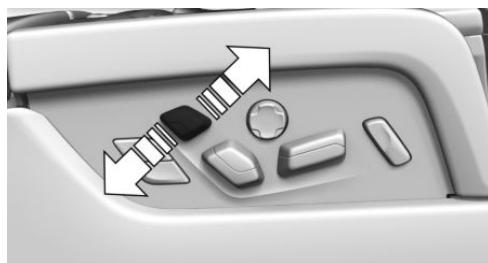
The process is canceled if the button is pressed again.

### Upper backrest

#### Concept

The upper backrest supports the back in the shoulder area. A correct setting leads to a relaxed seating position and reduces strain on the shoulder muscles.

### Settings



Push switch forward or backward.

### Lumbar support

#### Concept

The curvature of the seat backrest can be adjusted in a way that it supports the lumbar region of the spine. The lower back and the spine are supported for upright posture.

## Settings



- ▷ Press the front/rear section of the button:  
The curvature is increased/decreased.
- ▷ Press the upper/lower section of the button:  
The curvature is shifted up/down.

## Folding the footrest out/in

### General information

The distance between the front passenger seat and the rear seat must be sufficiently large to unfold the footrest on the backrest of the front passenger seat.

## Settings



Press the upper or lower section of the button.

## Forward/backward



Push switch forward or backward.

## Seat tilt



Move switch up or down.

## Backrest tilt



Move switch forward or backward.

## Adjusting the front passenger seat from the rear

### Concept

The front passenger seat can be operated from the rear, e.g., to increase the legroom in the rear.

### General information

The switch for adjusting the upper backrest, refer to page 89, can be used to set the angle of the screen in the rear on the passenger side.

## Settings



1.  Press button.
2. Adjust the passenger seat, e.g., forward/back.
3.  Press the button to deactivate the function.

The function deactivates itself automatically after some time.

## BMW Touch Command

The rear seats can also be operated via BMW Touch Command.

## Safety belts

### Number of safety belts and safety belt buckles

The vehicle is fitted with four or five safety belts to ensure occupants' safety. However, they can only offer protection when adjusted correctly.

The two outer safety belt buckles of the rear seats are intended for the persons sitting on the left and right.

The center safety belt buckle of the rear seats is intended for the person sitting in the middle.

### General information

Always make sure that safety belts are being worn by the occupants before driving off. The airbags supplement the safety belts as an ad-

ditional safety device. The airbags are not a substitute for safety belts.

The upper shoulder strap's anchorage point will be correct for adult seat occupants of every build if the seat is correctly adjusted.

### Safety information

#### WARNING

If the safety belt is used to buckle more than one person, the efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts can no longer be ensured. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not allow more than one person to wear a single safety belt. Infants and children are not allowed on an occupant's lap, but must be transported and secured in designated child restraint systems.◀

#### WARNING

The efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts, can be limited or lost when safety belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened safety belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that all occupants are wearing safety belts correctly.◀

#### WARNING

The protective effect of the safety belts may not be fully functional or fail in the following situations:

- ▷ The safety belts or safety belt buckles are damaged, soiled, or changed in any other way.
- ▷ Belt tensioners or belt retractors were modified.

Safety belts can be imperceptibly damaged in the event of an accident. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not modify safety belts, safety belt buckles, belt tensioners, belt retractors or belt anchors and keep them clean. Have the safety belts checked after an

accident at the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◀

## Correct use of safety belts

- ▷ Wear the safety belt twist-free and tight to your body over your lap and shoulders.
- ▷ Wear the safety belt deep on your hips over your lap. The safety belt may not press on your stomach.
- ▷ Do not rub the safety belt against sharp edges, or guide it or jam it in across hard or fragile objects.
- ▷ Avoid thick clothing.
- ▷ Re-tighten the safety belt frequently upward around your upper body.

## Buckling the safety belt

1. Slowly guide the safety belt out of the holder when fastening it.
2. Insert the tongue plate into the safety belt buckle. The safety belt buckle must engage audibly.



When the safety belt is fastened, the driver's and passenger's belt straps are automatically tightened once after driving away.

## Unbuckling the safety belt

1. Hold the safety belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the safety belt buckle.
3. Guide the safety belt back into its roll-up mechanism.

## Rear belt guide



When fastening the safety belts on the rear seats, make sure that the belt guide loop is closed.

## Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and front passenger seat

### Display



The indicator light lights up and a signal sounds. Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly. The safety belt reminder can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

### Safety mode

In critical situations, for instance during an emergency stop, the front safety belts tighten automatically.

If the situation passes without an accident occurring, the belt tension relaxes.

If the belt tension does not loosen automatically, stop the vehicle and unbuckle the safety belt using the red button in the safety belt buckle. Fasten the safety belt before continuing on your trip.

## Front head restraints

### General information

The current head restraint position can be stored using the memory function, refer to page 98.

## Safety information



### WARNING

A missing protective effect due to removed or not correctly adjusted head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- ▷ Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.
- ▷ Adjust the head restraint so its center supports the back of the head at as close to eye level as possible.
- ▷ Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. If necessary, adjust the distance by adjusting the tilt of the backrest.◀



### WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.◀



### WARNING

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

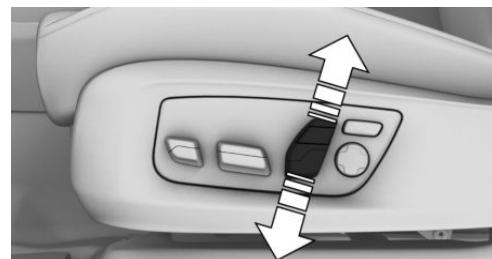
- ▷ Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- ▷ Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- ▷ Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- ▷ Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.◀

## Active head restraint

In the event of a rear-end collision with a certain severity, the active head restraint automatically reduces the distance from the head.

Have the active head restraint checked and if necessary replaced in the case of damage or if it was exposed to an accident.

## Adjusting the height



Push switch up or down.

If the vehicle is equipped with Executive Lounge Seating: the height of the head restraint on the front passenger side cannot be adjusted.

## Adjusting the distance: manual head restraints



- ▷ Back: press the button and push the head restraint toward the rear.
- ▷ Forward: pull the head restraint toward the front.

## Adjusting the distance: electrical head restraints

The head restraint is automatically repositioned when the upper backrest is adjusted.

## Adjusting the side extensions



Fold the side extensions on the head restraint forward for increased lateral support in the resting position.

## Removing

The head restraints cannot be removed.

## Rear head restraints

### Safety information



#### WARNING

A missing protective effect due to removed or not correctly adjusted head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- ▷ Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.
- ▷ Adjust the head restraint so its center supports the back of the head at as close to eye level as possible.
- ▷ Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. If necessary, adjust the distance by adjusting the tilt of the backrest.◀



#### WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.◀



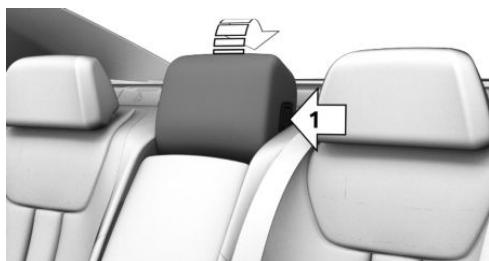
#### WARNING

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- ▷ Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- ▷ Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- ▷ Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- ▷ Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.◀

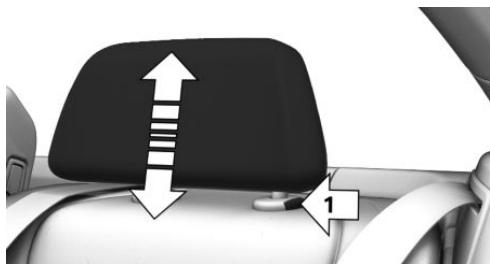
## Folding down the middle head restraint

To improve the view to the rear, the center head restraint can be folded to the rear. Only push the head restraint down if no one will be sitting in the center seat.



- ▷ To the rear: press the button, arrow 1, and fold the head restraint backward.
- ▷ To the front: fold head restraint forward until the head restraint engages.

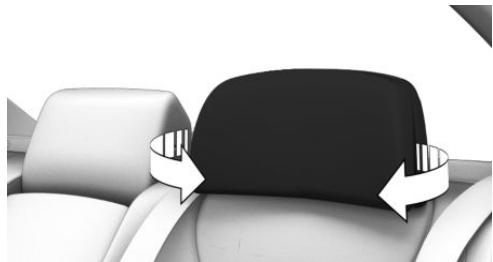
## Adjusting the height: manual head restraints



The height of the outer head restraints can be adjusted.

- ▷ To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.
- ▷ To raise: push the head restraint up.

## Adjusting the side extensions



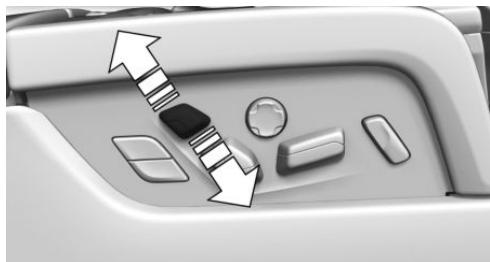
Fold the side extensions on the head restraint forward for increased lateral support in the resting position.

## Adjusting the height: electrical head restraints

### General information

The height adjustment of the head restraint is deactivated when the safety switch for the rear windows, refer to page 81, has been pressed.

### Switches in the vehicle



Push the switch in the center armrest up or down.

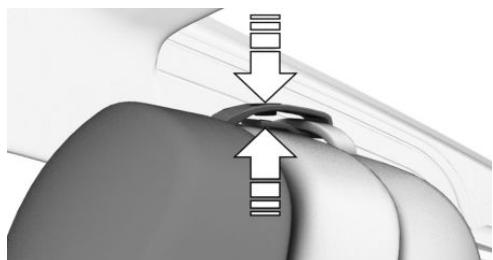
## Cushions for the head restraints in the rear

Only use the pillow when the vehicle is switched off.

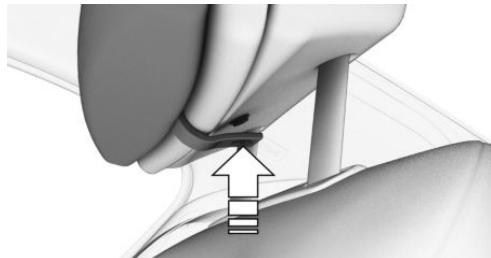
1. Pull the upper tab through the loop on the top of the head restraint.



2. Close both pushbuttons.



- The head restraint folds into the topmost position.
- Close the pushbutton on the lower tab and the pushbutton on the bottom of the head restraint.



## Removing

The head restraints cannot be removed.

## Mirrors

### Exterior mirrors

#### General information

The mirror on the front passenger side is more curved than the driver's side mirror.

The mirror setting is stored for the driver profile currently in use. When the vehicle is unlocked via the remote control, the position is automatically retrieved if the function, refer to page 77, is activated for this purpose.

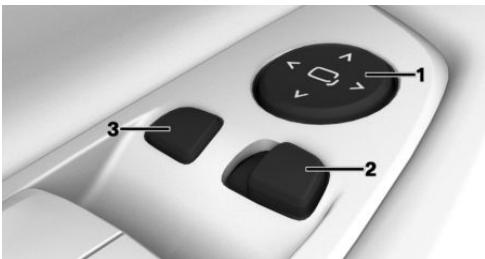
The current exterior mirror position can be stored using the memory function, refer to page 98.

#### Safety information

##### **WARNING**

Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. The distance to the traffic behind could be incorrectly estimated, for instance while changing lanes. There is a risk of an accident. Estimate the distance to the traffic behind by looking over your shoulder.◀

## Overview



- Settings
- Selecting a mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor
- Folding in and out

### Adjusting electrically

 Press button.

The selected mirror moves along with the button movement.

### Selecting a mirror

 To change over to the other mirror:  
Slide the switch.

### Malfunction

In case of an electrical malfunction, adjust the mirror by pressing the edges of the mirror glass.

### Folding in and out

 **NOTE**

Depending on the vehicle width, the vehicle can be damaged in vehicle washes. There is a risk of property damage. Before washing, fold in the mirrors by hand or with the button.◀

 Press button.

Folding is only possible up to a speed of approx. 15 mph/20 km/h.

Folding the mirrors in and out is helpful in the following situations:

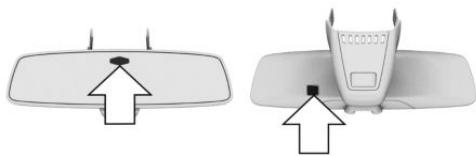
- ▷ In vehicle washes.
- ▷ On narrow roads.

Mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

## Automatic heating

Both exterior mirrors are automatically heated whenever drive-ready state is switched on.

## Overview



## Automatic dimming feature

The exterior mirror on the driver's side is automatically dimmed. Photocells in the car's interior mirror, refer to page 97, are used to control this.

## Automatic Curb Monitor, exterior mirror

### Concept

If reverse gear is engaged, the mirror glass on the front passenger side is tilted downward. This improves your view of the curb and other low-lying obstacles when parking, for instance.

### Activating

1.  Slide the switch to the driver's side mirror position.
2. Engage selector lever position R.

### Deactivating



Slide the switch to the passenger's side mirror position.

## Interior mirror

### General information

The interior mirror is dimmed automatically.

Photocells are used for control:

- ▷ In the mirror glass.
- ▷ On the back of the mirror.

### Functional requirements

- ▷ Keep the photocells clean.
- ▷ Do not cover the area between the inside rearview mirror and the windshield.

### Rear vanity mirror

#### Folding down



Press the vanity mirror.

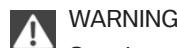
The vanity mirror folds down. The angle can be adjusted by hand.

#### Folding up

Press the vanity mirror up.

## Steering wheel

### Safety information



Steering wheel adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected steering wheel movements. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a

risk of an accident. Adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is stationary only.◀

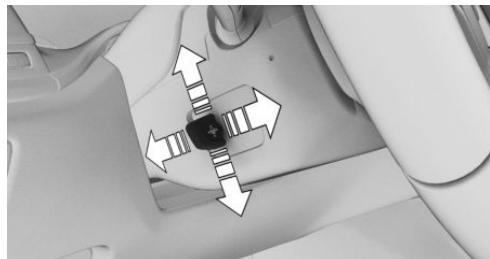
## Electric steering wheel adjustment

### General information

The steering wheel setting is stored for the driver profile currently in use. When the drive-ready state is switched on, the position is automatically retrieved if the function, refer to page 77, is activated for this purpose.

The current steering wheel position can be stored using the memory function, refer to page 98.

### Settings



Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seating position by pressing the switch.

### Assistance getting in and out

The steering wheel temporarily moves into the highest position to make it easier to enter and exit the vehicle.

## Heated steering wheel

### Overview



Heated steering wheel

### Switching on/off



Press button.

The LED is lit when the heated steering wheel is switched on.

If the trip is resumed within approx. 15 minutes after an intermediate stop, the heated steering wheel activates automatically if the function was switched on at the end of the last trip.

## Memory function

### Concept

The following settings can be stored and, if necessary, retrieved using the memory function:

- ▷ Seat position.
- ▷ Exterior mirror position.
- ▷ Steering wheel position.
- ▷ Height of the Head-up Display.

### General information

Two memory locations with different settings can be set for each driver profile, refer to page 74.

The following settings are not stored:

- ▷ Backrest width.
- ▷ Lumbar support.
- ▷ Footrest.

## Safety information



### WARNING

Using the memory function while driving can lead to unexpected seat or steering wheel movements. Vehicle control could be lost.

There is a risk of an accident. Only retrieve the memory function when the vehicle is stationary.◀



### WARNING

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.◀

## Overview

### Front



The memory buttons are located on the front doors.

### Rear



The memory buttons are located on the rear doors.

### Storing

1. Set the desired position.
2. **SET** Press button. The writing on the button lights up.
3. Press desired button 1 or 2 while the LED is lit. A signal sounds.

### Calling up settings

The stored position is called up automatically.

Press selected button 1 or 2.

The procedure stops when a switch for setting the seat is pressed or one of the memory buttons is pressed again.

While driving, the seat position adjustment on the driver's side is interrupted after a short time.

### BMW Touch Command

The memory function can also be operated on the front passenger seat and in the rear via BMW Touch Command.

## Massage function

### Concept

Depending on the program, the massage function ensures relaxed muscles and better blood circulation and can avoid fatigue.

## General information

Eight different massage programs can be selected:

- ▷ Pelvis activation.
- ▷ Upper body activation.
- ▷ Full body activation.
- ▷ Back massage.
- ▷ Shoulder massage.
- ▷ Lumbar massage.
- ▷ Upper body training.
- ▷ Full body training.

## Overview

### Front



Massage function

### Rear



Massage function

## Switching on



Press button once for each intensity level.

The maximum intensity level is reached when three LEDs are lit.

## Switching off



Press and hold the button, until the LEDs go out.

## Adjusting the massage program

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Seat comfort"
4. Select desired seat.
5. "Seat massage"
6. Select the desired setting.

## BMW Touch Command

Operation of the massage function is also possible via BMW Touch Command.

## Executive Lounge Seating

### Concept

The Executive Lounge Seating function offers maximum legroom and increased traveling comfort to the rear passenger on the passenger's side.

### General information

The following settings are applied automatically on system activation:

- ▷ The front passenger seat moves forward and adjusts the height, if necessary.
- ▷ Backrest and head restraint of the front passenger seat are inclined forward.

- ▷ The tilt of the screen in the rear is adjusted to the backrest incline of the front passenger seat.
- ▷ The footrest on the backrest of the front passenger seat folds out.
- ▷ The backrest of the rear seat inclines to the rear.

The adjusted end position can be manually adjusted, refer to page 89, and if required stored using the memory function, refer to page 98.

## Resetting to standard position



 Press button to reset to standard position.

The process is canceled if the button is pressed again.

## Safety information



### WARNING

If Executive Lounge Seating is activated, the view on the exterior mirror on the front passenger side can be obstructed. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust the front passenger seat such that the view on the exterior mirror is not obstructed.◀

## Overview



Executive Lounge Seating

## Switching on



Press button.

## Vitality program

### Concept

Different muscles can be trained using the vitality program in the rear. Active movements help in preventing signs of fatigue.

### General information

A calibration sequence is performed after each start of the vitality program. Here, the intensity of the exercises is set individually.

Videos on the respective screens in the rear show which motions should be executed. A display provides information about the remaining duration of each exercise.

Color bars indicate, whether an exercise is executed correctly:

- ▷ Green: exercise is performed correctly.
- ▷ Gray: the pressure is too weak.
- ▷ Red: the pressure is too strong.

The goal of the exercises is to keep the bar display in the green area as long as possible. Every exercise is evaluated by awarding stars.

## Switching on

On the screens in the rear:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Seat comfort"
4. "BMW Vitality Program"

## Switching off

On the screens in the rear:

1. Press left arrow button on the remote control in the rear.
2. "Stop"

## BMW Touch Command

The vitality program can also be operated using BMW Touch Command.

## Seat and armrest heating

### General information

The system heats seats and armrests as needed. Seat heating can also be used without armrest heating.

### Overview

#### Front



Seat and armrest heating

#### Rear



Seat and armrest heating

### Switching on



Press button once for each temperature level.

Highest level if three bars are shown on the climate control display.

If the trip is continued within approx. 15 minutes after a stop, seat and armrest heating is activated automatically with the temperature selected last.

When ECO PRO, refer to page 270, is activated, the heater output is reduced.

### Switching off



Press button and hold until bar display on the climate control display goes out.

### Seat heating distribution

The heating action in the seat cushion and the seat backrest can be distributed in different ways.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Climate functions"
4. "Seat and armrest heating"

5. Select the desired seat, if needed.
6. Press the Controller and turn it to set the seat heating distribution.

## Switching armrest heating on/off

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Climate functions"
4. "Seat and armrest heating"
5. Select desired seat.
6. "Heat armrests together with seat"

## Active seat ventilation

### Concept

The seat cushion and backrest surfaces are cooled by means of integrated fans.

The ventilation cools the seat, e.g., if the vehicle interior is overheated or for continuous cooling at high temperatures.

### Overview

#### Front



Active seat ventilation

#### Rear



 Active seat ventilation

#### Switching on

 Press button once for each ventilation level.

Highest level if three bars are shown on the climate control display.

The ventilation switches back by one level after a short time.

#### Switching off

 Press button and hold until bar display on the climate control display goes out.

# Transporting children safely

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

## The right place for children

### Safety information



#### WARNING

Unattended children or animals can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, e.g., due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the remote control with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.◀

### Always transport children in the rear seat

#### General information

Accident research shows that the safest place for children is in the rear seat.

Transport children younger than 13 years of age or shorter than 5 ft/150 cm only in the rear

seat in suitable child restraint systems designed for the age, weight and size of the child. Children 13 years of age or older must wear a safety belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system can no longer be used due to their age, weight and size.

### Safety information



#### WARNING

The safety belt cannot be fastened correctly on children shorter than 5 ft, 150 cm without suitable additional child restraint systems. The efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts, can be limited or lost when safety belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened safety belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Secure children shorter than 5 ft, 150 cm using suitable child restraint systems.◀

### Children on the front passenger seat

#### General information

Before using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, ensure that the front, knee, and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated. Automatic deactivation of front-seat passenger airbags, refer to page 159.

### Safety information



#### WARNING

Active front-seat passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are activated. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front-seat passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp lights up.◀

## Installing child restraint systems

### General information

Pay attention to the information, operating and safety information of the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, installing and using child restraint systems.

### Safety information



#### WARNING

The protective effect of damaged child restraint systems or of child restraint systems exposed to an accident and their fastening systems can be limited or lost. A child can e.g., not sufficiently restrained, for instance in the event of an accident or braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Have damaged child restraint systems or of child restraint systems exposed to an accident and their fastening systems checked and possibly replaced by the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◀



#### WARNING

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.◀

## On the front passenger seat

### Deactivating airbags



#### WARNING

Active front-seat passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are activated. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front-seat passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp lights up.◀

After installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, make sure that the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated.

Deactivate the front-seat passenger airbags automatically, refer to page [159](#).

### Seat position and height

Before installing a child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go and, if possible, bring it up to medium height. This seat position and height ensures the best possible position for the belt and offers optimal protection in the event of an accident.

If the upper anchor of the safety belt is located in front of the belt guide of the child seat, move the front passenger seat carefully forward until the best possible belt guide position is reached.

### Backrest width

Adjustable backrest width: before installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, open the backrest width completely. Do not change the backrest width again and do not call up a memory position.

## Child seat security



The safety belts in the rear and the front passenger safety belt can be permanently locked to fasten child restraint systems.

### Locking the safety belt

1. Pull out the belt strap completely.
2. Secure the child restraint system with the safety belt.
3. Allow the belt strap to be pulled in and pull it tight against the child restraint system.

The safety belt is locked.

### Unlocking the safety belt

1. Unbuckle the safety belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint system.
3. Allow the belt strap to be pulled in completely.

## LATCH child restraint fixing system

### General information

LATCH: Lower Anchors and Tether for Children.

Pay attention to the information, operating and safety information of the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, installing and using LATCH child restraint fixing systems.

## Mounts for the lower LATCH anchors

### General information

The lower anchors may be used to attach the CRS to the vehicle seat up to a combined child and CRS weight of 65 lb/30 kg when the child is restrained by the internal harnesses.

### Safety information

 **WARNING** If the LATCH child restraint fixing systems are not correctly engaged, the protective effect of the LATCH child restraint fixing system can be limited. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the lower anchors are securely engaged and that the LATCH child restraint fixing system fits securely against the backrest.◀

### Position

Symbol	Meaning
 	The corresponding symbol shows the mounts for the lower LATCH anchors. Seats equipped with lower anchors are marked with a pair, 2, of LATCH symbols.
	For vehicles equipped with a middle seat: It is not recommended to use the inner lower anchors of standard outer LATCH positions to fasten a child restraint system on the middle seat. Use the vehicle safety belt instead for the middle seat.

### Before installing LATCH child restraint fixing systems

Pull the safety belt away from the area of the child restraint system.

## Without comfort rear seats: assembly of LATCH child restraint fixing systems

1. Install child restraint system, see manufacturer's information.
2. Ensure that both LATCH anchors are properly connected.

## With comfort rear seats: assembly of LATCH child restraint fixing systems

1. Before mounting, adjust the seats to their basic position, refer to page 89.
2. For better accessibility, tilt the backrest back slightly.
3. Install child restraint system, see manufacturer's information.
4. Ensure that both LATCH anchors are properly connected.
5. After mounting, move the backrest back up slightly so that the child restraint system rests lightly against the backrest.

## Child restraint systems with tether strap

### Safety information



#### WARNING

If the upper retaining strap is incorrectly used for the child restraint system, the protective effect can be reduced. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the upper retaining strap is not guided across sharp edges and without twisting to the upper retaining strap.◀



#### WARNING

If the rear backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the child restraint system is limited or there is none. In particular situations, for instance braking maneuvers or in case of an accident, the rear backrest can fold forward. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the rear backrests are locked.◀



#### NOTE

The mounting points for the upper retaining straps of child restraint systems are only provided for these retaining straps. When other objects are mounted, the anchors can be damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Only mount child restraint systems to the upper retaining straps.◀

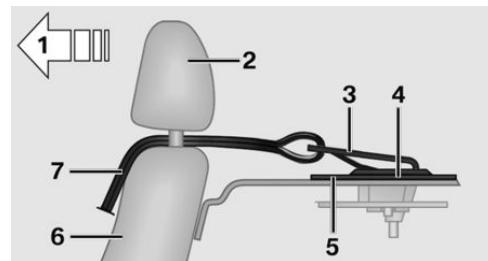
### Anchors



The respective symbol shows the anchor for the upper retaining strap.

Seats with an upper top tether are marked with this symbol. It can be found on the rear seat backrest or the rear window shelf.

### Routing the retaining strap



1 Direction of travel

2 Head restraint

3 Hook for upper retaining strap

4 Anchor

5 Rear window shelf

6 Seat backrest

7 Upper retaining strap

### Attaching the upper retaining strap to the anchor

1. Open the anchor cover.
2. Raise the head restraint.
3. Guide the upper retaining strap between the supports of the head restraint.

Guide it over the head restraint of the middle seat.

4. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the anchor.
5. Tighten the retaining strap by pulling it down.
6. Lower and lock head restraints as needed.

## Locking the doors and windows in the rear

### General information

In certain situations it may be advisable to secure the rear doors and windows, for instance when transporting children.

### Doors



Push the locking lever on the rear doors up.

The door can now be opened from the outside only.

### Safety switch for the rear



Press button on the driver's door.

This locks various functions so that they cannot be operated from the rear. Safety switch, refer to page 81.

# Driving

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

## Start/Stop button

### Concept



Pressing the Start/Stop button switches drive-ready state on or off, refer to page 21.

Drive-ready state is switched on when you depress the brake pedal while pressing the Start/Stop button.

Pressing the Start/Stop button again switches drive-ready state back off and standby state, refer to page 21, is switched back on.

Drive-ready state cannot be switched on, as long as the charging cable is connected, refer to page 278.

## Drive-ready state

### Concept

The following are the different drive-ready state variants:

- ▷ Electric drive-ready state, refer to page 110.

The vehicle is powered by the electric motor.

- ▷ Starting the combustion engine, refer to page 110.

The vehicle is powered by the combustion engine.

### Safety information



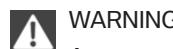
#### DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can enter into the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.◀



#### WARNING

When driving in electric mode, pedestrians and other traffic might pay less attention to the vehicle due to the lack of engine noise. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀



#### WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, e.g., with a wheel chock.◀



## WARNING

Unattended children or animals can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, e.g., due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the remote control with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.◀

## Switching on drive-ready state

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Depress brake pedal.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

Most of the indicator/warning lights in the instrument cluster illuminate for a varied length of time depending on the duration of the system check.

Depending on the prerequisite, the electric drive-ready state or a combustion engine start is possible.

## Electric drive-ready state

### General information

The vehicle is ready for driving without starting the combustion engine.

### Functional requirements

The electric drive-ready state is possible, if the prerequisites for electric driving, refer to page 112, are fulfilled.

## Display in the instrument cluster



When the drive-ready state is switched on, READY is displayed in the instrument cluster.

## Starting the combustion engine

### Functional requirements

The combustion engine is started under the following conditions when the drive-ready state is switched on, refer to page 110:

- ▷ The temperature of the hybrid system is too high or too low.
- ▷ The high-voltage battery has an insufficient charge.

### Driving away

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. Engage selector lever position D, M/S or R.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Drive away.

### Switching off drive-ready state

After stopping the vehicle:

1. Engage selector lever position P.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.
3. Set the parking brake.

After parking the vehicle, you may hear noises due to operation of the hybrid system, such as for cooling of the high-voltage battery.

## Auto Start/Stop function

### Concept

The Auto Start/Stop function helps save fuel. The system switches off the combustion engine when conditions for electric driving have been met. The standby state remains on.

## General information

READY is displayed in the instrument cluster. If necessary, the combustion engine starts automatically.

The combustion engine is also stopped during the trip when rolling without acceleration or braking. This driving condition, in which the vehicle is traveling without power and energy recovery is not active, is referred to as coasting, refer to page 113.

The combustion engine is not switched off automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ The combustion engine is not at operating temperature.
- ▷ The transmission selector lever is in position M/S.
- ▷ High-voltage battery is heavily discharged or vehicle electrical system is heavily burdened.
- ▷ High stress of the automatic climate control in the heating or cooling phase.
- ▷ The engine compartment lid is unlocked.
- ▷ The vehicle is being optimized for the current driving style, e.g., during the break-in period or after a service appointment.
- ▷ The hybrid system is malfunctioning.

## Safety mode

An automatically stopped combustion engine does not start independently:

- ▷ With the driver's door open, if neither the brake pedal nor the accelerator pedal is depressed, and the driver's safety belt is not fastened.

- ▷ When the hood is unlocked.

The indicator lights come on. The combustion engine can only be started via the Start/Stop button.

## Switching off the vehicle during an automatic engine stop

During an automatic engine stop, the vehicle can be switched off permanently, for instance when leaving it.

1. Press the Start/Stop button.
  - ▷ The standby state is activated.
  - ▷ The Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.
  - ▷ Selector lever position P is engaged automatically.
2. Set the parking brake.

## Malfunction

The Auto Start/Stop function no longer switches off the combustion engine automatically in the event of a malfunction. A message is displayed. It is possible to continue driving. Have the system checked.

## Electric driving: ePOWER

### General information

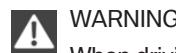
While driving electrically with ePOWER, the vehicle is powered by the electric motor. The system runs automatically.

Depending on the charge state of the high-voltage battery, maximum speed, the vehicle's capacity to accelerate, and range can vary.

For electrical driving, certain conditions, refer to page 112, must be satisfied.

Displays of the hybrid system, refer to page 131.

### Safety information



#### WARNING

When driving in electric mode, pedestrians and other traffic might pay less attention to the vehicle due to the lack of engine noise. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving

style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

## Functional requirements

- ▷ State of charge and temperature of the high-voltage battery is sufficient.
- ▷ Selector lever position D or R engaged.
- ▷ The accelerator pedal is only slightly depressed.
- ▷ The possible maximum speed for electric driving is not exceeded.
- ▷ COMFORT or ECO PRO driving mode is selected.

## eDRIVE button

### General information

Using the eDRIVE button, the characteristics of the hybrid system can be adjusted.

The different hybrid modes can be manually activated in the following sequence:

- ▷ Auto eDRIVE, refer to page 112
- ▷ MAX eDrive, refer to page 112
- ▷ BATTERY CONTROL, refer to page 113

Different system-related maximum speeds apply to the different settings. The respectively possible speed range is indicated by a blue marking in the speedometer.

## Overview



eDRIVE button

## Auto eDRIVE

### General information

Auto eDRIVE is activated by default when the vehicle is started via the Start/Stop button.

In Auto eDRIVE, the vehicle is driven in hybrid mode corresponding to the various driving situations, i.e. the drive combines combustion engine and electric motor. The respectively most effective drive type is preferred.

eDRIVE

The symbol is displayed while driving electrically in AUTO eDRIVE.

## MAX eDRIVE

### General information

MAX  
eDRIVE

The vehicle is driven exclusively electrically.

If necessary, the maximum speed that applies to MAX eDRIVE may be deliberately exceeded with the aid of kickdown, refer to page 124. The combustion engine is automatically started and the system switches to AUTO eDRIVE mode. Automatic starting of the engine while driving, refer to page 114.

## Activating MAX eDRIVE

**eDRIVE** Press button repeatedly until MAX eDRIVE is displayed in the instrument cluster.

When pressing the button, the current eDRIVE setting is graphically displayed on the Control Display.

## BATTERY CONTROL

### General information



A certain charge state of the high-voltage battery can be maintained with BATTERY CONTROL. This charge state can be adjusted. The electric range can be conserved in this way for a later point in the trip, for instance.

If the current charge state is too low, the battery is charged during the trip. This charging process increases the average fuel consumption.

### Activating BATTERY CONTROL



Press the button repeatedly until BATTERY CONTROL is displayed in the instrument cluster.



The BATTERY CONTROL symbol is displayed in the instrument cluster.

When pressing the button, the current eDRIVE setting is graphically displayed on the Control Display.

### Adjusting the charge state

The charge state can be set in various ways.

Using the eDRIVE button:

1. Press the eDRIVE button repeatedly until BATTERY CONTROL is displayed in the instrument cluster and on the Control Display.
2. Select "Set target value" on the Control Display.
3. "Target value:" set the desired value.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"

### 3. "BATTERY CONTROL"

#### 4. "Target value:"

#### 5. Set the desired value.

The charge state to be conserved is displayed as a percentage value on the Control Display.

A marking is set in the instrument cluster for the adjusted value in the charge state indicator of the high-voltage battery, refer to page 131.

### Auto Start/Stop function, coasting

#### Concept

The combustion engine is automatically stopped and disengaged from the drivetrain. This driving condition of rolling is referred to as coasting.

After coasting, the combustion engine or electric motor provides the necessary drive power automatically again, depending on the hybrid mode.

#### Functional requirements

Coasting is possible under the following conditions:

- ▷ The high-voltage battery is sufficiently charged.
- ▷ Transmission position D is engaged.
- ▷ The drive system is at operating temperature.
- ▷ In ECO PRO: mode, when coasting, without operating the brake, at speeds below 100 mph, approx. 160 km/h.

### Acoustic pedestrian protection

#### Concept

Depending on the country-specific version, the system generates a continuous driving noise at standstill with the drive-ready state activated and during electric driving up to approx. 20 mph/30 km/h.

A speaker system broadcasts the noise to the surroundings.

As a result, other traffic participants, e.g., pedestrians or cyclists, can better perceive the vehicle.

## Driving with the combustion engine: POWER

### Concept

The combustion engine provides the main drive power to move the vehicle. If necessary, the high-voltage battery is charged at the same time.

### Functional requirements

#### Automatic starting while driving

The combustion engine is automatically started under the following conditions while driving:

- ▷ During intense accelerations or on uphill grades.
- ▷ By pressing the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position, kickdown.
- ▷ The high-voltage battery has an insufficient charge.
- ▷ Selector lever position M/S is engaged.
- ▷ Adapting to the course of the road when destination guidance is activated.
- ▷ System-related requirement for hybrid components.

#### Automatic switching off while driving

When reducing speed, the combustion engine is switched off when the conditions for electric driving, refer to page 112, are met.

## Assistance from the electric motor

### Concept

The combustion engine provides the main drive power to move the vehicle.

The electric motor provides assistance as needed with additional propulsive power.

### eASSIST

During normal vehicle operation, the electric motor assists the combustion engine, depending on the situation.

### eBOOST

Accelerating quickly, such as when passing, requires the maximum available power from the electric motor. To do this, apply extra force to the accelerator pedal.

## Energy recovery: CHARGE

### Concept

The hybrid system makes it possible to convert kinetic energy into electrical power when braking and coasting. This recovered energy charges the high-voltage battery. If necessary, this stored electrical energy is output to the electric motor.

### General information

Depending on the settings of the Driving Dynamics Control, refer to page 126, the high-voltage battery is charged at different speeds and the vehicle decelerated differently while coasting.

### Functional requirements

The following conditions must be met to recover kinetic energy:

- ▷ The vehicle is moving.
- ▷ Selector lever position D, M/S is set.

- ▷ The high-voltage battery is not fully charged.

## Displays in the instrument cluster

Energy recovery displays in the instrument cluster, refer to page 132.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the remote control with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.◀

## Parking brake

### Concept

The parking brake is used to prevent the vehicle from rolling when it is parked.

### Safety information

#### **WARNING**

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, e.g., with a wheel chock.◀

#### **WARNING**

Unattended children or animals can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, e.g., due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

### Overview



#### **(P)** Parking brake

### Setting

#### With a stationary vehicle

##### **(P)** Pull the switch.

The LED lights up.

##### **PARK (P)** The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates red. The parking brake is set.

### While driving

To use as emergency brake while driving:

Pull the switch and hold it. The vehicle brakes hard while the switch is being pulled.

##### **PARK (P)** The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster illuminates red, a signal sounds, and the brake lights illuminate.

A Check Control message is displayed.

If the vehicle is slowed down to a speed of approx. 2 mph/3 km/h the parking brake is set.

## Releasing

### Releasing manually

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2.  Press the switch while stepping on the brake pedal or selector lever position P is set.

The LED and indicator light go out.

The parking brake is released.

### Automatic release

The parking brake is released automatically when you drive away.

The LED and indicator light go out.

### Automatic Hold

#### Concept

This system assists the driver by automatically setting and releasing the brake, such as when moving in stop-and-go traffic.

The vehicle is automatically held in place when it is stationary.

On inclines, the system prevents the vehicle from rolling backward when driving off.

### General information

Under the following conditions, the parking brake is automatically engaged:

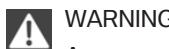
- ▷ Drive-ready state is switched off.
- ▷ The driver's door is opened while the vehicle is stationary.
- ▷ The moving vehicle is brought to a standstill using the parking brake.

### Display



The indicator light changes from green to red.

## Safety information

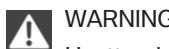


### WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, e.g., with a wheel chock.◀



### WARNING

Unattended children or animals can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, e.g., due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the remote control with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.◀



### NOTE

If the vehicle is stationary, Automatic Hold engages the parking brake. It prevents the vehicle from rolling in a vehicle wash.

There is a risk of property damage. Deactivate Automatic Hold prior to entering the vehicle wash.◀

## Overview



**AUTO H** Automatic Hold

## Establishing function readiness of Automatic Hold

1. Switch on drive-ready state.

2. **AUTO H** Press button.

The LED lights up.

**AUTO H** The indicator light lights up green.  
Automatic Hold is functional.

After every new vehicle start, the last selected setting is active.

## Automatic Hold holding the vehicle

Function readiness is established and the driver's door is closed.

After stepping on the brake pedal, e.g., when stopping at a traffic light, the vehicle is automatically secured against rolling.

**PARK (P)** The indicator lamp lights up green.

## Driving away

Step on the accelerator pedal to drive off.

The brake is released automatically and the indicator light is no longer illuminated.

## Activating the parking brake automatically

The parking brake is automatically set if drive-ready state is switched off while the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold or if the vehicle is exited.



The indicator light changes from green to red.

The parking brake is not set automatically, if the drive-ready state is switched off, while the vehicle is coasting to a halt. Automatic Hold is deactivated.

## Switching function readiness off



Press button.

The LED goes out.



The indicator lamp goes out.

Automatic Hold is switched off.

If the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold, press additionally on the brake pedal, when switching off.

## Malfunction

In the event of a failure or malfunction of the parking brake:

Secure the vehicle against rolling away, e.g., with a wheel chock, after existing the vehicle.

## After a power failure

To reestablish parking brake functionality after a power failure:

1. Switch on standby state.
2. **(P)** Pull the switch while stepping on the brake pedal or selector lever position P is set and then push.

This process may take a few seconds. Any sounds associated with this are normal.



The indicator light is no longer illuminated as soon as the parking brake is ready for operation again.

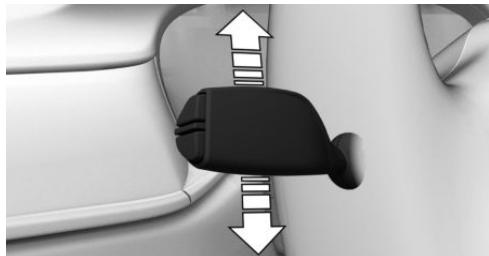
## Turn signal, high beams, headlight flasher

### Turn signal

#### Turn signal in exterior mirror

When driving and during operation of the turn signals or hazard warning system, do not fold in the exterior mirrors, so that the signal lights on the exterior mirror are easy to see.

#### Using turn signals



Press the lever past the resistance point.

#### Triple turn signal activation

Lightly tap the lever up or down.

The triple turn signal duration can be adjusted.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lighting"
4. "Exterior lighting"
5. "One-touch turn signal"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

### Signaling briefly

Press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

### High beams, headlight flasher

Push the lever forward or pull it backward.



- ▷ High beams on, arrow 1.
- ▷ High beams off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

## Washer/wiper system

### General information

Do not use the wipers if the windshield is dry, as this may damage the wiper blades or cause them to become worn more quickly.

### Safety information



#### WARNING

If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on. ▲

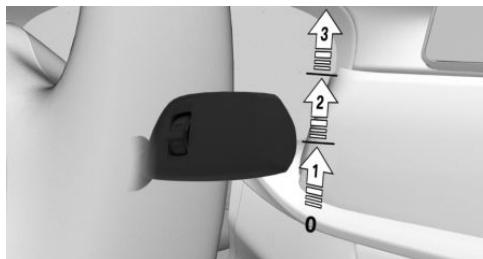


#### NOTE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There

is a risk of damage to property. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.◀

## Switching on

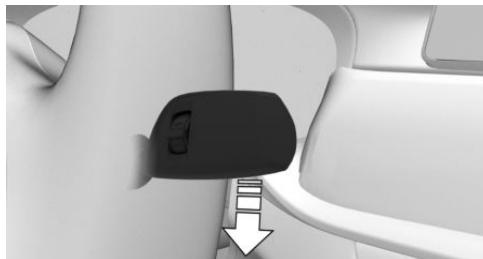


Press the lever up until the desired position is reached.

- ▷ Resting position of the wipers, position 0.
- ▷ Rain sensor, position 1.
- ▷ Normal wiper speed, position 2.
- ▷ Fast wiper speed, position 3.

When travel is interrupted with the wiper system switched on: when travel continues, the wipers resume at their previous speed.

## Switching off and brief wipe



Press the lever down.

- ▷ Switching off: press the lever down until it reaches its standard position.
- ▷ Brief wipe: press the lever down from the standard position.

The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

## Rain sensor

### Concept

The rain sensor automatically controls the time between wipes depending on the intensity of the rainfall.

### General information

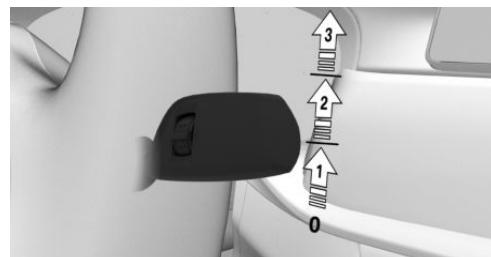
The sensor is located on the windshield, directly in front of the interior mirror.

### Safety information



**NOTE** If the rain sensor is activated, the wipers can accidentally start moving in vehicle washes. There is a risk of property damage. Deactivate the rain sensor in vehicle washes.◀

### Activating/deactivating

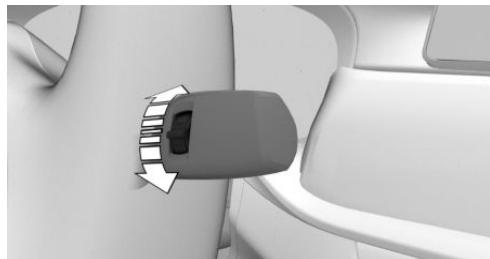


Press the lever up once from its standard position, arrow 1.

Wiping is started.

The LED in the wiper lever is illuminated.

## Adjusting the rain sensor sensitivity



Turn the thumbwheel to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Upward: high rain sensor sensitivity.

Downward: low rain sensor sensitivity.

## Windshield and headlight washer system

### Safety information



#### WARNING

The washer fluid can freeze onto the window at low temperatures and obstruct the view. There is a risk of an accident. Only use the washer systems, if the washer fluid cannot freeze. Use antifreeze, if needed.◀



#### NOTE

When the washer fluid reservoir is empty, the wash pump cannot work as intended.

There is a risk of property damage. Do not use the washer system when the washer fluid reservoir is empty.◀

## Cleaning the windshield



Pull the lever.

The system sprays washer fluid on the windshield and activates the wipers briefly.

In addition, the headlights are cleaned at regular intervals when the vehicle's lights are switched on.

## Windshield washer nozzles

The windshield washer nozzles are automatically heated while standby state is switched on.

## Fold-away position of the wipers

### Concept

The wipers can be folded away from the windshield in the fold-away position.

### General information

Important, e.g., when changing the wiper blades or when folding out under frosty conditions.

### Safety information



#### WARNING

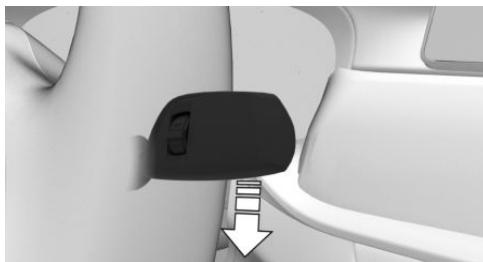
If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.◀

## ! NOTE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of damage to property. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.◀

## Folding away the wipers

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Press and hold the wiper lever down, until the wipers stop in a close to vertical position.



3. Fold the wipers all the way away from the windshield.



## Folding down the wipers

After the wipers are folded back down, the wiper system must be reactivated.

1. Fold the wipers back down onto the windshield.
2. Switch on standby state and press and hold the wiper lever down again.
3. Wipers return to their resting position and are ready again for operation.

## Washer fluid

### General information

All washer nozzles are supplied from one reservoir.

Use a mixture of tap water and windshield washer concentrate. If desired, a windshield washer concentrate containing antifreeze can be used.

Recommended minimum fill quantity: 0.2 US gal/1 liter.

### Safety information

#### ! WARNING

Some antifreeze agents can contain harmful substances and are flammable. There is a risk of fire and a risk of injury. Observe the instructions on the containers. Keep antifreeze away from ignition sources. Do not refill operating materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children.

United States: the washer fluid mixture ratio is regulated by the U.S. EPA and many individual states; do not exceed the allowable washer fluid dilution ratio limits that apply. Follow the usage instructions on the washer fluid container.

Use of BMW's Windshield Washer Concentrate or the equivalent is recommended.◀

#### ! WARNING

Washer fluid can ignite and catch fire on contact with hot engine parts. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Only add washer fluid when the engine is cooled down. Next, fully close the lid of the washer fluid reservoir.◀

#### ! NOTE

Silicon-containing additives in the washer fluid for the water-repelling effect on the windows can lead to damage to the washing system. There is a risk of property damage.

Do not add silicon-containing additives to the washer fluid.◀

### NOTE

Mixing different windshield washer concentrates or antifreeze can damage the washing system. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not mix different windshield washer concentrates or antifreeze. Follow the information and mixing ratios provided on the containers.◀

## Overview



The washer fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment.

## Malfunction

The use of undiluted windshield washer concentrate or alcohol-based antifreeze can lead to incorrect readings at temperatures below +5 °F/-15 °C.

## Steptronic transmission

### Concept

The Steptronic transmission combines the functions of an automatic transmission with the possibility of manual shifting, if needed.

## Safety information

### WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, e.g., with a wheel chock.◀

## Selector lever positions

### Drive mode D

Selector lever position for normal vehicle operation. All gears for forward travel are activated automatically.

### Reverse R

Engage selector lever position R only when the vehicle is stationary.

### Neutral N

The vehicle may be pushed or roll without power, for instance in vehicle washes, refer to page 123, in selector lever position N.

### Parking position P

Selector lever position, for instance for parking the vehicle. The transmission blocks the drive wheels in selector lever position P.

Engage selector lever position P only when the vehicle is stationary.

Selector lever position P is engaged automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ After drive-ready state is switched off and selector lever position R or D is engaged.

- ▷ If, with the vehicle stationary and the selector lever in position D or R, the driver's safety belt unbuckled, the driver's door is opened, and the brake pedal is not depressed.

returns to the center position when released.



## Engaging selector lever positions

### General information

To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a drive mode, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to start.

### Functional requirements

Only when the drive-ready state is switched on and the brake pedal is depressed is it possible to change from selector lever position P to another selector lever position.

## Engaging selector lever position D, N, R

A selector lever lock prevents the following faulty operation:

- ▷ Unintentional shifting into selector lever position R.
- ▷ Unintentional shifting from selector lever position P into another selector lever position.

1. Press and hold the button to release the selector lever lock.



2. With the driver's safety belt fastened, briefly push the selector lever in the desired direction, past a resistance point, if needed. The selector lever automatically

## Engaging selector lever position P



Press button P.

## Rolling or pushing the vehicle

### General information

In some situations, the vehicle is to roll without its own power for a short distance, for instance in a vehicle wash, or be pushed.

## Engaging selector lever position N

1. Switch on drive-ready state while pressing on the brake pedal.
2. If necessary, release the parking brake.
3. If necessary, switch off Automatic Hold, refer to page 116.
4. Depress the brake pedal.
5. Touch the selector lever lock and engage selector lever position N.
6. Switch off drive-ready state.

In this way, standby state remains switched on, and a Check Control message is displayed.

The vehicle may roll.



### NOTE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. There is a risk of property damage. Do not switch standby state off in vehicle washes. ▶

Irrespective of standby state, the selector lever position P is automatically engaged after approx. 35 minutes.

If there is a malfunction, you may not be able to change the selector lever position.

Electronically unlock the transmission lock, if needed, refer to page 125.

## Kickdown

Kickdown is used to achieve maximum driving performance.

Step on the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position.

## Sport program M/S

### Concept

The shifting points and shifting times in the Sport program are designed for a sportier driving style. The transmission, for instance shifts up later and the shifting times are shorter.

### Activating the sport program



Press the selector lever to the left out of selector lever position D.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, for instance S1.

The sport program of the transmission is activated.

eDRIVE electric driving and the Auto Start Stop function are deactivated. Coasting to a standstill and braking phases are used more often to recover energy. Depending on the driving situation, the high-voltage battery is charged at different speeds. Fuel consumption can increase.

### Ending the Sport program

Push the selector lever to the right.

D is displayed in the instrument cluster.

## Manual mode M/S

### Concept

Manual gear-shifting is possible in manual mode.

### Activating manual mode

1. Press the selector lever to the left out of selector lever position D, arrow 1.



2. Push the selector lever forward or pull it backward, arrows 2.

Manual mode becomes active and the gear is changed.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, for instance M1.

## Shifting

- ▷ To shift down: press the selector lever forward.
- ▷ To shift up: pull the selector lever rearwards.

The transmission continues shifting automatically in certain situations, for instance when speed limits are reached.

## Ending the manual mode

Push the selector lever to the right.

D is displayed in the instrument cluster.

## Shift paddles

### Concept

The shift paddles on the steering wheel allow you to shift gears quickly while keeping both hands on the steering wheel.

## General information

### Shifting

The vehicle only shifts at suitable engine and road speeds.

### Short-term manual mode

In selector lever position D, actuating a shift paddle switches into manual mode temporarily.

After conservative driving in manual mode without acceleration or shifting via the shift paddles for a certain amount of time, the transmission switches back to automatic mode.

It is possible to switch into automatic mode as follows:

- ▷ Pull and hold right shift paddle.
- ▷ In addition to the briefly pulled right shift paddle, briefly pull the left shift paddle.

## Continuous manual mode

In selector lever position S, actuating a shift paddle switches into manual mode permanently.

## Shifting



- ▷ To shift up: briefly pull right shift paddle.
- ▷ To shift down: briefly pull left shift paddle.
- ▷ The lowest possible gear can be selected by pulling and holding the left shift paddle.

The selected gear is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the current gear.

## Displays in the instrument cluster



The selector lever position is displayed, for example P.

## Electronic unlocking of the transmission lock

### General information

Electronically unlock the transmission lock to maneuver vehicle from a danger area.

Before unlocking the transmission lock, set the parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

## Engaging selector lever position N

1. Press and hold down brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button. Hold the Start/Stop button pressed.
3. With your free hand, press the button on the selector lever, arrow 1, and press the selector lever into selector lever position N and hold, arrow N, until selector lever position N is displayed in the instrument cluster.

A Check Control message is displayed.



4. Release Start/Stop button and selector lever.
5. Release brake.
6. Maneuver the vehicle from the danger area and secure it against moving on its own.

For additional information, see the chapter on tow-starting and towing, refer to page [332](#).

## Driving Dynamics Control

### Concept

The Driving Dynamics Control influences the driving dynamics properties of the vehicle. The vehicle can be adjusted depending on the situation using various driving modes.

### General information

The following systems are affected, for instance:

- ▶ Engine characteristics.
- ▶ Steptronic transmission.

- ▶ Dynamic Damping Control.
- ▶ Air suspension.
- ▶ Integral Active Steering.
- ▶ Display in the instrument cluster.
- ▶ Cruise control.
- ▶ Backrest width for comfort seats.

When drive-ready state is switched on, the COMFORT driving mode is selected automatically.

### Overview



### Displays in the instrument cluster



The selected driving mode is displayed in the instrument cluster.

### Driving modes

Button	Driving mode	Configuration
	SPORT	INDIVIDUAL
	COMFORT	PLUS
	ECO PRO	INDIVIDUAL
		ADAPTIVE

## Driving modes in detail

### COMFORT

#### Concept

Balanced tuning between dynamic and consumption-optimized driving.

#### Switching on



Press button repeatedly until COMFORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

### COMFORT PLUS

#### Concept

Particularly comfortable tuning for optimum traveling comfort.

#### Switching on



Press button repeatedly until COMFORT PLUS is displayed in the instrument cluster.

### SPORT

#### Concept

Dynamic tuning for higher agility.

#### General information

The high-voltage battery is increasingly charged through energy recovery.

#### Switching on



Press button repeatedly until SPORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

### SPORT INDIVIDUAL

#### Concept

Individual settings can be adjusted in the SPORT INDIVIDUAL driving mode.

### Configuration

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. If necessary, "Driving Experience Control"
4. "Configure SPORT INDIVIDUAL"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Reset SPORT INDIVIDUAL to the standard settings:

"Reset to SPORT STANDARD".

### ECO PRO

#### Concept

Consumption-optimized tuning.

#### General information

Reducing the energy recovery of the high-voltage battery optimizes consumption. The vehicle is operated more frequently in the coasting driving condition.

#### Switching on



Press button repeatedly until ECO PRO is displayed in the instrument cluster.

### ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL

#### Concept

Individual settings can be adjusted in the ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL driving mode.

#### Configuration

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. If necessary, "Driving Experience Control"

#### 4. "Configure ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL"

#### 5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Reset ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL to the standard settings:

"Reset to ECO PRO STANDARD".

## ADAPTIVE

### Concept

Comfort-oriented driving mode, whose tuning is automatically adjusted to the driving situation and driving style.

If the navigation system is active, upcoming road sections are considered.

### Switching on



Press button. ADAPTIVE is displayed in the instrument cluster.

## INDIVIDUAL configuration

### General information

The individual configuration of the driving mode is stored for the active driver profile. The last set configuration is activated directly when the driving mode is called up again.

### Activating configuration of the driving mode

Press button for the desired driving mode several times.

# Displays

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

## Instrument cluster

### Concept

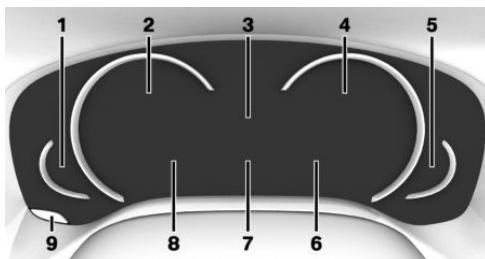
The instrument cluster is a variable display. When you change to a different program via Driving Dynamics Control, the display adapts to the respective program.

### General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the display change can be deactivated via iDrive.

Some of the displays in the instrument cluster may differ from the way they are shown in this Owner's Manual.

### Overview



1 Fuel gauge 138

Instrument cluster with enhanced features: range 138

- 2 Speedometer
- 3 Time 138
  - External temperature 138
  - Driver assistance system displays
  - Service requirements 139
- 4 Tachometer 138
  - Displays of the hybrid system 131
  - Selection lists 142
  - ECO PRO displays 270
  - Navigation display.
- 5 High-voltage battery charge indicator 131
- 6 Transmission display 122
  - Status, Driving Dynamics Control 126
- 7 Messages, for instance Check Control Onboard Computer 142
  - Charging screen 130
- 8 Driver assistance system displays
  - Speed Limit Info 140
- 9 Reset miles 143

### Adjusting the view

#### Concept

Depending on the equipment, the instrument cluster can be set to three different operating modes in addition to the driving mode.

#### Settings

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Displays"

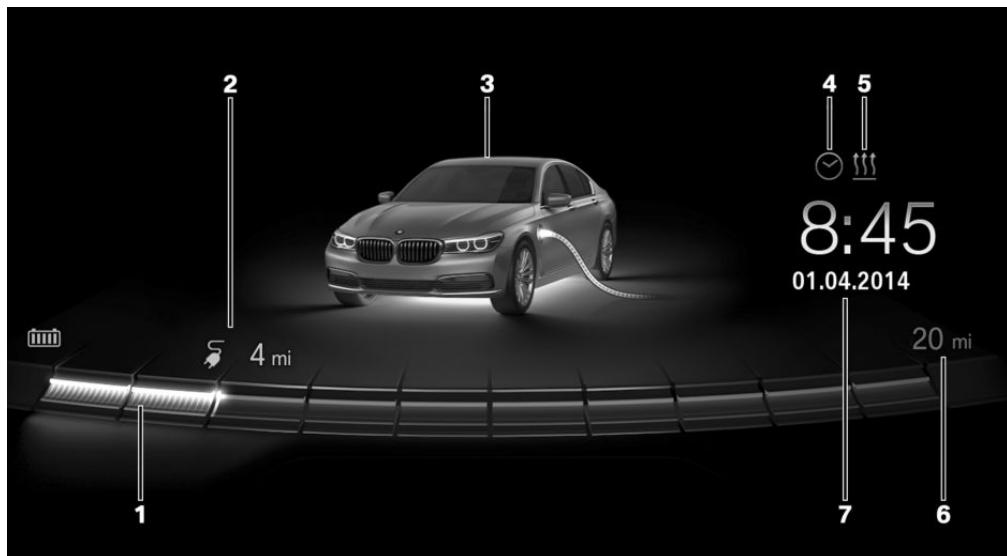
4. "Instrument panel"
5. Select the desired setting.
  - ▷ "STANDARD": all displays on the instrument cluster are active.
  - ▷ "REDUCED" all displays on the instrument cluster are reduced to the essential.
  - ▷ "INDIVIDUAL": all displays on the instrument cluster are active. Individual displays can be individually configured.

- ▷ "Speed limit exceeded": if the speed recognized by Speed Limit Info is exceeded, the exceeded range is marked red in the speedometer.
- ▷ Instrument cluster with enhanced features: "Magnifier function": the current speed is shown enlarged in the speedometer.

## Configuring INDIVIDUAL

- ▷ "Driving mode display": when the driving mode is switched into ECO PRO or SPORT, the instrument cluster automatically switches into the respective view.

## Charging screen



1 Charge state 282

2 Range for electric driving 282

3 Charging status 282

4 Timer, departure time 283

5 Stationary climate control 283

6 Maximum electrical range 282

7 End of charging time 282

Departure time with timer 283

## Displays of the hybrid system

### Displays in the instrument cluster

#### General information

The following functions of the hybrid system are displayed:

- ▷ High-voltage battery charge indicator, refer to page 131.
- ▷ Drive-ready state: READY, refer to page 131.
- ▷ Electric driving: ePOWER, refer to page 131.
- ▷ Energy recovery: CHARGE, refer to page 132.
- ▷ Acceleration boost: eBOOST, refer to page 132.
- ▷ Electric driving: MAX eDRIVE, refer to page 132.
- ▷ Electric driving: AUTO eDRIVE, refer to page 132.
- ▷ BATTERY CONTROL, refer to page 132.

The display depends on the system's operating condition.

#### High-voltage battery charge indicator

##### Concept

Indicates the current charge state of the high-voltage battery as a percentage.

##### Safety information



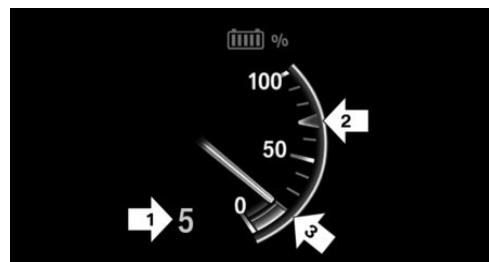
##### WARNING

Even when it is indicated that the high-voltage battery is discharged, the high-voltage system is always still under high voltage. There is a risk of fire or a risk of injury. Do not touch or change live parts, e.g., orange high-voltage

cables, even when the batteries are discharged.◀

#### Display

#### Instrument cluster with enhanced features



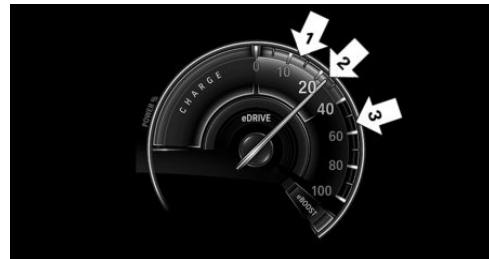
- ▷ Electric range, arrow 1.
- ▷ Adjusted charge state of the BATTERY CONTROL function, refer to page 113, arrow 2.
- ▷ Current charge state, arrow 3.

#### Drive-ready state: READY



READY indicates drive-ready state. For additional information, see Drive-ready state, refer to page 109.

#### Electric driving: ePOWER



In ePOWER mode, the range for electric driving is colored blue, arrow 1. The range high-

lighted in blue can vary depending on the driving situation and eDRIVE mode.

A pointer indicates the power outputted by the hybrid drive in a scale, arrow 2.

Instrument cluster with enhanced features:

In SPORT driving mode, the engine speed of the combustion engine is displayed instead of the output of the hybrid drive.

If the pointer is outside the range highlighted in blue, the combustion engine is switched on, arrow 3.

For further information, please refer to electric driving: ePOWER, refer to page 111.

### Energy recovery: CHARGE



Energy recovery during coasting and braking is indicated as CHARGE in the instrument cluster depending on the driving mode, see arrow. The high-voltage battery is charged. If the high-voltage battery is completely charged, no energy can be recovered.

For further information, please refer to Energy recovery CHARGE, refer to page 114.

### Acceleration boost: eBOOST



If the electric motor supports the combustion engine, e.g., during rapid acceleration, eBOOST, refer to page 114, is displayed. Depending on the available charge state of the high-voltage battery, there could be more or less eBOOST available. If the charge state of the high-voltage battery is low, eBOOST may not be available.

### Electric driving: MAX eDRIVE



The display becomes active after MAX eDRIVE, refer to page 112, is activated via the eDRIVE button.

### Electric driving: AUTO eDRIVE



The display becomes active while driving electrically after AUTO eDRIVE, refer to page 112, is activated via the eDRIVE button.

### BATTERY CONTROL



The display becomes active after BATTERY CONTROL, refer to page 113, is activated via the eDRIVE button.

The available electric range is conserved for a later point in the trip.

## Indications on the Control Display

### Overview



The symbols are shown on the Control Display.

Symbol	Meaning
	Adapting to the course of the road.
	Current energy flow.
	Fuel consumption history.

### Adapting to the course of the road

#### Concept

When the navigation system destination guidance is active, hybrid operation adapts to specific route sections.

Use of the hybrid system is optional.

Situations which are already underway and situations ahead are detected, indicated on the Control Display, and the hybrid drive is adapted and prepared for them.

#### Functional requirements

- ▷ Selector lever position D engaged.
- ▷ AUTO eDRIVE hybrid mode is activated.

#### Displaying the adaptation to the course of the road

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Technology in action"

### 3. "eDRIVE"

- 4.

## Current vehicle state

### General information

The following are displayed:

- ▷ Active components of the hybrid system.
- ▷ Direction of the energy flows:
  - Orange: energy flow of the combustion engine.
  - Blue: energy flow of the hybrid system.
- ▷ Vehicle states:
  - ▷ ePOWER.
  - ▷ POWER.
  - ▷ eASSIST.
  - ▷ eBOOST.
  - ▷ CHARGE.
  - ▷ Coasting.
  - ▷ Charging.
- ▷ System requirements of the hybrid system, e.g., drive system not yet warmed up to operating temperature.
- ▷ Driving requirement, e.g., transmission selector lever in the M/S position.

### Displaying the current vehicle state

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Technology in action"
3. "eDRIVE"
- 4.

## Fuel consumption history

#### Concept

The fuel consumption history displays the use of the hybrid system in a chart. The route for determining the fuel consumption values can be adjusted.

## Displaying fuel consumption history

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Technology in action"
3. "eDRIVE"
4.  Select the symbol.

## Adjusting the route length

1.  Press button.
2. "Scaling:"
3. Select the desired setting.

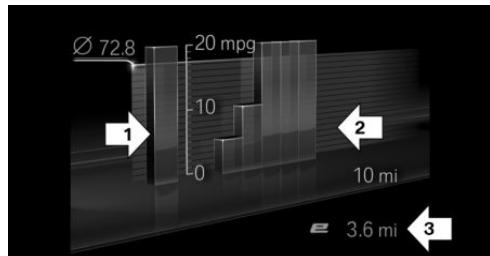
## Resetting fuel consumption history

1.  Press button.
2. "Reset consumption history"

The fuel consumption values are reset.

The odometer for electric driving will be reset during next refueling.

## Display



- Current average fuel consumption, arrow 1.
- Bar display for the average fuel consumption for the set route length, arrow 2.
- Odometer for electric driving, arrow 3.

The average fuel consumption of the combustion engine is indicated using a line and a value above the bar display. The indicated value is identical to the average fuel consumption in the Onboard Computer and can be reset via the Onboard Computer.

## Check Control

### Concept

The Check Control system monitors functions in the vehicle and notifies you of malfunctions in the monitored systems.

### General information

A Check Control message is displayed as a combination of indicator or warning lights and SMS text messages in the instrument cluster and, if applicable, in the Head-up Display.

In addition, an acoustic signal may sound and an SMS text message may appear on the Control Display.

### Indicator/warning lights

#### Concept

Indicator/warning lights in the instrument cluster display the status of some functions in the vehicle and indicate when a malfunction is present in the monitored systems.

#### General information

The indicator and warning lights can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

Several of the lamps are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when drive-ready state is switched on.

### Red lights

#### Safety belt reminder



Indicator lamp flashes or is illuminated: safety belt on the driver or passenger side is not buckled. The safety belt reminder can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly.

## Airbag system



Airbag system and belt tensioner are not working.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Parking brake



The parking brake is set.

Release the parking brake, refer to page 116.

## Brake system



Braking system impaired. Continue to drive moderately.



Have the vehicle checked immediately by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Yellow lights

### Anti-lock Braking System ABS



Braking force boost may not be working. Avoid abrupt braking. Take the longer braking distance into account.



Have the system immediately checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

### DSC Dynamic Stability Control



The indicator light flashes: DSC controls the drive and braking forces. The vehicle is stabilized. Reduce speed and adapt driving style to the driving circumstances.

The indicator light lights up: DSC has malfunctioned.

Have the system immediately checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 188.

### DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated or DTC Dynamic Traction Control is activated



DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated or DTC Dynamic Traction Control is activated.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 188, and DTC Dynamic Traction Control, refer to page 189.

### Flat Tire Monitor FTM



The Flat Tire Monitor signals a loss of tire inflation pressure in a tire.

Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 307.

### Tire Pressure Monitor TPM



The indicator light illuminates.

The Tire Pressure Monitor reports a low tire inflation pressure or a flat tire.

Follow the information in the Check Control message.

The indicator light flashes and then illuminates continuously.

No flat tire or loss of tire inflation pressure can be detected.

- ▷ Interference caused by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.
- ▷ TPM was unable to complete the reset. Reset the system again.
- ▷ A wheel without TPM wheel electronics is mounted: have it checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop as needed.

- ▷ Malfunction: have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page [302](#).

## Steering system



Steering system may not be working.  
Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Emissions



- ▷ The warning light lights up:  
Emissions are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.
- ▷ The warning light flashes under certain circumstances:  
This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.  
Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

Socket for Onboard Diagnosis, refer to page [323](#).

## Acoustic pedestrian protection inactive



Acoustic pedestrian protection deactivated or possibly not working.  
Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Green lights

### Turn signal



Turn signal switched on.  
Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator light indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

Turn signal, refer to page [118](#).

### Parking lights, headlight



Parking lights or headlights are switched on.  
Parking light/low beams, automatic headlight control, refer to page [149](#).

### Lane departure warning



The indicator light lights up: the system is activated. At least one lane marking was detected and warnings can be issued.

Lane departure warning, refer to page [175](#).

### Front fog lights



Front fog lights are switched on.  
Front fog lights, refer to page [153](#).

### High-beam Assistant



High-beam Assistant is switched on.  
High beams are switched on and off automatically depending on the traffic situation.

High-beam Assistant, refer to page [151](#).

### Automatic Hold



Automatic Hold is activated. The vehicle is automatically held in place when it is stationary.

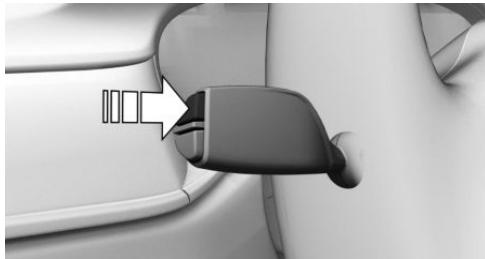
Automatic Hold, refer to page [116](#).

## Blue lights

### High beams

 High beams are switched on.  
High beams, refer to page 118.

### Hiding Check Control messages



Press and hold button on signal lever.

### Continuous display

Some Check Control messages are displayed continuously and are not cleared until the malfunction is eliminated. If several malfunctions occur at once, the messages are displayed consecutively.

These messages can be hidden for approx. 8 seconds. After this time, they are displayed again automatically.

### Temporary display

Other Check Control messages are hidden automatically after approx. 20 seconds. These Check Control messages are stored and can be displayed again later.

### Displaying stored Check Control messages

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Check Control"
4. Select the SMS text message.

## Display

### Check Control



At least one Check Control message is displayed or is stored.

### SMS text messages

SMS text messages in combination with a symbol in the instrument cluster explain a Check Control message and the meaning of the indicator and warning lights.

### Supplementary SMS text messages

Additional information, such as the reason for an error or malfunction or the required action, can be called up via Check Control.

With urgent messages the added text will be automatically displayed on the Control Display.

### Further help

Depending on the Check Control message, further help can be selected.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Check Control"
4. Select the desired text message.
5. Select desired setting:
  - ▷ "Call BMW Accident Assistance"  
Contact BMW Roadside Assistance.
  - ▷ "Service request"  
Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
  - ▷ "BMW Roadside Assistance"  
Contact Roadside Assistance.
  - ▷ "Owner's Manual"  
Display additional information about the Check Control message in the Integrated Owner's Manual.

## Messages after trip completion

Special messages displayed while driving are displayed again after drive-ready state is switched off.

## Fuel gauge

### Instrument cluster with enhanced features



An arrow beside the fuel pump symbol shows which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is on.

The current range of the combustion engine is displayed as numerical value.

Vehicle tilt position may cause the display to vary.

Information on refueling, refer to page 286.



The yellow indicator light illuminates, once the fuel reserve is reached.

### Instrument cluster with enhanced features: tachometer

#### General information

Always avoid engine speeds in the red warning field. In this range, the fuel supply is reduced to protect the engine.

The tachometer is available in the SPORT driving mode.

## External temperature



#### WARNING

Even at temperatures above  $+37^{\circ}\text{F}/+3^{\circ}\text{C}$  there can be a risk of icy roads, e.g., on bridges or shady sections of road. There is a risk of an

accident. Adjust your driving style to the weather conditions at low temperatures. ▶

If the indicator drops to  $+37^{\circ}\text{F}/+3^{\circ}\text{C}$  or lower, a signal sounds.

A Check Control message is displayed.

There is an increased risk of ice on roads.

## Time

The time is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Setting the time and time format, refer to page 40.

## Range

#### Concept

The range indicates the distance that can still be covered with the current fuel level and the electric energy of the high-voltage battery.

#### General information

The range can be displayed as range for electric driving or as total range. The total range considers the capacity of the fuel tank as well as the electric energy in the high-voltage battery. If the requirements for electric driving are not met, the total range considers the content of the fuel tank only.

The electric range can abruptly reduce or increase based on the following factors:

- ▷ Automatic climate control settings.
- ▷ Driving style.
- ▷ Traffic conditions.
- ▷ Program change via Driving Dynamics Control.
- ▷ Climate and terrain conditions.

With a low remaining range, a Check Control message is briefly displayed. With a dynamic driving style, for instance taking curves aggressively, the engine function is not always ensured.

The Check Control message appears continuously below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km.

As soon as a respectively low fuel tank filling level is reached, MAX eDRIVE is automatically selected to protect the combustion engine if the requirements for electric driving are met. The Steptronic Sport program is not available.

You may continue driving with reduced performance and exclusively with electric motor power.

## Safety information



### NOTE

With a range of less than 30 miles/50 km it is possible that the engine will no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of property damage. Refuel promptly.◀

## Instrument cluster with enhanced features: range display, combustion engine



The current range is displayed as numerical value next to the fuel gauge.

## Range display, electric motor

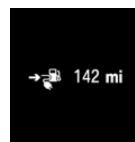
Instrument cluster with enhanced features:

The electric range is continuously displayed in the charge state indicator of the high-voltage battery, refer to page 131.



The display indicates that the electric drive is currently not available.

## Total range display



Instrument cluster with enhanced features:

The total range can be displayed via the Onboard Computer in the instrument cluster, refer to page 142.

## Service requirements

### Concept

The function displays the service requirements and the corresponding maintenance scopes.

### General information

After switching on drive-ready state, the instrument cluster briefly displays available driving distance or time to the next scheduled maintenance.

A service advisor can read out the current service requirements from your remote control.

Some information on service requirements can also be shown on the BMW display key.

### Display

#### Detailed information on service requirements

More information on the scope of service required can be displayed on the Control Display.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service required"

Required maintenance procedures and legally mandated inspections are displayed.

4. Select an entry to call up detailed information.

## Symbols

Sym-bols	Description
	No service is currently required.
	The deadline for scheduled maintenance or a legally mandated inspection is approaching.
	The service deadline has already passed.

## Entering appointment dates

Enter the dates for the required vehicle inspections.

Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service required"
4. "Vehicle inspection"
5. "Date:"
6. Select the desired setting.
7. Confirm.

The entered date is stored.

## Automatic Service Request

Data regarding the service status or legally mandated vehicle inspections is automatically transmitted to your dealer's service center before a service due date.

You can check when your dealer's service center was notified.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Teleservice Call"

## Gear shift indicator

### Concept

The system recommends the most fuel efficient gear for the current driving situation.

### General information

The gear shift indicator is active in the manual mode of the Steptronic transmission.

### Steptronic transmission: displaying

Suggestions to shift gear up or down are displayed in the instrument cluster.

On vehicles without a gear shift indicator, the engaged gear is displayed.

Example	Description
	Fuel efficient gear is set.
	Shift into fuel efficient gear.

## Speed Limit Info

### Speed Limit Info

#### Concept

Speed Limit Info shows the current maximum permitted speed in the instrument cluster.

#### General information

The camera in the area of the interior mirror detects traffic signs at the edge of the road as well as variable overhead sign posts.

Traffic signs with extra symbols are considered and compared with the vehicle's onboard data. The traffic sign will then be either displayed or ignored depending on the situation.

The system takes into account the information stored in the navigation system and also dis-

plays speed limits present on routes without signs.

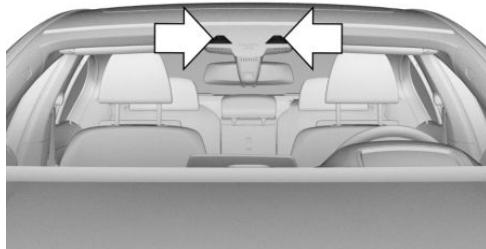
## Safety information

### WARNING

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

## Overview

### Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror. Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

## Displaying Speed Limit Info

### General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, Speed Limit Info is displayed via the operating mode of the instrument cluster or via iDrive.

### Display via operating mode of the instrument cluster

The Speed Limit Info displays are shown or hidden via the operating mode of the instrument cluster.

The Speed Limit Info is displayed in the following operating modes: "STANDARD" or "INDIVIDUAL"

Speed Limit Info is not displayed in the following operating mode: "REDUCED"

Adjusting the operating mode of the instrument cluster, refer to page 129.

### Display via iDrive

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument panel"
5. "Road signs"

### Display

#### General information

Speed Limit Info is displayed in the instrument cluster and, if applicable, in the Head-up Display.

#### Speed Limit Info

Current speed limit.



Speed Limit Info not available.



### System limits

The system may not be fully functional and may provide incorrect information in the following situations:

- ▶ In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- ▶ When signs are fully or partially concealed by objects, stickers or paint.
- ▶ When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- ▶ When driving toward bright lights or strong reflections.

- ▷ When the windshield in front of the interior mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered by a sticker, etc.
- ▷ If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- ▷ In the event of incorrect detection by the camera.
- ▷ If the speed limits or road data stored in the navigation system are incorrect.
- ▷ If the speed limits vary with the time of day and the day of the week.
- ▷ In areas not covered by the navigation system.
- ▷ When roads differ from the navigation, such as due to changes in road routing.
- ▷ In case of electronic traffic signs.
- ▷ When passing buses or trucks with traffic signs applied to them.
- ▷ If the traffic signs are non-conforming.
- ▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- ▷ When signs that are valid for a parallel road are detected.
- ▷ In the presence of country-specific signs and road configurations.

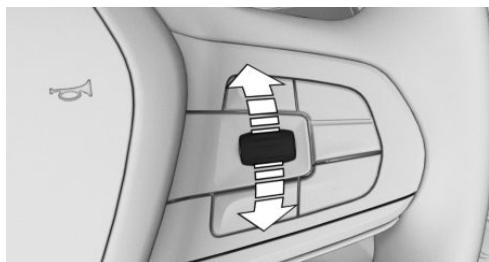
## Selection lists

### General information

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the following can be displayed or operated using the buttons and the thumbwheel on the steering wheel as well as the displays in the instrument cluster and the Head-up Display:

- ▷ Current audio source.
- ▷ Redial phone feature.

### Activating a list and adjusting the setting



On the right side of the steering wheel, turn the thumbwheel to activate the corresponding list.

1. Turn the thumbwheel and select the desired setting.
2. Press the thumbwheel.

### Display



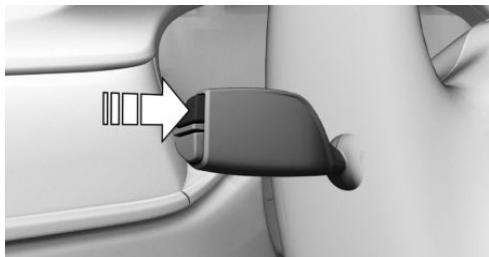
Depending on your vehicle's optional features, the list in the instrument cluster can differ from the illustration shown.

## Onboard Computer in the instrument cluster

### Concept

The Onboard Computer displays different vehicle data in the instrument cluster, such as average values.

## Calling up information



Press and hold button on signal lever.

Information is displayed in the Info Display of the instrument cluster. Pressing the button repeatedly displays additional information.

## Information at a glance

The following information can be displayed on the Onboard Computer:

- ▷ Miles and trip miles.
- ▷ Time of arrival and distance to destination. When destination guidance is activated in the navigation system.
- ▷ Instrument cluster with enhanced features: Bar display for total range.
- ▷ Fuel consumption display.
- ▷ Average fuel consumption and average speed.
- ▷ Engine temperature display.

## Adjusting information for Onboard Computer

For some information of the Onboard Computer, it is possible to set whether it can be called up in the instrument cluster.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument panel"

## 5. "Onboard info"

## 6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

## Information in detail

### Odometer and trip odometer

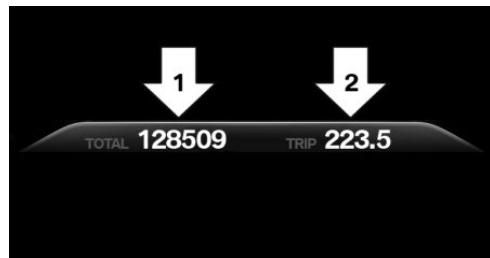
#### Displaying/resetting miles



Press the button.

- ▷ Press the knob briefly to display the trip miles. When the drive-ready state is switched off, miles and trip miles are displayed.
- ▷ Keep the knob pressed down to reset the trip miles.

#### Display



▷ Odometer, arrow 1.

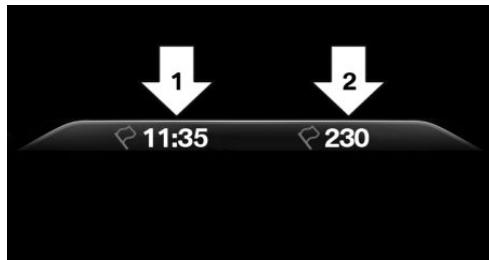
▷ Trip odometer, arrow 2.

#### Time of arrival and distance to destination

#### General information

The estimated time of arrival and the distance remaining to the destination are displayed if a destination is entered in the navigation system before the trip is started.

## Display



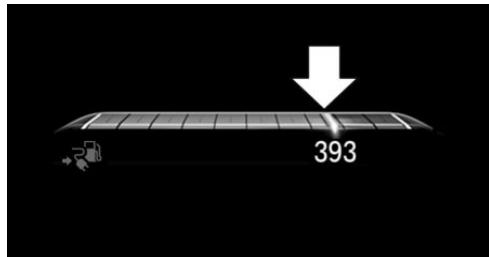
- ▷ Time of arrival, arrow 1.
- ▷ Distance to destination, arrow 2.

### Instrument cluster with enhanced features: total range

#### Concept

The total range can be shown in the form of a bar display in the Onboard Computer.

#### Display



- ▷ Current total range, arrow.

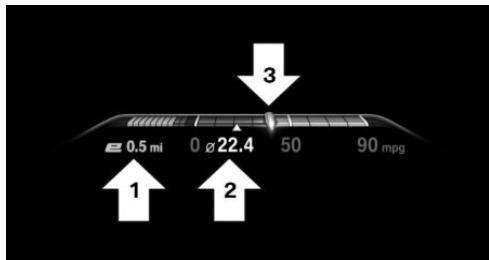
### Fuel consumption display

#### General information

The average fuel consumption values can be shown in the form of a bar display in the Onboard Computer. The odometer for electric driving will be reset during next refueling.

The electric consumption values are displayed in MAX eDRIVE.

## Display



- ▷ Odometer for electric driving, arrow 1.
- ▷ Average fuel consumption, arrow 2.
- ▷ Current fuel consumption, arrow 3.

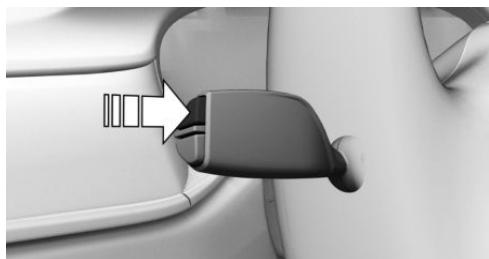
### Average speed and average fuel consumption

#### General information

Average speed and average fuel consumption are calculated for the distance traveled since the last reset in the Onboard Computer.

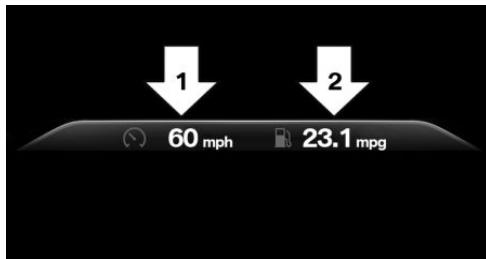
Periods in which the vehicle is parked with the engine manually stopped are not included in the calculation of the average speed.

#### Resetting average values



Press and hold button on turn signal lever.

## Display



- ▷ Average speed, arrow 1.
- ▷ Average fuel consumption, arrow 2.

## Engine temperature display

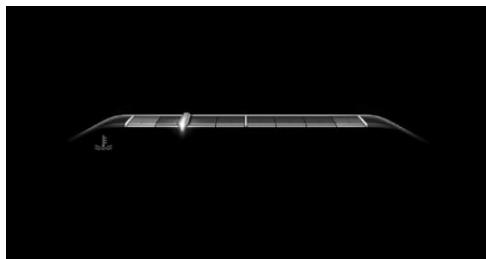
### General information

Displays the current engine temperature, based on a combination of coolant and engine oil temperature. As soon as the optimum operating temperature has been attained, the indicator is in the center position.

If the engine oil or coolant, and thus the engine, become too hot, a Check Control message is displayed too.

Check the coolant level, refer to page [320](#).

## Display



## Onboard Computer on the Control Display

### Concept

The Onboard Computer displays different vehicle data on the Control Display, such as average values.

### General information

Two types of Onboard Computers are available on the Control Display:

- ▷ "Onboard info": average values, such as the fuel consumption, are displayed. The values can be reset individually.
- ▷ "Trip computer": the values deliver an overview of a certain distance and can be reset as often as necessary.

### Calling up the Onboard Computer or trip computer

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Onboard info" or "Trip computer"

### Resetting the Onboard Computer

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Onboard info"
4. "Consumption" or "Speed"
5. "OK"

### Resetting the trip computer

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Trip computer"
4. Move the controller to the left, if needed.

- ▷  "Reset": all values are reset.
- ▷  "Automatic reset": all values are reset approx. 4 hours after the vehicle has come to a standstill.

## Sport displays

### General information

On the Control Display, the current values for performance and torque can be displayed if the vehicle is appropriately equipped.

### Displays

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Technology in action"
3. "Sport displays"

## Speed warning

### Concept

A speed limit can be set that when reached will cause a warning to be issued.

### General information

The warning is repeated if the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed limit again, after it has dropped below it by 3 mph/5 km/h.

### Displaying, setting or changing the speed warning

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Speed warning"
4. "Warning at:"
5. Turn the Controller until the desired speed is displayed.
6. Press the Controller.

### Activating/deactivating the speed warning

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Speed warning"
4. "Speed warning"
5. Press the controller.

### Setting your current speed as the speed warning

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Speed warning"
4. "Select current speed"
5. Press the controller.

## Vehicle status

### General information

The status can be displayed and actions performed for several systems.

### Opening the vehicle status

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"

### Information at a glance

- ▷  "Flat Tire Monitor": Status of the Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 307.
- ▷  "Tire Pressure Monitor": Status of the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 302.
- ▷ Resetting the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 303.
- ▷  "Engine oil level": Electronic engine oil level check, refer to page 316.

- ▷  "Check Control": Check Control messages are stored in the background and can be displayed on the Control Display. Displaying stored Check Control messages, refer to page 137.
- ▷  "Service required": Displaying service requirements, refer to page 139.
- ▷  "Teleservice Call": service request.

## Head-up Display

### Concept

This system projects important information into the driver's field of vision, e.g., the speed. The driver can get information without averting his or her eyes from the road.

### General information

Read the information for cleaning the Head-up Display, refer to page 337.

### Overview



### Switching on/off

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-Up Display"
5. "Head-Up Display"

## Display

### Overview

The following information is displayed on the Head-up Display:

- ▷ Speed.
- ▷ Navigation system.
- ▷ Check Control messages.
- ▷ Selection list in the instrument cluster.
- ▷ Driver assistance systems.

Some of this information is only displayed briefly as needed.

### Selecting displays in the Head-up Display

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-Up Display"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

### View

Three different views are available for the Head-up Display:

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-Up Display"
5. Select the desired setting.
  - ▷ "STANDARD": all displays in the Head-up Display are active.
  - ▷ "REDUCED": the displays in the Head-up Display are reduced to the minimum.

- ▷ "INDIVIDUAL": all displays in the Head-up Display are active. Individual displays, e.g., Check Control messages, can be individually configured.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

## Setting the brightness

The brightness is automatically adjusted to the ambient brightness.

The basic setting can be adjusted.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-Up Display"
5. "Brightness"
6. Turn the controller until the desired brightness is set.
7. Press the controller.

When the low beams are activated, the brightness of the Head-up Display can be additionally influenced using the instrument lighting.

## Adjusting the height

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-Up Display"
5. "Height"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired height is reached.
7. Press the Controller.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

The height of the Head-up Display can also be stored using the memory function, refer to page 98.

## Setting the rotation

The screen of the Head-up Display can be rotated around its own axis.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-Up Display"
5. "Rotation"
6. Turn the controller until the desired setting is selected.
7. Press the controller.

## Visibility of the display

The visibility of the displays in the Head-up Display is influenced by the following factors:

- ▷ Certain sitting positions.
- ▷ Objects on the cover of the Head-up Display.
- ▷ Sunglasses with certain polarization filters.
- ▷ Wet roads.
- ▷ Unfavorable light conditions.

If the image is distorted, have the basic settings checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Special windshield

The windshield is part of the system.

The shape of the windshield makes it possible to display a precise image.

A film in the windshield prevents double images from being generated.

For this reason, it is strongly suggested to have the special windshield replaced by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, if necessary.

# Lights

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

## Overview

### Switches in the vehicle



The light switch element is located next to the steering wheel.

Symbol	Function
	Automatic headlight control.
	Adaptive light functions.
	Low beams.
	Instrument lighting.
	Right roadside parking light.
	Left roadside parking light.

## Parking lights, cornering lights and roadside parking lights

### General information

Position of switch:

If the driver's door is opened when the drive-ready state is switched off, the exterior lighting is automatically switched off.

### Parking lights

Position of switch:

The vehicle is illuminated on all sides.

Do not use the parking lights for extended periods; otherwise, they might drain the battery and it would then be impossible to switch on drive-ready state.

### Low beams

Position of switch:

The low beams illuminate when drive-ready state is switched on.

Symbol	Function
	Front fog lights.
	Night Vision, refer to page 171.
	Lights off.
	Daytime running lights.
	Parking lights.

## Roadside parking lights

When the vehicle is parked, a one-sided roadside parking light can be switched on.

Button	Function
	Right roadside parking light on/off
	Left roadside parking light on/off

## Welcome lights and headlight courtesy delay feature

### Welcome lights

#### General information

Depending on the equipment, the exterior lighting of the vehicle can be set individually.

#### Activating/deactivating

Position of switch:  , 

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lighting"
4. "Exterior lighting"
5. Select the desired setting.
  - ▷ "Welcome lights"
  - Individual light functions are switched on for a limited time.
  - ▷ "Door handle lighting"
  - Door handles and the ground in front of the doors are illuminated for a limited time.
  - ▷ "LED light carpet"
  - The area next to the vehicle is illuminated for a limited time.

## Headlight courtesy delay feature.

### General information

The low beams stay lit for a particular time if the high beams are switched on after standby state is switched on.

### Setting the duration

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lighting"
4. "Exterior lighting"
5. "Pathway lighting"
6. Select the desired setting.

## Automatic headlight control

### Concept

The low beams are switched on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness, for instance in tunnels, in twilight or if there is precipitation.

#### General information

A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be switched on.

### Activating

Position of switch: 

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low beams are switched on.

### System limits

The automatic headlight control cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment of lighting conditions.

For example, the sensors are unable to detect fog or hazy weather. To avoid safety risks un-

der these conditions, you should always switch on the lights manually.

## Daytime running lights

### General information

Position of switch:  ,  , 

The daytime running lights light up when drive-ready state is switched on. After drive-ready state is switched off, the parking lights light up in position  .

### Activating/deactivating

In some countries, daytime running lights are mandatory, so it may not be possible to deactivate the daytime running lights.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lighting"
4. "Exterior lighting"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

## Adaptive Light Control

### Concept

Adaptive Light Control is a variable headlight control system that enables dynamic illumination of the road surface.

### General information

Depending on the steering angle and other parameters, the light from the headlight follows the course of the road.

To avoid blinding oncoming traffic, the Adaptive Light Control does not swivel to the driver's side when the vehicle is at a standstill.

Depending on the equipment version, Adaptive Light Control consists of one or several systems:

- ▷ Cornering light, refer to page 151.

### Activating

Position of switch: 

Adaptive Headlight Control is active when drive-ready state is switched on.

### Cornering light

In tight curves, for instance on mountainous roads or when turning, an additional, cornering light is switched on that lights up the inside of the curve when the vehicle is moving below a certain speed.

The cornering light is automatically switched on depending on the steering angle or the use of turn signals.

When driving in reverse, the cornering lights may be automatically switched on regardless of the steering angle.

## Adaptive headlight range control

The adaptive headlight range control compensates for acceleration and braking operations in order not to blind the oncoming traffic and to achieve optimum illumination of the roadway.

## High-beam Assistant

### Concept

The high-beam Assistant detects other traffic participants early on and automatically switches the high beams on or off depending on the traffic situation.

### General information

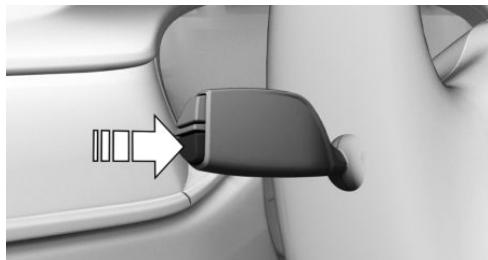
The high-beam Assistant ensures that the high beams are switched on, whenever the traffic

situation allows. In the low speed range, the high beams are not switched on by the system.

The system responds to light from oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to adequate illumination, for instance in towns and cities.

The high beams can be switched on and off at any time as usual.

## Activating/deactivating



Position of switch: 

Press and hold button on signal lever.



The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low beams are switched on.

The headlights are automatically switched between low beams and high beams.



The blue indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up when the system switches on the high beams.

The high-beam Assistant is deactivated when manually switching the high beams on and off, refer to page 118.

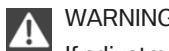
To reactivate the high-beam Assistant, press the button on the turn signal lever.

## Sensitivity of the high-beam Assistant

### General information

The sensitivity of the high-beam Assistant can be adjusted.

## Safety information



### WARNING

If adjustments have been made or the sensitivity has been modified, oncoming traffic may be dazzled. There is a risk of an accident. If adjustments have been made and the sensitivity has been modified, make sure that oncoming traffic is not dazzled. Switch off the high beams manually if required.◀

## Adjusting the sensitivity

Pull the turn signal lever for approximately 10 seconds. The system responds more sensitively.

A Check Control message is displayed.

## Resetting the sensitivity

Pull the turn signal lever again for approx. 10 seconds. The sensitivity of the high-beam Assistant is reset to the factory settings.

## System limits

The high-beam Assistant cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of when to use the high beams. In situation that require this, therefore switch off manually.

The system is not fully functional in the following situations, and driver intervention may be necessary:

- ▷ In very unfavorable weather conditions, such as fog or heavy precipitation.
- ▷ When detecting poorly-lit road users such as pedestrians, cyclists, horseback riders and wagons; when driving close to train or ship traffic; or at animal crossings.
- ▷ In tight curves, on hilltops or in depressions, in cross traffic or half-obscured oncoming traffic on highways.
- ▷ In poorly-lit towns and cities or in the presence of highly reflective signs.
- ▷ When the windshield in front of the interior mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.

## Laser high beams

### Concept

The range of the high beams is increased and ensures an even better illumination of the road.

### General information

When the high beams are switched-on, starting with a speed of approx. 37 mph/60 km/h, the laser high beams in the headlight are automatically switched on in addition to the LED high beams.

Depending on the country variant, further information can be obtained from the laser label on the headlight.

### Safety information



The label is in the headlight and is visible from the outside.

## Fog lights

### Front fog lights

#### Concept

The front fog lights work alongside the low beams to illuminate a wider area of the roadway.

#### Functional requirement

The low beams must be switched on before switching on the front fog lights.

### Switching on/off



Press button.

The green indicator light lights up if the front fog lights are switched on.

If the automatic headlight control, refer to page 150, is activated, the low beams will come on automatically when you switch on the front fog lights.

When the high beams or headlight flasher are activated, the front fog lights are not switched on.

## Instrument lighting

### Functional requirement

The parking lights or low beams must be switched on to adjust the brightness.

### Settings



Adjust the brightness with the thumbwheel.

## Interior lights

### General information

Depending on the equipment version, interior lights, footwell lights, entry lights, ambient lighting, and speaker lighting are automatically controlled.

## Overview

### Buttons in the vehicle



 Interior lights

 Reading lights

### Switching the interior lights on/off

 Press button.

To switch off permanently: press the button and hold for approx. 3 seconds.

The interior lights in the rear of the vehicle can be switched on and off independently. The button is located in the rear roofliner.

### Switching the reading lights on/off

 Press button.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the reading lights are located next to the interior lights in the front and rear.

### Ambient light

#### General information

Depending on the equipment version, lighting can be adjusted for some lights in the car's interior.

If the ambient light was deactivated via iDrive, it will not be switched on when the vehicle is unlocked.

### Switching on/off

The ambient light is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked, and switched off when the vehicle is locked.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lighting"
4. "Interior lighting"
5. "Ambient lighting"

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

### Selecting color scheme

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lighting"
4. "Interior lighting"
5. "Color"
6. Select the desired setting.

### Setting the brightness

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lighting"
4. "Interior lighting"
5. "Brightness"
6. Select the desired setting.

### Dimmed while driving

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lighting"
4. "Interior lighting"
5. "Dimmed for night driving"

Some lights of the interior lighting are dimmed when the vehicle is driven in the dark.

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

## Panoramic glass sunroof, lighting

If the panoramic glass sunroof is opened or the sliding visor closed, lighting of the respective area is switched off.

## BMW Touch Command

The ambient light can also be operated using BMW Touch Command.

## Bowers & Wilkins Diamond Surround Sound System

### General information

Some speakers in the vehicle are illuminated. Brightness can be individually set.

If the speakers are muted, speaker lighting will be switched off.

## Switching on/off

The speaker lighting is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked, and switched off when the vehicle is locked.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lighting"
4. "Interior lighting"
5. "Bowers & Wilkins"

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

## Setting the brightness

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lighting"

4. "Interior lighting"
5. "Brightness"
6. Select the desired setting.

## BMW Touch Command

The operation of the Bowers & Wilkins Diamond Surround Sound System is also possible using BMW Touch Command.

## Ambient highlight

### General information

The ambient highlight illuminates the door pillars in the rear.

When opening a rear door, the brightness of the ambient highlight of the respective door pillar is reduced. After the rear door is closed, the ambient highlight is illuminated again in the previously adjusted brightness.

## Switching on/off automatically

The ambient highlight is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked, and switched off when the vehicle is locked.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lighting"
4. "Interior lighting"
5. "Accent lighting in rear"

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

## Switching on/off manually

The ambient highlight is fitted with a touch sensor. The ambient highlight is switched on or off with a brief touch of the chrome bar.

## Adjusting the brightness via iDrive

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lighting"
4. "Interior lighting"
5. "Brightness"

The last brightness set is displayed.

6. Select the desired setting.

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

## Adjusting the brightness via touch sensor

The ambient highlight is fitted with a touch sensor. The brightness is changed with a long touch of the chrome bar.

## BMW Touch Command

The ambient highlight can also be operated using BMW Touch Command.

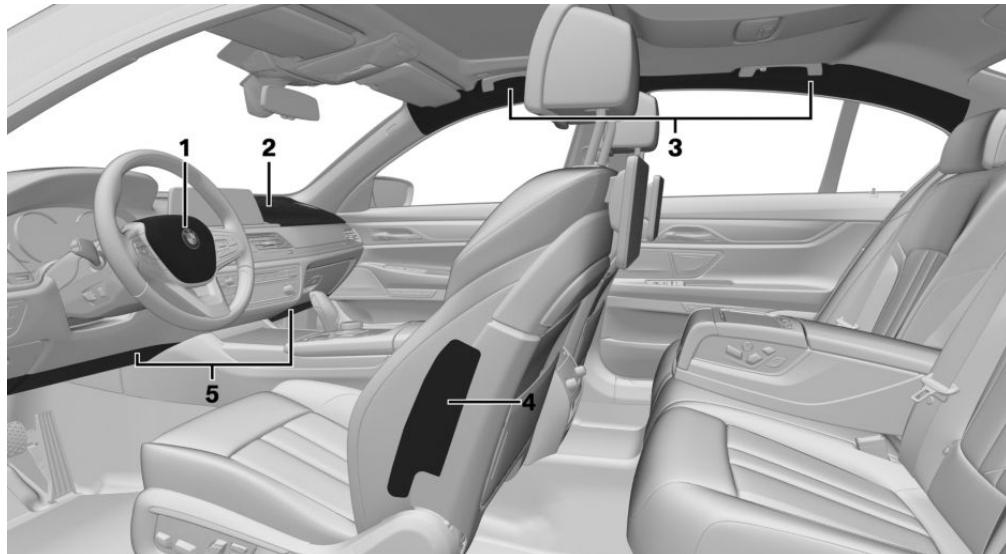
# Safety

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due

to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

## Airbags



- 1 Front airbag, driver
- 2 Front airbag, front passenger
- 3 Head airbag

- 4 Side airbag
- 5 Knee airbag

### Front airbags

Front airbags help protect the driver and the front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which safety belts alone would not provide adequate protection.

### Side airbag

In a lateral impact, the side airbag supports the side of the body in the chest and lap area.

### Head airbag

In a lateral impact, the head airbag supports the head.

## Ejection Mitigation

The head airbag system is designed as an ejection mitigation countermeasure to reduce the likelihood of ejections of vehicle occupants through side windows during rollovers or side impact events.

## Knee airbag

The knee airbag supports the legs in a frontal impact.

## Protective action

### General information

Airbags are not triggered in every impact situation, e.g., in less severe accidents or rear-end collisions.

### Information on optimum effect of the airbags

#### **WARNING**

If the seat position is incorrect or the deployment area of the airbags is impaired, the airbag system cannot provide protection as intended and may cause additional injuries due to triggering. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Follow the information on achieving the optimum protective effect of the airbag system.►

- Keep a distance from the airbags.
- Always grasp the steering wheel on the steering wheel rim. Hold your hands at the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions, to keep the risk of injury to your hands or arms as low as possible when the airbag is triggered.
- Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly, i.e., keeps his or her feet and legs in the floor area and does not support them on the dashboard.
- Make sure that occupants keep their heads away from the side airbag.

- There should be no additional persons, animals or objects between an airbag and a person.
- Dashboard and windshield on the front passenger side must stay clear - do not attach adhesive labels or coverings and do not attach brackets or cables, for instance for GPS devices or mobile phones.
- Do not apply adhesive materials to the airbag cover panels, do not cover them or modify them in any way.
- Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the front passenger side as a storage area.
- Do not place slip covers, seat cushions or other objects on the front passenger seat that are not specifically suited for seats with integrated side airbags.
- Do not hang pieces of clothing, such as jackets, over the backrests.
- Never modify either the individual components or the wiring in the airbag system. This also applies to steering wheel covers, the dashboard, and the seats.
- Do not remove the airbag system.

Even when you follow all instructions very closely, injury from contact with the airbags cannot be fully ruled out in certain situations.

The ignition and inflation noise may lead to short-term and, in most cases, temporary hearing impairment in sensitive occupants.

Vehicle modifications for a person with disabilities may affect the air bag system; contact BMW Customer Relations for further information.

Warnings and information on the airbags are also found on the sun visors.

## Functional readiness of the airbag system

### Safety information



#### WARNING

Individual components can be hot after triggering of the airbag system. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch individual components.◀



#### WARNING

Improperly executed work can lead to failure, malfunction or unintentional triggering of the airbag system. In the case of a malfunction, the airbag system might not trigger as intended despite the accident severity. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Have the airbag system checked, repaired, dismantled and scrapped by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◀

### Display in the instrument cluster



When drive-ready state is switched on, the warning lamp in the instrument cluster lights up briefly and thereby indicates the function readiness of the entire airbag system and the belt tensioners.

### Malfunction



- ▷ Warning light does not come on when drive-ready state is switched on.
- ▷ The warning light lights up continuously. Have the system checked.

### Automatic deactivation of the front-seat passenger airbags

#### Concept

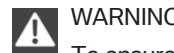
The system reads if the front passenger seat is occupied by measuring the human body's resistance.

Front, knee and side airbag on the front passenger's side are either activated or deactivated.

### General information

Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, refer to the safety notes and instructions for children on the front passenger seat, see Children.

### Safety information



#### WARNING

To ensure the front-seat passenger airbag function, the system must be able to detect whether a person is sitting in the front passenger seat. The entire seat cushion area must be used for this purpose. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the front passenger keeps his or her feet in the floor area.◀

### Malfunction of the automatic deactivation system

When transporting older children and adults, the front-seat passenger airbags may be deactivated in certain sitting positions. In this case, the indicator lamp for the front-seat passenger airbags lights up.

In this case, change the sitting position so that the front-seat passenger airbags are activated and the indicator lamp goes out.

If it is not possible to activate the airbags, have the person sit in the rear.

To enable correct recognition of the occupied seat cushion

- ▷ Do not attach covers, cushions, ball mats or other items to the front passenger seat unless they are specifically determined to be safe for use on the front passenger seat.
- ▷ Do not place any electronic devices on the passenger seat if a child restraint system is to be installed on it.

- ▶ Do not place objects under the seat that could press against the seat from below.
- ▶ No moisture in or on the seat.

## Indicator lamp for the front-seat passenger airbags

The indicator lamp for the front-seat passenger airbag in the roofliner indicates the operating state of the front-seat passenger airbag.

The lamp indicates whether the airbags are either activated or deactivated.

After drive-ready state is switched on, the lamp briefly lights up and then indicates whether the airbags are either activated or deactivated.



- ▶ The indicator lamp lights up when a child is properly seated in a child restraint fixing system or when the seat is empty. The airbags on the front passenger side are not activated.
- ▶ The indicator lamp does not light up when, e.g., a correctly seated person of sufficient size is detected on the seat. The airbags on the front passenger side are activated.

## Detected child restraint systems

The system generally detects children seated in a child restraint system, particularly in child restraint systems required by NHTSA at the point in time when the vehicle was manufactured. After installing a child restraint system, make sure that the indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbags lights up. This indicates that the child restraint system has been detected and the front-seat passenger airbags are not activated.

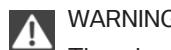
## Strength of the driver's and front-seat passenger airbag

The explosive power that activates driver's/ front-seat passenger airbags very much de-

pends on the positions of the driver's/front passenger seat.

To maintain the accuracy of this function over the long term, calibrate the front seats as soon as a respective message appears on the Control Display.

## Calibrating the front seats



### WARNING

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.◀

A corresponding message appears on the Control Display.

1. Press the switch and move the respective seat all the way forward, until it stops.
2. Press the switch forward again. The seat still moves forward slightly.
3. Readjust the seat to the desired position.

The calibration procedure is completed when the message on the Control Display disappears.

If the message continues to be displayed, repeat the calibration.

If the message does not disappear after a repeat calibration, have the system checked as soon as possible.

## Intelligent Safety

### Concept

Intelligent Safety enables central operation of the driver assistance system.

### General information

Depending on how the vehicle is equipped, Intelligent Safety consists of one or more systems that can help prevent an imminent collision.

- ▷ Approach control warning with light braking function, refer to page 162.
- ▷ Evasion assistance, refer to page 166.
- ▷ Person warning with City light braking function, refer to page 168.
- ▷ Night Vision with pedestrian and animal detection, refer to page 171.
- ▷ Lane departure warning, refer to page 175.
- ▷ Active Blind Spot Detection, refer to page 178.
- ▷ Side collision warning, refer to page 181.

## Safety information

### **WARNING**

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

### **WARNING**

Indicators and warnings do not relieve from personal responsibility. Due to system limits, warnings or reactions of the system may not be output or they may be output too late, incorrectly, or without justification. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

### **WARNING**

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of an accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.◀

## Overview

### Button in the vehicle



 Intelligent Safety

### Switching on/off

Some Intelligent Safety systems are automatically active after every departure. Some Intelligent Safety systems activate according to the last setting.

#### Button Status

 Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.

 Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

 Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

#### Press button:

The menu for the intelligent safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a set-

ting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

 Press button repeatedly. The following settings are switched between:

"**ALL ON**": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions, for instance setting for warning time.

"**INDIVIDUAL**": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

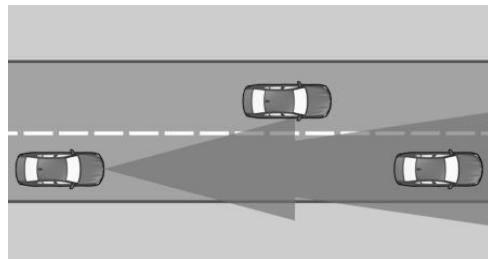
 Press and hold this button:

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

With the vehicle approaching another vehicle intentionally, the approach control warning and braking are delayed in order to avoid false system reactions.

The system issues a two-phase warning of a possible risk of collision with vehicles at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h. Time of warnings may vary with the current driving situation.

## Detection range



Objects that the system can detect are taken into account.

Intersection warning: the system is also able to detect vehicles crossing your direction of travel when these vehicles enter into the detection range of the system.

## Approach control warning with light braking function

### Concept

The system can help prevent accidents. If an accident cannot be prevented, the system will help reduce the collision speed.

The system sounds a warning before an imminent collision and actuates brakes independently, if needed.

### General information

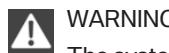
The system is controlled using a camera.

If the vehicle is equipped with a radar sensor, the approach control warning is additionally controlled via the cruise control radar sensor.

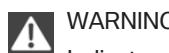
Intersection warning when equipped with a radar sensor: in addition, a warning is issued at intersections and junctions if a risk of collision with crossing traffic is detected.

The approach control warning is available even if cruise control has been deactivated.

### Safety information



The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀



Indicators and warnings do not relieve from personal responsibility. Due to system limits, warnings or reactions of the system may not be output or they may be output too late, incorrectly, or without justification. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic.

fic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀



### WARNING

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of an accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.◀

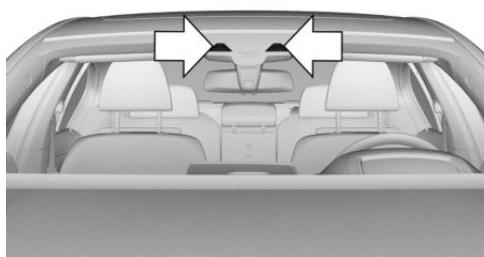
## Overview

### Button in the vehicle



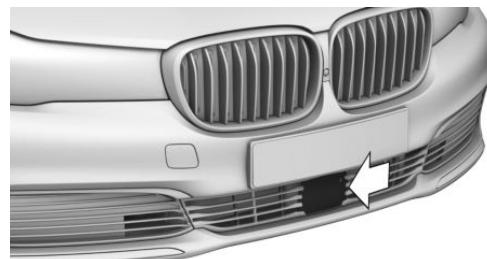
Intelligent Safety

### Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror. Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

### With Active Cruise Control: radar sensor



The radar sensor is located in the lower area of the front bumper.

Always keep radar sensor clean and unobstructed.

### Switching on/off

#### Switching on automatically

The system is automatically active after every driving off.

#### Switching on/off manually



Press button.

The menu for the intelligent safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.



Press button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

 Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

#### Button Status

 Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.

 Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

 Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

## Setting the warning time

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Intelligent Safety"
4. "Frontal Collision Warn."
5. Select the desired setting.

The selected time is stored for the driver profile currently used.

## Warning with braking function

### Display

A warning symbol appears in the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display if a collision with a detected vehicle is imminent.

Symbol	Measure
	Symbol lights up red: prewarning. Brake and increase distance.
	Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.
	Crossing traffic warning Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning when vehicles cross your direction of travel.
	Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

### Prewarning

This warning is issued, for instance when there is the impending danger of a collision or the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small.

If a prewarning is issued, intervene in the situation yourself.

### Acute warning with braking function

Acute warning is displayed in case of the imminent danger of a collision when the vehicle approaches another object at a high differential speed.

If an acute warning is issued, intervene in the situation yourself. If necessary, the system provides assistance, such as with an automatic braking intervention, in a possible risk of collision.

Acute warnings can also be triggered without previous forewarning.

### Brake intervention, City light braking function

The warning prompts the driver himself/herself to react. During a warning, the maximum braking force is used when the brake is actuated.

Prerequisite is sufficiently quick and hard stepping on the brake pedal.

The system can additionally assist possibly with automatic braking intervention if there is a risk of a collision.

At low speeds the vehicle can be decelerated to a complete stop.

The braking intervention takes place up to approx. 50 mph/80 km/h.

The braking intervention is executed only if vehicle stability has not been restricted, for instance by deactivating the DSC Dynamic Stability Control.

The braking intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Object detection can be restricted. Follow the limitations of the detection range and functional restrictions.

## With radar sensor and Active Cruise Control: braking intervention

The warning prompts the driver himself/herself to react. During a warning, the maximum braking force is used when the brake is actuated. Prerequisite is sufficiently quick and hard stepping on the brake pedal.

The system can assist with automatic braking intervention if there is a risk of a collision.

The braking intervention can bring the vehicle to a complete stop.

The braking intervention is executed only if vehicle stability has not been restricted, for instance by deactivating the DSC Dynamic Stability Control.

At speeds above approx. 130 mph/210 km/h, the braking intervention occurs as a brief braking pressure. No automatic delay occurs.

The braking intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Cross-traffic warning: brake intervention is not performed in the event of cross traffic.

Object detection can be restricted. Follow the limitations of the detection range and functional restrictions.

## System limits

### Safety information

#### WARNING

The system can react not at all, too late, incorrectly, or without justification due to the system limits. There is a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Follow the information regarding the system limits and actively intervene, if needed.◀

### Upper speed limit

If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is deactivated temporarily. As soon as the speed drops back down below this value, the system once again responds according to the setting.

Intersection warning: the vehicle responds to crossing traffic if its own speed is below approx. 40 mph/65 km/h.

### Detection range

The system's detection potential is limited. Thus, a system reaction might not come or might come late.

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- ▶ Slow moving vehicles when you approach them at high speed.
- ▶ Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or sharply decelerating vehicles.
- ▶ Vehicles with an unusual rear appearance.
- ▶ Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.
- ▶ Intersection warning: crossing vehicles if their speed is higher than your own speed.

## Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- ▶ In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- ▶ In tight curves.
- ▶ If the driving stability control systems are limited or deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- ▶ If the field of view of the camera or the windshield is dirty or covered in the area of the interior mirror.
- ▶ If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- ▶ Depending on the equipment: if the radar sensors are dirty or covered.
- ▶ Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
- ▶ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- ▶ If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.

## Warning sensitivity

The more sensitive the warning settings are, for example the warning time, the more warnings are displayed. Therefore, there may also be an excess of premature or unjustified warnings and reactions.

## Evasion assistance

### Concept

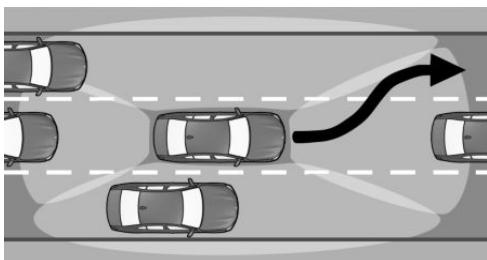
The system supports the driver in making evasive maneuvers in certain situations, such as when obstacles suddenly appear.

### General information

The system issues a warning and intervenes to support the driver if a lateral evasive maneuver is possible. Sensors monitor and detect the

clearance around the vehicle. If the system identifies space alongside the vehicle, it supports an evasive maneuver begun by the driver by safely providing targeted steering support.

## Detection range



Objects that the system can detect are taken into account.

## Safety information

### WARNING

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

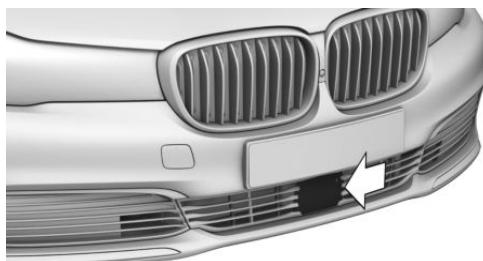
### WARNING

Indicators and warnings do not relieve from personal responsibility. Due to system limits, warnings or reactions of the system may not be output or they may be output too late, incorrectly, or without justification. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

## Overview

### Radar sensors

The radar sensors are located in the bumpers.



Front center bumper.



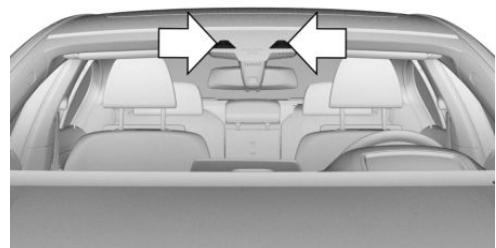
Front side bumper.



Rear bumper.

Always keep the bumper in the area of the radar sensors clean and unobstructed.

## Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror. Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

## Functional requirements

- ▷ Approach control warning with light braking function, refer to page 162, is switched on.
- ▷ Sensors detect sufficient clearance around the vehicle.

## Switching on/off

The system is automatically active after every driving off.

## Warning with evasion support

### Display in the instrument cluster

A warning symbol appears in the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display if a collision with a detected vehicle is imminent.

#### Symbol Measure



Symbol lights up red: prewarning.  
Brake and increase distance.



Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning.  
Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

## Acute warning with evasion support

Acute warning is displayed in case of the imminent danger of a collision when the vehicle approaches another object at a high differential speed.

If an acute warning is issued, intervene in the situation yourself. If there is a risk of collision, the driver's evasive maneuvers are supported by the system.

Acute warnings can also be triggered without previous forewarning.

## System limits

### Safety information



#### WARNING

The system can react not at all, too late, incorrectly, or without justification due to the system limits. There is a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Follow the information regarding the system limits and actively intervene, if needed.◀

### Detection range

The system's detection potential is limited. Thus, a system reaction might not come or might come late.

E.g., the following situations may not be detected:

- ▷ Slow moving vehicles when you approach them at high speed.
- ▷ Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or sharply decelerating vehicles.
- ▷ Vehicles with an unusual rear appearance.
- ▷ Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.

### Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- ▷ In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- ▷ In tight curves.

- ▷ If the driving stability control systems are limited or deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- ▷ If the field of view of the camera or the windshield is dirty or covered in the area of the interior mirror.
- ▷ If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment: if the radar sensors are dirty or covered.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- ▷ If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.

## Person warning with City light braking function

### Concept

The system can help prevent accidents with pedestrians.

When driving at city speeds, the system will issue a warning if there is imminent risk of a collision with pedestrians, and support with a braking function.

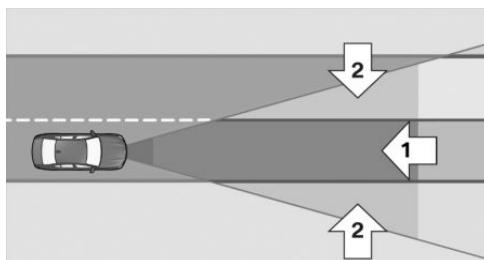
### General information

The system is active at speeds of approx. 3 mph/5 km/h up to approx. 40 mph/65 km/h.

The system reacts to people who are within the detection range of the system.

The camera in the area of the interior mirror controls the system.

## Detection range



The detection area in front of the vehicle is divided into two areas:

- ▷ Central area, arrow 1, directly in front of the vehicle.
- ▷ Expanded area, arrow 2, to the right and left of the central area.

A collision is imminent if pedestrians are located within the central area. A warning is issued about pedestrians who are located within the extended area only if they are moving in the direction of the central area.

## Safety information

### **!** WARNING

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

### **!** WARNING

Indicators and warnings do not relieve from personal responsibility. Due to system limits, warnings or reactions of the system may not be output or they may be output too late, incorrectly, or without justification. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

### **!** WARNING

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of an accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.◀

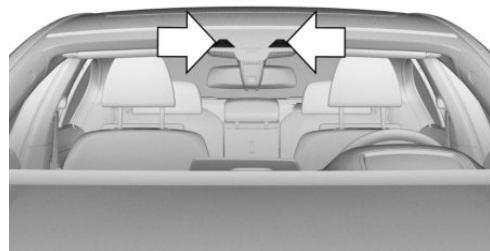
## Overview

### Button in the vehicle



 Intelligent Safety

### Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror. Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

### Switching on/off

### Switching on automatically

The system is automatically active after every driving off.

## Switching on/off manually

 Press button.

The menu for the intelligent safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

 Press button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

 Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

### Button Status

 Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.

 Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

 Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

## Warning with braking function

### Display

If a collision with a person detected in this way is imminent, a warning symbol appears on the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display.



The red symbol is displayed and a signal sounds.

Intervene immediately by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

### Braking intervention

The warning prompts the driver himself/herself to react. During a warning, the maximum braking force is used when the brake is actuated. Prerequisite for the brake booster is sufficiently quick and hard stepping on the brake pedal.

The system can additionally assist with braking intervention if there is a risk of a collision.

At low speeds the vehicle can be decelerated to a complete stop.

The braking intervention is executed only if vehicle stability has not been restricted, for instance by deactivating the DSC Dynamic Stability Control.

The braking intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Object detection can be restricted. Follow the limitations of the detection range and functional restrictions.

## System limits

### Safety information



#### WARNING

The system can react not at all, too late, incorrectly, or without justification due to the system limits. There is a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Follow the informa-

tion regarding the system limits and actively intervene, if needed.◀

## Detection range

The detection potential of the camera is limited.

Thus, a warning might not be issued or be issued late.

The following situations may not be detected, e.g.:

- ▷ Partially covered pedestrians.
- ▷ Pedestrians that are not detected as such because of the viewing angle or contour.
- ▷ Pedestrians outside of the detection range.
- ▷ Pedestrians having a body size less than 32 in/80 cm.

## Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional or may not be available in the following situations:

- ▷ In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- ▷ In tight curves.
- ▷ If the driving stability control systems are deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- ▷ If the field of view of the camera or the windshield is dirty or covered in the area of the interior mirror.
- ▷ If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- ▷ If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.
- ▷ When it is dark outside.

# Night Vision with pedestrian and animal detection

## Concept

Night Vision with pedestrian and animal detection is a night vision system.

An infrared camera scans the area in front of the vehicle and issues a warning if it detects pedestrians and animals on the street. The system detects warm objects that are similar in shape to human beings or animals. If necessary, the thermal image can be displayed on the Control Display.

## General information

### Thermal image



The image shows the heat radiated by objects in the field of view of the camera.

Warm objects have a light appearance and cold objects a dark appearance.

The ability to detect an object depends on the temperature difference between the object and the background and on the level of heat radiation emitted by the object. Objects that are similar in temperature to the environment or that radiate very little heat are difficult to detect.

For safety reasons, when driving at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h and in low ambient light, the image is only displayed when the low beams are switched on.

A still image is displayed at regular intervals for a fraction of a second.

## Pedestrian and animal detection



Object detection and warning only functions in darkness.

Objects whose form is similar to people with sufficient heat radiation are detected.

In addition, the system also detects animals above a certain minimum size, for instance deer.

Display on the Control Display with thermal image activated:

- ▷ People detected by the system: in light yellow.
- ▷ Animals detected by the system: in dark yellow.

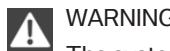
Range of object detection, with good ambient conditions:

- ▷ Pedestrian detection: up to approx. 330 ft/100 m
- ▷ Detection of large animals: up to approx. 490 ft/150 m
- ▷ Detection of medium animals: up to approx. 230 ft/70 m

Environmental influences can limit the availability of object detection.

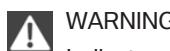
If the vehicle systems detect that the vehicle is located in a residential area, the animal detection is temporarily switched off.

## Safety information



### WARNING

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀



### WARNING

Indicators and warnings do not relieve from personal responsibility. Due to system limits, warnings or reactions of the system may not be output or they may be output too late, incorrectly, or without justification. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

## Overview

### Buttons in the vehicle



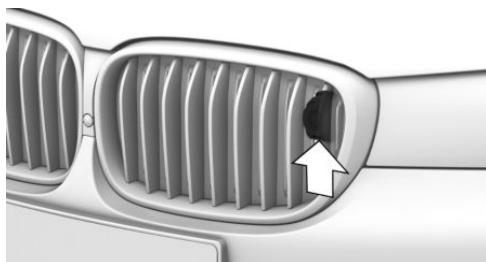
Intelligent Safety





Thermal image

## Camera



The camera is automatically heated when the external temperatures are low.

When the vehicle lighting is switched on, the camera objective is cleaned at regular intervals when the windshield washer system, refer to page 120, is activated.

## Switching on

### Switching on automatically

When it is dark outside, the system is automatically active after every driving off.

### Switching on the thermal image

The thermal image from the Night Vision camera can be displayed on the Control Display in addition to the warning function. This function has no effect on object detection.



Press button.

The image from the camera is displayed on the Control Display.

### Adjusting the thermal image

Brightness and contrast can be adjusted, when the thermal image is switched on.

Via iDrive:

1. Select brightness or contrast.

► ☼ "Brightness".

► ☺ "Contrast".

2. Set the desired value.

## Warning function

### Display

Symbol	Meaning
	Person warning.
	Animal warning.
Symbol lights up red.	Prewarning.
Symbol flashes red and a signal sounds.	Acute warning.

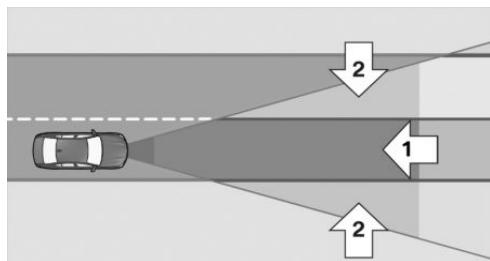
The displayed symbol may vary and shows the side of the road on which the person or animal was detected.

### Warning of people or animals in danger

If a collision with a person or an animal detected in this way is imminent, a warning symbol appears on the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display.

Although both the shape and the heat radiation are analyzed, false warnings cannot be ruled out.

## Warning area in front of the vehicle



The warning area for the person warning consists of two parts:

- ▷ Central area, arrow 1, directly in front of the vehicle.
- ▷ Expanded area, arrow 2, to the right and left of the central area.

With animal warnings, no distinction is made between the central or expanded area.

The entire area moves along with the vehicle in the direction of the steering angle and changes with the vehicle speed. As the vehicle speed increases, the area becomes, for instance longer and wider.

## Prewarning

Prewarning for persons is displayed when a person is detected in the central area immediately in front of the vehicle as well as on the left or right side in the extended area.

Prewarning for animals is displayed when an animal is detected in the front of the vehicle.

If a prewarning is issued, intervene by braking or making an evasive maneuver.

## Acute warning

Acute warning is displayed if a person or an animal is detected in direct proximity in front of the vehicle.

If an acute warning is issued, brake or make an evasive maneuver immediately.

## Display in the Head-up Display

The warning is displayed simultaneously in the Head-up Display and on the instrument cluster.

## System limits

### Basic limits

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- ▷ On steep hills, in steep depressions or in tight curves.
- ▷ If the camera is soiled or damaged.
- ▷ In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- ▷ At very high external temperatures.

### Limits of pedestrian and animal detection

In some situations, it may occur that pedestrians are detected as animals or animals as pedestrians.

Small animals are not detected by the object detection function, even if they are clearly visible in the image.

Limited detection, e.g., in the following circumstances:

- ▷ People or animals who are fully or partially covered, especially when their heads are covered.
- ▷ People who are not in an upright position, e.g., lying down.
- ▷ Cyclists on unconventional bicycles (e.g., recumbent bicycles).
- ▷ After physical damage to the system, e.g., after an accident.

## No display on the rear screen

The image from Night Vision cannot be displayed on the rear screen.

# Lane departure warning

## Concept

The lane departure warning alerts when the vehicle on roads with lane markings is about to leave the lane.

## General information

This camera-based system warns starting at a minimum speed.

The minimum speed is country-specific and is displayed in the menu for the Intelligent Safety systems.

Warnings are issued by means of a steering wheel vibration. The severity of the steering wheel vibration can be adjusted. The time of the warning may vary depending on the current driving situation.

The system does not provide a warning if the turn signal is set before leaving the lane.

Vehicles with side collision warning: if in the speed range up to 130 mph/210 km/h a lane marking is crossed, the system intervenes with a brief active steering intervention in addition to vibrating. The system thus helps keep the vehicle in the lane.

## Safety information

### **WARNING**

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess road and traffic safety. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate. Do not jerk the steering wheel in response to a warning.◀

### **WARNING**

Indicators and warnings do not relieve from personal responsibility. Due to system limits, warnings or reactions of the system may not be output or they may be output too late, incorrectly, or without justification. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate. Do not jerk the steering wheel in response to a warning.◀

fic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

## Functional requirements

The camera must detect the lane markings for the lane departure warning to be active.

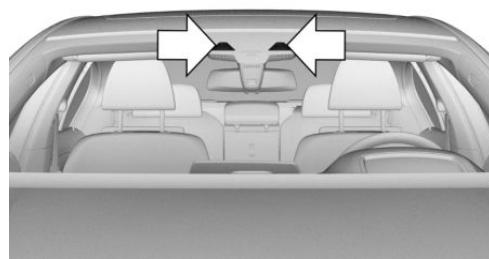
## Overview

### Button in the vehicle



Intelligent Safety

### Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

## Switching on/off

### Switching on automatically

The lane departure warning activates automatically after departure if the function was switched on at the end of the last trip.

## Switching on/off manually



Press button.

The menu for the intelligent safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.



Press button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.



Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

### Button Status

Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.

Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

## Setting the warning frequency

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Intelligent Safety"
4. "Lane Departure Warn."
5. Select the desired setting.
  - ▷ "Always": the system issues a warning whenever a hazardous situation is detected.
  - ▷ "Reduced": some warnings are suppressed depending on the situation, for instance during passing without a turn signal or when purposely driving over lane markings in curves.
  - ▷ "Off": no warnings are issued.

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

## Setting the force of the steering wheel vibration

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Steering wheel vibration"
4. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all Intelligent Safety systems and stored for the driver profile currently used.

## Vehicles with side collision warning: switching steering intervention on/off

The steering intervention can be switched on and off separately for Active Blind Spot Detection and lane departure warning.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Intelligent Safety"
4. "Steering intervention"

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

## Display in the instrument cluster



The system illuminates green: at least one lane marking was detected and warnings can be issued.

## Warning function

### If you leave the lane

If you leave the lane and if a lane marking has been detected, the steering wheel vibrates in accordance with the steering wheel vibration setting.

If the turn signal is set before changing the lane, a warning is not issued.

### With side collision warning

If in the speed range up to 130 mph/210 km/h a lane marking is crossed, the system intervenes with a brief active steering intervention in addition to vibrating. The steering intervention helps keep the vehicle in the lane. The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

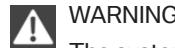
### End of warning

The warning is canceled in the following situations:

- ▷ Automatically after approx. 3 seconds.
- ▷ When returning to your own lane.
- ▷ When braking hard.
- ▷ When using the turn signal.
- ▷ If DSC Dynamic Stability Control intervenes.

## System limits

### Safety information



**WARNING** The system can react not at all, too late, incorrectly, or without justification due to the system limits. There is a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Follow the information regarding the system limits and actively intervene, if needed.◀

### Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- ▷ In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- ▷ In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane markings such as in construction areas.
- ▷ When lane markings are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- ▷ In tight curves or on narrow lanes.
- ▷ When the lane markings are covered by objects.
- ▷ When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- ▷ If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.
- ▷ If the field of view of the camera or the windshield is dirty or covered in the area of the interior mirror.
- ▷ If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

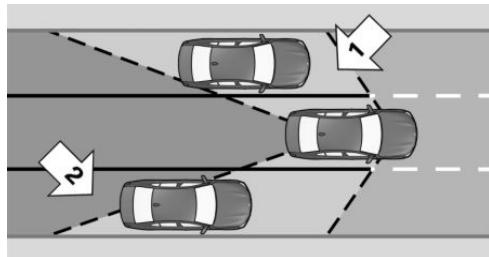
A Check Control message is displayed when the system is not fully functional.

## Active Blind Spot Detection

### Concept

Active Blind Spot Detection detects vehicles in the blind spot or vehicles approaching from behind in the adjacent lane. A warning is issued in various gradations in these situations.

### General information



Two radar sensors in the rear bumper monitor the area behind and next to the vehicle when traveling faster than a minimum speed.

The minimum speed is shown in the menu for the Intelligent Safety systems.

The system indicates whether there are vehicles in the blind spot, arrow 1, or approaching from behind in the adjacent lane, arrow 2.

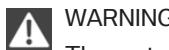
The light in the exterior mirror lights up dimmed.

Before you change lanes after setting the turn signal, the system issues a warning in the situations described above.

The light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel vibrates.

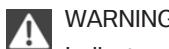
Vehicles with side collision warning: at speeds between 45 mph/70 km/h and 130 mph/210 km/h, the system can intervene with a brief active steering intervention and help to return the vehicle into the lane.

### Safety information



#### WARNING

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀



#### WARNING

Indicators and warnings do not relieve from personal responsibility. Due to system limits, warnings or reactions of the system may not be output or they may be output too late, incorrectly, or without justification. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

### Overview

#### Button in the vehicle



Intelligent Safety

## Radar sensors



The radar sensors are located in the rear bumper.

Always keep the bumper in the area of the radar sensors clean and unobstructed.

## Switching on/off

### Switching on automatically

The Active Blind Spot Detection is automatically activated after departure if the function was switched on at the end of the last trip.

### Switching on/off manually

 Press button.

The menu for the intelligent safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

 Press button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

 Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

### Button Status

 Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.

 Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

 Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

### Setting the warning time

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Intelligent Safety"
4. "Blind Spot Detection"
5. Select the desired setting.

"Off": With this setting, no warning is output.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

### Setting the force of the steering wheel vibration

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Steering wheel vibration"
4. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all Intelligent Safety systems and stored for the driver profile currently used.

## Vehicles with side collision warning: switching steering intervention on/off

The steering intervention can be switched on and off separately for Active Blind Spot Detection and lane departure warning.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Intelligent Safety"
4. "Steering intervention"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

## Warning function

### Light in the exterior mirror



#### Prewarning

The dimmed light in the exterior mirror indicates when there are vehicles in the blind spot or approaching from behind.

#### Acute warning

If the turn signal is set while a vehicle is in the critical zone, the steering wheel vibrates briefly and the light in the exterior mirror flashes brightly.

The warning stops when the turn signal is switched off, or the other vehicle leaves the critical zone.

## With side collision warning

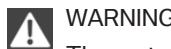
If at speeds between 45 mph/70 km/h and 130 mph/210 km/h the vibrating steering wheel is ignored and the lane marking crossed, the system intervenes with a brief active steering intervention. The steering intervention helps return the vehicle into the lane. The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

## Flashing of the light

A flashing of the light during vehicle unlocking serves as system self-test.

## System limits

### Safety information



#### WARNING

The system can react not at all, too late, incorrectly, or without justification due to the system limits. There is a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Follow the information regarding the system limits and actively intervene, if needed.◀

## Upper speed limit

If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is deactivated temporarily.

If the vehicle speed falls below approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system once again responds according to the setting.

## Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- ▷ When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- ▷ In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- ▷ In tight curves or on narrow lanes.
- ▷ If the bumper is dirty, iced up, or covered, for instance by stickers.

- ▷ If cargo protrudes.

For vehicles with side collision warning, the steering intervention can be limited, for instance in the following situation:

- ▷ In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane markings such as in construction areas.
- ▷ When lane markings are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- ▷ When the lane markings are not white.
- ▷ When the lane markings are covered by objects.
- ▷ When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- ▷ If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.
- ▷ If the field of view of the camera or the windshield is dirty or covered in the area of the interior mirror.
- ▷ If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

A Check Control message is displayed when the system is not fully functional.

## Displaying warnings

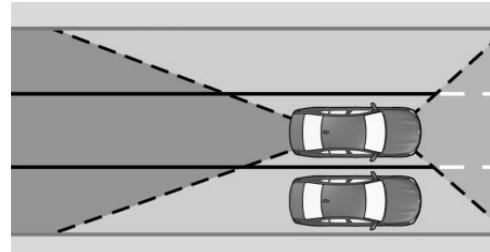
Depending on the selected warning settings, for instance warning time, more warnings can be displayed. However, there may also be an excess of premature warnings of critical situations.

# Side collision warning

## Concept

The system helps to avoid imminent side collisions.

## General information

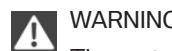


Four radar sensors in the bumpers monitor the area next to the vehicle in the speed range from approx. 45 mph/70 km/h to approx. 130 mph/210 km/h.

The front camera determines the lane marking positions.

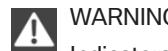
If, for instance another vehicle is detected next to the vehicle and if there is a risk of collision with this vehicle, the system helps avoid the collision via steering intervention.

## Safety information



### WARNING

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀



### WARNING

Indicators and warnings do not relieve from personal responsibility. Due to system limits, warnings or reactions of the system may not be output or they may be output too late, incorrectly, or without justification. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traf-

fic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

## Functional requirements

The camera must detect the lane markings for the side collision warning with steering intervention to be active.

## Overview

### Button in the vehicle



Intelligent Safety

### Radar sensors

The radar sensors are located in the bumpers.



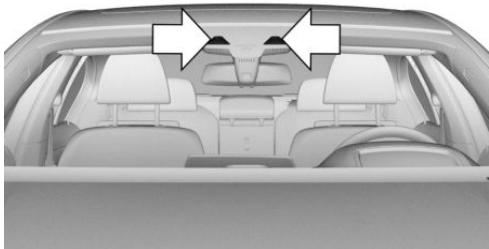
Front bumper.



Rear bumper.

Always keep the bumper in the area of the radar sensors clean and unobstructed.

### Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

### Switching on/off

#### Switching on automatically

The side collision warning activates automatically after departure if the function was switched on at the end of the last trip.

#### Switching on/off manually



Press button.

The menu for the intelligent safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety sys-

tems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.



Press button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"**ALL ON**": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"**INDIVIDUAL**": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.



Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

## Warning function

### Light in the exterior mirror



### If there is a risk of collision

If there is a risk of collision, the light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel vibrates. An active steering intervention takes place to prevent collisions and maintain the vehicle within its own lane. The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

## System limits

### Safety information



#### WARNING

The system can react not at all, too late, incorrectly, or without justification due to the system limits. There is a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Follow the information regarding the system limits and actively intervene, if needed.◀

### Functional limitations

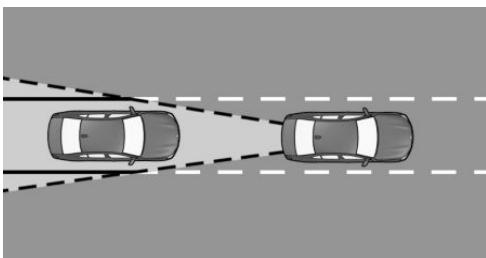
The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- ▷ When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- ▷ In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- ▷ In tight curves or on narrow lanes.
- ▷ If the bumper is dirty, iced up, or covered, for instance by stickers.
- ▷ If cargo protrudes.

- ▷ In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane markings such as in construction areas.
- ▷ When lane markings are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- ▷ When the lane markings are covered by objects.
- ▷ When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- ▷ If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.
- ▷ If the field of view of the camera or the windshield is dirty or covered in the area of the interior mirror.
- ▷ If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

A Check Control message is displayed when the system is not fully functional.

## General information



Two radar sensors in the rear bumper monitor the area behind the vehicle.

If a vehicle approaches from the rear at a certain speed, the system responds as follows:

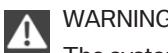
- ▷ Active Protection, refer to page 185: if a collision seems to be unavoidable, Pre-Crash functions are triggered.

The system is automatically active after every driving off.

The system is deactivated in the following situations:

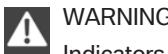
- ▷ When driving in reverse.
- ▷ If the trailer power socket is in use, e.g., during operation with trailer or bicycle rack.

## Safety information



### WARNING

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀



### WARNING

Indicators and warnings do not relieve from personal responsibility. Due to system limits, warnings or reactions of the system may not be output or they may be output too late, incorrectly, or without justification. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions.

fic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

## Overview

### Radar sensors



The radar sensors are located in the rear bumper.

Always keep the bumper in the area of the radar sensors clean and unobstructed.

### System limits

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

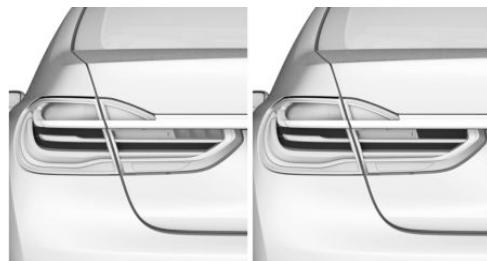
- ▷ When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- ▷ When the approaching vehicle approaches slowly.
- ▷ In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- ▷ In tight curves or on narrow lanes.
- ▷ If the bumper is dirty, iced up, or covered, for instance by stickers.
- ▷ If cargo protrudes.

## Brake force display

### Concept

Additional brake lamps indicate emergency braking to the traffic behind. This can reduce the risk of a rear-end collision.

## General information



- ▷ During normal brake application, the outer brake lights light up.
- ▷ During heavy brake application, the inner brake lights additionally light up.

## Active Protection

### Concept

Active Protection prepares occupants and the vehicle for a possible accident in critical driving or collision situations.

### General information

Active Protection consists of various PreCrash functions, which can vary depending on the equipment.

The system is used to detect certain critical driving situations that might lead to an accident. This includes the following critical driving situations:

- ▷ Emergency stop.
- ▷ Severe understeering.
- ▷ Severe oversteering.

Certain functions of several systems can - within the system limits - lead to Active Protection triggering:

- ▷ Approach control warning with braking function: automatic brake intervention.
- ▷ Approach control warning with braking function: brake booster.

- ▷ Night Vision with pedestrian and animal detection: brake booster.
- ▷ Rear collision prevention: detection of imminent rear collisions.

All other systems can be restored to the desired setting.

## Safety information

### WARNING

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility. Due to the system limits, critical situation could not be detected reliably or in time. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

## Function

When the safety belt is fastened, the driver's and passenger's belt straps are automatically tightened once after driving away.

In accident-critical situations, the following individual functions become active as needed:

- ▷ Automatic pretensioning of the front safety belts.
- ▷ Automatic window closing up to a narrow gap.
- ▷ Automatic closing of the glass sunroof, including sliding visor.
- ▷ Automatic closing of the panoramic glass sunroof, including sliding visor.
- ▷ For vehicles equipped with comfort seats in the front: automatic positioning of the backrest for the front passenger seat.
- ▷ For vehicles equipped with comfort rear seats: automatic positioning of the backrests for the rear passenger seats.

After a critical driving situation without an accident, the front safety belts are loosened again.

If the belt tension does not loosen automatically, stop the vehicle and unbuckle the safety belt using the red button in the buckle. Fasten the safety belt before continuing on your trip.

## PostCrash – iBrake

### Concept

In the event of an accident, the system can bring the vehicle to a halt automatically without intervention by the driver in certain situations. This can reduce the risk of a further collision and the consequences thereof.

### At standstill

After coming to a halt, the brake is released automatically.

### Harder vehicle braking

It can be necessary to bring the vehicle in certain situations to a halt quicker.

To do this, for a short time the braking pressure applied when stepping on the brake pedal must be higher than the braking pressure achieved by the automatic braking function. This interrupts automatic braking.

### Interrupting automatic braking

It can be necessary to interrupt automatic braking in certain situations, for instance for an evasive maneuver.

Interrupt automatic braking:

- ▷ By pressing the brake pedal.
- ▷ By pressing the accelerator pedal.

## Alertness assistant

### Concept

The system can detect decreasing alertness or fatigue of the driver during long, monotonous trips, e.g., on highways. In this situation, it is recommended that the driver takes a break.

## Safety information



### WARNING

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess one's physical state. An increasing lack of alertness or fatigue may not be detected or not be detected in time. There is a risk of an accident. Make sure that the driver is rested and alert. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions.◀

## Function

The system is switched on each time drive-ready state is switched on.

After travel has begun, the system monitors certain aspects of the driver's behavior, so that decreasing alertness or fatigue can be detected.

This procedure takes the following criteria into account:

- ▷ Personal driving style, for instance steering behavior.
- ▷ Driving conditions, for instance length of trip.

Starting at approx. 43 mph/70 km/h, the system is active and can also display a recommendation to take a break.

## Break recommendation

### Switching on/off, adjusting

The alertness assistant is active automatically with each switching on of drive-ready state and can thus display a break recommendation.

The break recommendation can also be switched on or off and adjusted via iDrive.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Driver attention control"
4. Select the desired setting.

- ▷ "Off": no break recommendation is made.
- ▷ "Standard": the break recommendation is made with a defined value.
- ▷ "Sensitive": the break recommendation is issued earlier.

## Display

If the driver becomes less alert or fatigued, a message is displayed in the Control Display with the recommendation to take a break.

During the display, the following settings can be selected:

- ▷ "Do not ask again"
- ▷ "Places to stop"
- ▷ "Remind me later"

The break recommendation is repeated after 20 minutes.

After a break, another recommendation to take a break cannot be displayed until after approximately 45 minutes.

## System limits

The function may be limited in the following situations, e.g., and will either output an incorrect warning or no warning at all:

- ▷ When the clock is set incorrectly.
- ▷ When the vehicle speed is mainly below about 43 mph/70 km/h.
- ▷ With a sporty driving style, such as during rapid acceleration or when cornering fast.
- ▷ In active driving situations, such as when changing lanes frequently.
- ▷ When the road surface is poor.
- ▷ In the event of strong side winds.

The system is reset approx. 45 minutes after parking the vehicle, e.g., in the case of a break during longer trips on highways.

# Driving stability control systems

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

## Anti-lock Braking System ABS

ABS prevents locking of the wheels during braking.

The vehicle maintains its steering power even during full brake applications, thus increasing active safety.

ABS is operational every time you start the engine.

## Brake assistant

When you apply the brakes rapidly, the system automatically produces the greatest possible braking force boost. It reduces the braking distance to a minimum during emergency stop. This system utilizes all of the benefits provided by the Antilock Brake System ABS.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal for the duration of the emergency stop.

## Adaptive brake assistant

In combination with Active Cruise Control, this system ensures that the brakes respond even more rapidly when braking in critical situations.

## Drive-off assistant

### Concept

This system supports driving off on inclines.

### Driving away

1. Hold the vehicle in place with the foot brake.
2. Release the foot brake and drive off without delay.

After the foot brake is released, the vehicle is held in place for approx. 2 seconds.

After the accelerator pedal is depressed, the vehicle is held until it is driven off.

Depending on the vehicle loading, the vehicle may roll back slightly.

## DSC Dynamic Stability Control

### Concept

Within the physical limits, the system helps to keep the vehicle on a steady course by reducing engine speed and by braking the individual wheels.

### General information

DSC detects the following unstable driving conditions, for instance:

- ▷ Fishtailing, which can lead to oversteering.
- ▷ Loss of traction of the front wheels, which can lead to understeering.

### Safety information



#### WARNING

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it can-

not independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀



## WARNING

When driving with roof load, e.g., with roof-mounted luggage rack, driving safety may not be ensured in driving-critical situations due to the elevated center of gravity. There is a risk of accidents or risk of property damage. Do not deactivate Dynamic Stability Control DSC when driving with roof load.◀

## Overview

### Button in the vehicle



DSC OFF

### Deactivating/activating DSC

#### General information

When DSC is deactivated, driving stability is reduced during acceleration and when driving in curves.

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

#### Deactivating DSC



Hold the button down until DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster and the DSC OFF indicator lamp is illuminated.

### Activating DSC



Press button.



DSC OFF and the DSC OFF indicator lamp go out.

### Display

#### In the instrument cluster

When DSC is deactivated, DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster.

#### Indicator/warning lights



The indicator lamp lights up: DSC is deactivated.



The indicator lamp flashes: DSC controls the drive and braking forces.



The indicator lamp lights up: DSC has malfunctioned.

### DTC Dynamic Traction Control

#### Concept

DTC is a version of the DSC Dynamic Stability Control where forward momentum is optimized.

The system ensures maximum headway on special road conditions or loose road surfaces, for instance unplowed snowy roads, but with somewhat limited driving stability.

#### General information

When DTC is activated, the vehicle has maximum traction. Driving stability is limited during acceleration and when driving in curves.

You may find it useful to briefly activate DTC in the following situations:

- ▷ When driving in slush or on uncleared, snow-covered roads.

- When freeing vehicle from deep snow or driving off from loose ground.
- When driving with snow chains.

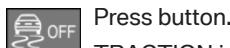
## Overview

### Button in the vehicle



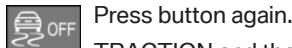
### Activating/deactivating DTC

#### Activating DTC



Press button.  
TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster and the indicator lamp for DSC OFF lights up.

#### Deactivating DTC



Press button again.  
TRACTION and the DSC OFF indicator lamp go out.

### Display

#### Display in the instrument cluster

If DTC is activated, TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster.

#### Indicator/warning lights



The indicator lamp lights up: DTC is activated.

### Automatic program change

The system automatically switches to "DSC ON" in the following situations:

- If Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function ACC is activated.
- On a braking intervention by the Intelligent Safety systems.
- The vehicle has a flat tire.

## xDrive

### Concept

xDrive is the all-wheel-drive system of the vehicle. The interaction of xDrive and DSC Dynamic Stability Control further optimizes traction and driving dynamics. xDrive variably distributes the driving forces to the front and rear axles as demanded by the driving situation and road surface.

## Integral Active Steering

### Concept

Integral Active Steering is a combination of Active Steering and rear axle steering.

The variable steering ratio amplifies the steering angle when maneuvering, thus making the steering more direct. The rear axle steering acts to increase maneuverability at low speeds by turning the rear wheels slightly in the opposite direction to the front wheels.

At higher speeds, the rear wheels are turned in the same direction as the front wheels. This results in, for instance better directional stability and a more harmonious change of direction.

In critical driving situations, the Integral Active Steering can stabilize the vehicle through purposeful steering of the rear wheels before the driver intervenes, for instance in case of oversteering.

## General information

The system offers several different tunings.

Driving mode	Integral Active Steering
COMFORT	comfortable, for optimal travel comfort
ECO PRO	
SPORT	dynamic, for greater agility

The different tunings are assigned to the different driving modes of the Driving Dynamics Control, refer to page [126](#).

## Using snow chains

When snow chains are in use, refer to page [302](#), rear wheel steering is deactivated.

## Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, the steering wheel must be turned further, while the vehicle responds more sensitively to steering wheel movements in the higher speed range.

The stability-enhancing intervention may be deactivated.

Proceed cautiously and drive defensively.

Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

# Driver assistance systems

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

## Cruise control

### Concept

Using this system, a desired speed can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel. The system maintains the desired speed. The system accelerates and brakes automatically as needed.

### General information

Depending on the vehicle setting, the cruise control characteristic can change in certain ranges. For instance, the acceleration in ECO PRO driving mode is more gentle.

### Safety information

#### **WARNING**

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

#### **WARNING**

The use of the system can lead to an increased risk of accidents in the following situations, for instance:

- ▶ On winding roads.
- ▶ In heavy traffic.
- ▶ On slippery roads, in fog, snow, or wet conditions, or on a loose road surface.

There is a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Only use the system if driving at constant speed is possible.◀

#### **WARNING**

The desired speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

### Overview

#### Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Cruise control on/off, refer to page 192.
	Pause cruise control, refer to page 192.
	Continue cruise control with the last setting, refer to page 194.
	Store speed, refer to page 193.
	Rocker switch: adjust speed, refer to page 193.

#### Switching cruise control on/off

##### Switching on



Press button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster light up and the mark in the speedometer is set to the current speed.

Cruise control is active. The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

## Switching off



Press button on the steering wheel.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

## Pausing cruise control

### Interrupting manually



When active, press the button.

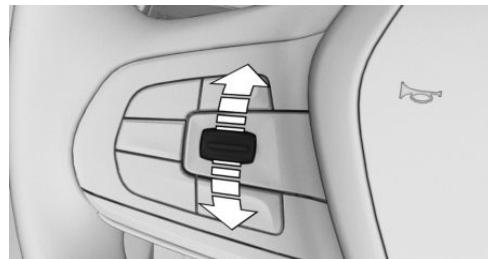
### Interrupting automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ When the driver applies the brakes.
- ▷ When selector lever position D is disengaged.
- ▷ Dynamic Traction Control DTC is activated or DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.
- ▷ If DSC Dynamic Stability Control intervenes.

## Setting the speed

### Maintaining and storing the speed



Press the rocker switch while the system is interrupted.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

The stored speed is displayed, refer to page 194, in the speedometer and briefly in the instrument cluster.

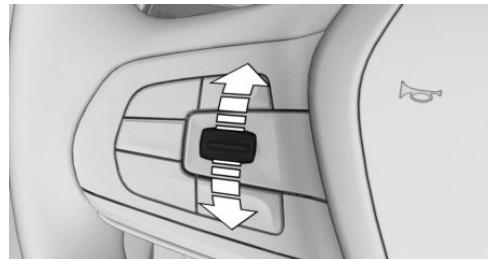
DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

The speed can also be stored by pressing a button.



Press button.

## Changing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

▷ Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point, the desired speed increases or decreases by 1 mph/1 km/h.

▷ Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the resistance point, the desired speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

The maximum adjustable speed depends on the vehicle and the set hybrid system characteristic, refer to page 112.

▷ Pressing the rocker switch to the resistance point and holding it accelerates or decelerates the vehicle without requiring pressure on the accelerator pedal.

After the rocker switch is released, the vehicle maintains its final speed. Pressing the switch beyond the resistance point causes the vehicle to accelerate more rapidly.

## Continuing cruise control

An interrupted cruise control can be continued by calling up the stored speed.

Make sure that the difference between current speed and stored speed is not too large before calling up the stored speed. Otherwise, unintentional braking or accelerating may occur.

 Press button with the system interrupted.

Cruise control is continued with the saved values.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

- ▷ When the system is switched off.
- ▷ When drive-ready state is switched off.

## Displays in the instrument cluster

### Display in the speedometer



- ▷ Green marking: system is active, the marking indicates the desired speed.
- ▷ Orange/white marking: system is interrupted, the marking indicates the stored speed.

- ▷ No marking: system is switched off.

### Indicator lamp



- ▷ Indicator lamp green: system is active.
- ▷ Gray indicator lamp: the system has been interrupted.

- ▷ No indicator lamp: system is switched off.

### Status display



- The selected desired speed is hidden after a brief time.

## Displays in the Head-up Display

Some system information can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.



- The symbol is displayed when the set desired speed is reached.

### System limits

The desired speed is also maintained downhill. The speed may not be maintained on uphill grades if the engine power is insufficient.

In ECO PRO driving mode, the vehicle may exceed or drop below the set desired speed in some situations, for instance on downhill or uphill grades.

# Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go function ACC

## Concept

Using this system, a desired speed and a distance to a vehicle ahead can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel.

The system maintains the desired speed on clear roads. For this purpose, the vehicle accelerates or brakes automatically.

If a vehicle is driving ahead of you, the system adjusts the speed of your vehicle so that the set distance to the vehicle ahead is maintained. The speed is adjusted as far as the given situation allows.

## General information

A radar sensor is located in the front bumper and a camera on the interior mirror to detect vehicles driving ahead of you.

Depending on the vehicle setting, the cruise control characteristic can change in certain ranges. For instance, the acceleration in ECO PRO driving mode is more gentle.

The distance can be adjusted in several steps. For safety reasons, it depends on the respective speed.

If the vehicle ahead of you brakes to a halt, and then proceeds to drive again within a brief period, the system is able to detect this within the given system limits.

## Safety information

### WARNING

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

### WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

- ▶ Set the parking brake.
- ▶ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▶ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, e.g., with a wheel chock.◀

### WARNING

The desired speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

### WARNING

Risk of accident due to too high speed differences to other vehicles, for instance in the following situations:

- ▶ When fast approaching a slowly moving vehicle.
- ▶ Suddenly swerving vehicle onto the own lane.
- ▶ When fast approaching standing vehicles.

There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

## Overview

### Buttons on the steering wheel

#### Button Function

 Cruise control on/off, refer to page 197.

 Store/maintain, refer to page 197, speed.

 Pause, refer to page 197, cruise control.

Continue, refer to page 198, cruise control with the last setting.

 Without steering and lane control assistant:

Increase, refer to page 198, distance.

 Without steering and lane control assistant:

Reduce, refer to page 198, distance.

 With steering and lane control assistant:

Adjust, refer to page 198, distance.

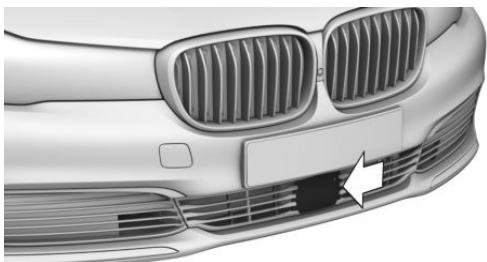
 Rocker switch:

Set, refer to page 197, speed.

 With steering and lane control assistant:

Steering and lane control assistant incl. Traffic Jam Assist on/off, refer to page 201.

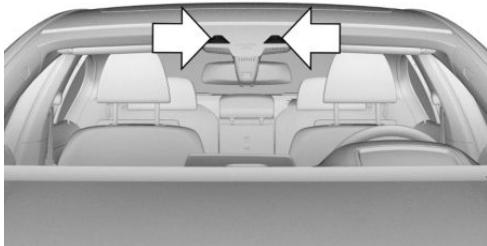
### Radar sensor



The radar sensor is located in the front bumper.

Always keep radar sensor clean and unobstructed.

### Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

### Area of application

The system is best used on well-constructed roads.

The minimum speed that can be set is 20 mph/30 km/h.

The maximum adjustable speed amounts to 115 mph/180 km/h when driving with the combustion engine.

The maximum adjustable speed amounts to 75 mph/120 km/h when driving with the electric motor.

The system can also be activated when stationary.

## Switching on/off and interrupting cruise control

### Switching on



Press button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster light up and the mark in the speedometer is set to the current speed.

Cruise control is active. The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

- ▷ If the safety belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is opened while the vehicle is standing still.
- ▷ If the system has not detected objects for an extended period, for instance on a road with very little traffic without curb or shoulder markings.
- ▷ If the detection range of the radar is impaired, for instance by dirt or heavy fog.
- ▷ After a longer stationary period when the vehicle has been braked to a stop by the system.

### Switching off

To switch off the system while standing, step on brake pedal at the same time.



Press button on the steering wheel.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

### Interrupting manually



When active, press the button on the steering wheel.

If interrupting the system while stationary, press on the brake pedal at the same time.

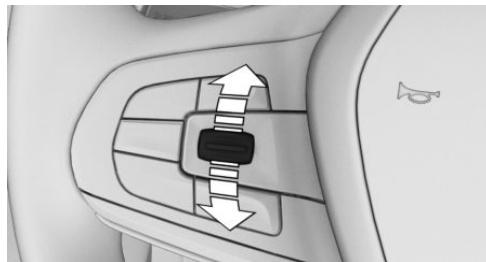
### Interrupting automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations:

- ▷ When the driver applies the brakes.
- ▷ When selector lever position D is disengaged.
- ▷ Dynamic Traction Control DTC is activated or DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.
- ▷ If DSC Dynamic Stability Control intervenes.

### Setting the speed

#### Maintaining and storing the speed



Press the rocker switch while the system is interrupted.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

The stored speed is displayed, refer to page 198, in the speedometer and briefly in the instrument cluster.

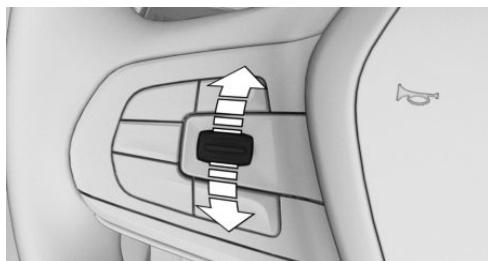
DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

The speed can also be stored by pressing a button.



Press button.

## Changing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

- ▷ Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point, the desired speed increases or decreases by 1 mph/1 km/h.
- ▷ Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the resistance point, the desired speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

Hold the rocker switch in position to repeat the action.

## Adjusting distance

### Safety information



#### WARNING

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility. Due to the system limits, braking can be late. There is a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Be aware to the traffic situation at all times. Adjust the distance to the traffic and weather conditions and maintain the prescribed safety distance, possibly by braking.◀

### Without steering and lane control assistant: reducing distance



Press button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

Instrument cluster will display selected distance, refer to page 199.

### Without steering and lane control assistant: increasing distance



Press button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

Instrument cluster will display selected distance, refer to page 199.

### With steering and lane control assistant: adjusting distance



Press button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

### Continuing cruise control

An interrupted cruise control can be continued by calling up the stored speed.

Make sure that the difference between current speed and stored speed is not too large before calling up the stored speed. Otherwise, unintentional braking or accelerating may occur.



Press button with the system interrupted.

Cruise control is continued with the saved values.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

- ▷ When the system is switched off.
- ▷ When drive-ready state is switched off.

### Displays in the instrument cluster

#### Display in the speedometer



- ▷ Green marking: system is active, the marking indicates the desired speed.
- ▷ Orange/white marking: system is interrupted, the marking indicates the stored speed.

- ▷ No marking: system is switched off.

## Status display



The selected desired speed is hidden after a brief time.

## Distance to vehicle ahead of you

Selected distance to the vehicle ahead of you is shown.

Symbol	Description
	Distance 1
	Distance 2
	Distance 3
	Distance 4 This value is set automatically after the system is switched on.
	System interrupted.
	No distance control display, as the accelerator pedal is being pressed.

## Detected vehicle

Symbol	Description
	Green symbol: A vehicle has been detected ahead of you. The system maintains the set distance to the vehicle in front.

As soon as the detected vehicle drives off, the vehicle symbol in the distance indicator will move away.

To accelerate, activate ACC by briefly stepping on the accelerator pedal or pressing the rocker switch.

## Indicator/warning lights

Symbol	Description
	Vehicle symbol flashes: The conditions are not adequate for the system to work. The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.
	The vehicle symbol and distance bars flash red and an acoustic signal sounds: Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

## Displays in the Head-up Display

### Desired speed

Some system information can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.



The symbol is displayed when the set desired speed is reached.

## Distance information



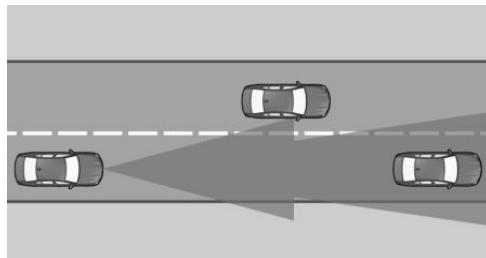
The symbol is displayed when the distance from the vehicle traveling ahead is too short.

The distance information is active in the following situations:

- ▷ Active Cruise Control switched off.
- ▷ Display in the Head-up Display selected, refer to page 147.
- ▷ Distance too short.
- ▷ Speed greater than approx. 40 mph/70 km/h.

## System limits

### Detection range



The detection capacity of the system and the automatic braking capacity are limited.

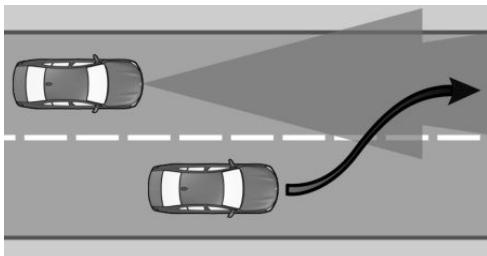
Two-wheeled vehicles for instance might not be detected.

### Deceleration

The system also does not decelerate in the following situations:

- ▷ For pedestrians or similarly slow-moving road users.
- ▷ For red traffic lights.
- ▷ For cross traffic.
- ▷ For oncoming traffic.

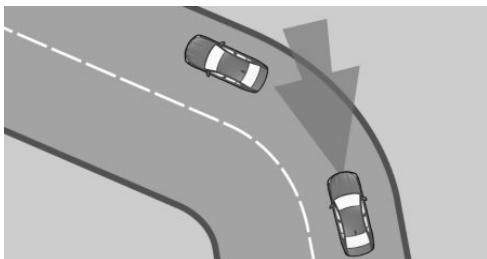
## Swerving vehicles



A vehicle driving in front of you is not detected until it is completely within the same lane as your vehicle.

If a vehicle driving ahead of you suddenly swerves into your lane, the system may not be able to automatically restore the selected distance. It may not be possible to restore the selected distance in certain situations, including if you are driving significantly faster than vehicles driving ahead of you, for instance when rapidly approaching a truck. When a vehicle driving ahead of you is reliably detected, the system requests that the driver intervene by braking and carrying out evasive maneuvers, if needed.

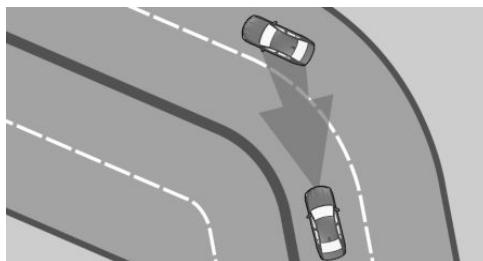
### Cornering



If the desired speed is too high for a curve, the speed is reduced slightly, although curves cannot be anticipated in advance. Therefore, drive into a curve at an appropriate speed.

The system has a limited detection range. Situations can arise in tight curves where a vehi-

cle driving ahead will not be detected or will be detected very late.



When you approach a curve the system may briefly report vehicles in the next lane due to the bend of the curve. If the system decelerates you may compensate it by briefly accelerating. After releasing the accelerator pedal the system is reactivated and controls speed independently.

## Driving away

In some situations, the vehicle cannot drive off automatically; for example:

- ▷ On steep inclines.
- ▷ From bumps in the road.

In these cases, step on the accelerator pedal.

## Weather

The following restrictions can occur under unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- ▷ Poorer vehicle recognition.
- ▷ Short-term interruptions for vehicles that are already recognized.

Examples of unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- ▷ Wet conditions.
- ▷ Snowfall.
- ▷ Slush.
- ▷ Fog.
- ▷ Glare.

Drive attentively, and react to the current traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for instance by braking, steering or evading.

## Engine power

The desired speed is also maintained downhill. The speed may not be maintained on uphill grades if the engine power is insufficient.

In ECO PRO driving mode, the vehicle may intentionally exceed or drop below the set desired speed in some situations, for instance on downhill or uphill grades.

## Malfunction

The system cannot be activated if the radar sensor is not aligned correctly. This may be caused by damage incurred, e.g., during parking.

A Check Control message is displayed if the system fails.

Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

The function for detecting and responding when approaching stationary vehicles may be limited in the following situations:

- ▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- ▷ If the camera is malfunctioning or dirty. A Check Control message is displayed.

## Steering and lane control assistant

### Concept

The system assists the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane. For this purpose, the system executes supporting steering movements, for instance when driving in a curve.

## General information

The system determines the position of the lane markings and the vehicle driving ahead using five radar sensors and a camera.

Depending on the speed, the system orients itself according to the lane markings or vehicles in front.

Sensors on the steering wheel detect whether the steering wheel is being touched.

## Safety information

### WARNING

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

## Overview

### Button on the steering wheel

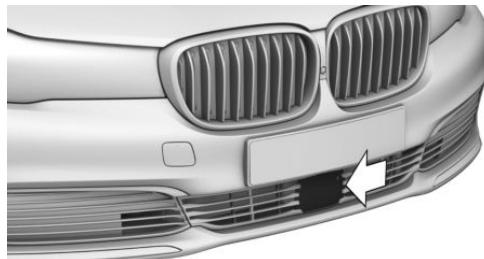
#### Button Function



Switch steering and lane control assistant incl. Traffic Jam Assist on/off, refer to page [203](#).

### Radar sensors

The radar sensors are located in the bumpers.



Front center bumper.



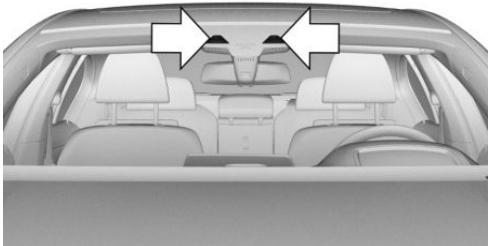
Front side bumper.



Rear bumper.

Always keep the bumper in the area of the radar sensors clean and unobstructed.

### Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

### Functional requirements

The following functional requirements must be met for the system:

- ▶ Speed below 130 mph/210 km/h.

- ▷ Sufficient lane width.
- ▷ Above approx. 43 mph, 70 km/h: lane marking on both sides is detected.
- ▷ Below approx. 43 mph, 70 km/h: lane marking on both sides or a vehicle driving ahead is detected.
- ▷ Hands on the steering wheel rim.
- ▷ Wide curves.
- ▷ Drive in the center of the lane.
- ▷ Turn signal not actuated.
- ▷ Camera calibration immediately after vehicle delivery is completed.

## Switching on/off

### Switching on

 Press button on the steering wheel.

 Steering wheel symbol lights up gray.  
The system is on standby and does not manipulate steering.

System activates automatically as soon as all function conditions are fulfilled, refer to page 202.

 Steering wheel symbol lights up green.  
The system is active.

With the system switched on, the person warning with City braking function and the side collision warning are active.

### Switching off

 Press button on the steering wheel.

The indicator goes out.

The system does not perform supportive steering wheel movements.

### Interrupting automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations:

- ▷ At a speed above 130 mph/210 km/h.
- ▷ When the steering wheel is released.
- ▷ When you manipulate steering.
- ▷ When you leave your own lane.
- ▷ When the turn signal is on.
- ▷ When the lane is too narrow.
- ▷ If for a particular time no lane marking is detected and there is no vehicle driving in front.

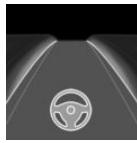


Steering wheel symbol lights up gray.

The system is on standby and does not manipulate steering.

System activates automatically as soon as all function conditions are fulfilled, refer to page 202.

### Displays in the instrument cluster

Symbol	Description
	Gray steering wheel symbol: The system is on standby.
	Green steering wheel symbol: The system is activated.
	Yellow steering wheel symbol, flashing: The system is about to crash.
	Green steering wheel symbol and lane marking: The system supports the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane.

Symbol	Description
	<p>Green steering wheel symbol, gray lane marking:</p> <p>No lane marking detected or vehicle outside of lane marking.</p> <p>Outside of the lane marking, steering support continues toward the center of the lane.</p> <p>If a lane marking is not detected, the vehicle follows the vehicle ahead.</p>
	<p>Yellow steering wheel symbol:</p> <p>The hands are not grasping the steering wheel. The system is still active.</p>
	<p>Red steering wheel symbol and a signal sounds, if applicable:</p> <p>The hands are not grasping the steering wheel. System interrupted.</p> <p>The system does not perform supportive steering wheel movements.</p> <p>The system reduces the speed depending on the equipment configuration.</p>

## Displays in the Head-up Display

All system information can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

## System limits

### General information

The system cannot be activated or meaningfully used in certain situations.

## Safety information



### WARNING

The system can react not at all, too late, incorrectly, or without justification due to the system limits. There is a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Follow the information regarding the system limits and actively intervene, if needed.◀

## Hands on the steering wheel

The sensors cannot detect hand-steering wheel contact in the following situations:

- ▷ Driving with gloves.
- ▷ Protective covers on the steering wheel.

## Narrow lanes

When driving within narrow lanes, the system cannot be activated or effectively used, for instance in the following situations:

- ▷ In construction areas.
- ▷ In rescue lanes.
- ▷ Within city limits.

## Weather

The following restrictions can occur under unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- ▷ Poorer vehicle recognition.
- ▷ Short-term interruptions for vehicles that are already recognized.

Examples of unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- ▷ Wet conditions.
- ▷ Snowfall.
- ▷ Slush.
- ▷ Fog.
- ▷ Glare.

Drive attentively, and react to the current traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for instance by braking, steering or evading.

# PDC Park Distance Control

## Concept

PDC is a support when parking. Objects that you are approaching slowly in front of or behind the vehicle are indicated with:

- ▷ Signal tones.
- ▷ Visual display.

With parking assistant: obstacles on the side of the vehicle that are detected by the sensors of the parking assistant, may also be reported by the side protection function, refer to page 207.

## General information

The ultrasound sensors for distance measurements are located in the bumpers and possibly on the sides of the vehicle.

The maneuvering range, depending on the obstacle and environmental conditions, is approx. 6 ft/2 m.

An acoustic warning sounds in case of an impending collision at a distance to the object of approx. 27 in/70 cm.

For objects behind the vehicle, the acoustic warning is already issued at a distance to the object of approx. 5 ft/1.50 m.

## Safety information

### **WARNING**

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

### **WARNING**

Due to high speeds when PDC Park Distance Control is activated, the warning can be delayed due to physical circumstances. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Avoid approaching an object too fast. Avoid

driving off fast while PDC Park Distance Control is not yet active.◀

## Overview

### Button in the vehicle



Park assistance button

### Ultrasound sensors



Ultrasound sensors of the PDC, for instance in the bumpers.

## Functional requirements

Ensure full functionality:

- ▷ Do not cover sensors, for instance with stickers, bicycle racks.
- ▷ Keep the sensors clean and unobstructed.

## Switching on/off

### Switching on automatically

The system switches on automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ If selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.
- ▷ While approaching detected obstacles if the speed is slower than approx. 2.5 mph/4 km/h. The activation distance depends on the situation in question.

You may switch automatic activation on and off when obstacles are detected.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Parking"
4. "Automatic PDC activation": only with respective equipment.
5. "Automatic PDC activation"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Depending on equipment, an additional camera view is also switched on.

### Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on, if needed.

### Switching on/off manually



Press park assistance button.

- ▶ On: the LED lights up.
- ▶ Off: the LED goes out.

The rearview camera image is displayed if the reverse gear is engaged when pressing the park assistance button.

### WARNING

### Signal tones

#### General information

When approaching an object, an intermittent sound indicates the position of the object. E.g., if an object is detected to the left rear of the vehicle, a signal tone sounds from the left rear speaker.

The shorter the distance to the object, the shorter the intervals.

If the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 10 inches/25 cm, a continuous tone is sounded.

If there are objects in front of and behind the vehicle at the same time, with a distance smaller than approx. 10 in/25 cm, an alternating constant tone will sound.

The intermittent tone and constant tone are switched off if the selector lever position P is engaged.

The intermittent tone is switched off after a short time when the vehicle is stationary.

#### Volume

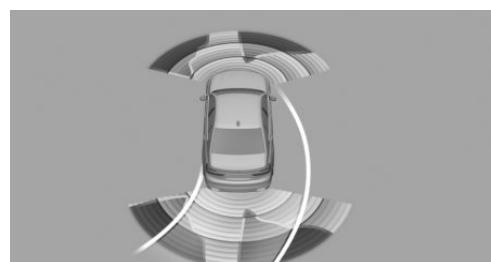
The ratio of the PDC signal tone volume to the entertainment volume can be adjusted.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Tone"
4. "Volume settings"
5. "PDC"
6. Set the desired value.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

### Visual warning



The approach of the vehicle to an object is shown on the Control Display. Objects that are farther away are already displayed on the Control Display before a signal sounds.

The display appears as soon as PDC is activated.

The range of the sensors is represented in the colors green, yellow and red.

Pathway lines are faded in for better estimation of the required space.

When the image of the rearview camera is displayed, the switch can be made to PDC or to a different view with obstacle markings as needed:

 "Rear view camera"

Crossing traffic warning, refer to page 223: depending on the equipment, it is warned in the PDC display against vehicles approaching in the front or rear from the side.

## With parking assistant: emergency braking function, Active PDC

### Concept

The emergency braking function of PDC initiates an emergency braking in case of acute risk of collision.

### General information

Due to system limits, a collision cannot be prevented under all circumstances.

The function is available from walking speed while backing up or rolling backward.

A press of the accelerator pedal interrupts the braking intervention.

After emergency braking to a stop, further creeping toward an obstacle is possible. To creep toward the obstacle, lightly press the accelerator pedal and release it again.

If the accelerator pedal is heavily depressed, the vehicle drives off as usual. Manual braking is possible at any time.

The system uses the ultrasound sensors of PDC and parking assistant.

## Safety information

### WARNING

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

## Activating/deactivating the system

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Parking"
4. "Active PDC with braking interv."
5. "Active PDC with braking interv."

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

### System limits

The system cannot be used in the following situations, for example:

▷ When driving with a trailer.

If required, deactivate the system via iDrive where applicable.

## With parking assistant: side protection

### Concept

The system warns of obstacles on the side of the vehicle.

### General information

The system uses the ultrasound sensors of PDC and parking assistant.

## Display



To protect the sides of the vehicle, obstacle markings are displayed on the vehicle at the sides.

- ▷ Color markings: warning against detected obstacles.
- ▷ Gray markings, hatched area: no obstacles were detected.
- ▷ No markings, black area: the area next to the vehicle was not yet captured.

## Limits of side protection

The system only displays stationary obstacles that were previously detected by sensors while passing them.

The system does not detect whether an obstacle moves later on. If the vehicle is stationary, the markings are shown in black after a certain time. The area next to the vehicle must be newly captured.

## System limits

### Safety information



#### WARNING

The system can react not at all, too late, incorrectly, or without justification due to the system limits. There is a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Follow the information regarding the system limits and actively intervene, if needed.◀

## Limits of ultrasonic measurement

Ultrasonic measurements might not function in the following situations:

- ▷ For small children and animals.
- ▷ For persons with certain clothing, for instance coats.
- ▷ With external interference of the ultrasound, for instance from passing vehicles or loud machines.
- ▷ When sensors are dirty, iced over, damaged or out of position.
- ▷ Under certain weather conditions such as high relative humidity, wet conditions, snowfall, extreme heat, or strong wind.
- ▷ With tow bars and trailer couplings of other vehicles.
- ▷ With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- ▷ With moving objects.
- ▷ With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges.
- ▷ With objects with corners, edges, and smooth surfaces.
- ▷ With objects with a fine surface structure such as fences.
- ▷ For objects with porous surfaces.
- ▷ With small and low objects, for instance boxes.
- ▷ With obstacles and persons at the edge of the lane.
- ▷ With soft obstacles or obstacles covered in foam material.
- ▷ With plants and bushes.
- ▷ Low objects already displayed, for instance curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.
- ▷ Cargo that extends beyond the perimeter of the vehicle is not taken into account by the system.

## False warnings

The system may issue a warning under the following conditions even though there is no obstacle within the detection range:

- ▷ In heavy rain.
- ▷ When sensors are very dirty or covered with ice.
- ▷ When sensors are covered in snow.
- ▷ On rough road surfaces.
- ▷ On uneven surfaces, such as speed bumps.
- ▷ In large buildings with right angles and smooth walls, for instance in underground garages.
- ▷ In automatic vehicle washes.
- ▷ Due to heavy exhaust.
- ▷ Due to other ultrasound sources, for instance sweeping machines, high pressure steam cleaners or neon lights.

If necessary, switch off, refer to page 205, automatic PDC activation on obstacle detection, for instance in vehicle washes, to reduce false alarms.

## Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.



White symbol is displayed, and the range of the sensors is dimmed on the Control Display.

PDC has failed. Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

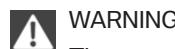
## Without Surround View: rearview camera

### Concept

The rearview camera provides assistance in parking and maneuvering backwards. The area

behind the vehicle is shown on the Control Display.

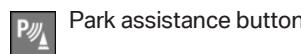
## Safety information



**WARNING** The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

## Overview

### If the vehicle is equipped accordingly: button in the vehicle



### Camera



The camera lens is located in the handle of the tailgate.

The image quality may be impaired by dirt. If necessary, clean the camera lens.

## Switching on/off

### Switching on automatically

The system is switched on automatically if selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.

### Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on, if needed.

### If the vehicle is equipped accordingly: switching on/off manually

 Press park assistance button.

- ▷ On: the LED lights up.
- ▷ Off: the LED goes out.

PDC Park Distance Control is shown on the Control Display.

The rearview camera image is displayed if the reverse gear is engaged when pressing the park assistance button.

### Switching the view via iDrive

With PDC Park Distance Control activated:

 "Rear view camera"

The rearview camera image is displayed.

### Functional requirements

- ▷ The rearview camera is switched on.
- ▷ The tailgate is fully closed.
- ▷ Keep the recording range of the camera clear. Protruding cargo or carrier systems and trailers that are not connected to a trailer power socket can restrict the visibility range of the camera.

## Assistance functions

### General information

More than one assistance function can be active at the same time.

The assistance functions can be manually activated.

▷  "Parking aid lines"

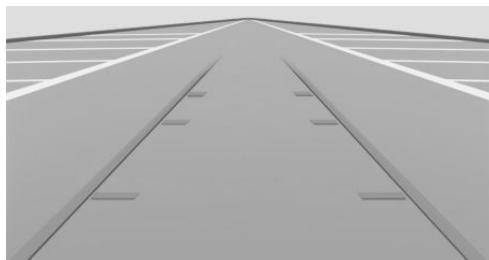
Pathway lines and turning radius lines are displayed, refer to page 210.

▷  "Obstacle marking"

If the vehicle is equipped accordingly, the obstacles detected by PDC Park Distance Control are displayed, refer to page 211, by markings.

### Parking aid lines

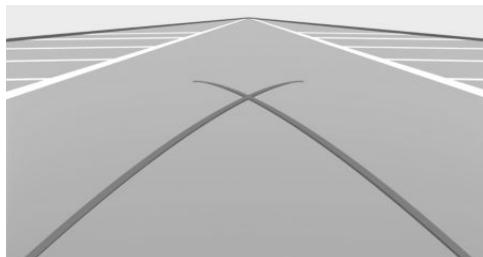
#### Pathway lines



Pathway lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and maneuvering on level roads.

Pathway lines depend on the steering angle and are continuously adjusted to the steering wheel movements.

## Turning radius lines



Turning radius lines can only be superimposed on the camera image together with pathway lines.

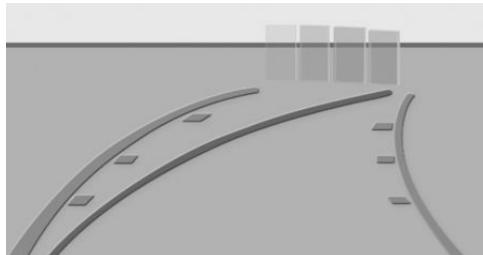
Turning radius lines show the course of the smallest possible turning radius on a level road.

Only one turning radius line is displayed after the steering wheel is turned past a certain angle.

## Parking using pathway and turning radius lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the red turning radius line leads to within the limits of the parking space.
2. Turn the steering wheel to the point where the green pathway line covers the corresponding turning radius line.

## Obstacle marking



If the vehicle is equipped accordingly, obstacles behind the vehicle are detected by the PDC Park Distance Control sensors.

Obstacle markings can be faded into the image of the rearview camera.

The colored thresholds of the obstacle markings match the markings of the PDC Park Distance Control.

## Setting brightness and contrast via iDrive

With the rearview camera switched on:

1. Move the controller to the left.
2. ▶ ☀ "Brightness"  
▶ ⚙ "Contrast"
3. Set the desired value.

## System limits

### Deactivated camera

If the camera is deactivated, for instance if the tailgate is open, the camera image is displayed hatched in gray.

### Detection of objects

Very low obstacles as well as high, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detected by the system.

If the vehicle is equipped accordingly, some assistance functions also consider data from PDC Park Distance Control.

Follow the notes in the PDC Park Distance Control chapter.

The objects displayed on the Control Display may be closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance from the objects on the display.

## Surround View

### Concept

The system provides assistance in parking and maneuvering. The area around the vehicle is shown on the Control Display.

## General information

Several cameras capture the area from different selectable perspectives. In addition, assistance functions, for instance guidelines, can be faded into the display.

The following camera perspectives can be displayed:

- ▷ Automatic camera perspective, refer to page 213: the system shows the camera perspective suitable for the respective driving situation.
- ▷ Rearview camera, refer to page 213: for representing the areas behind the vehicle.
- ▷ Right-hand and left-hand side view, refer to page 215: for representing the areas on the sides of the vehicle.
- ▷ Camera perspective movable via iDrive, refer to page 213.
- ▷ Panorama View, refer to page 216: to present cross traffic, for instance at junctions and driveways, depending on the currently engaged gear.

Depending on the view, the environment around the vehicle or a part of it is depicted.

## Safety information

### **WARNING**

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

## Overview

### Buttons in the vehicle



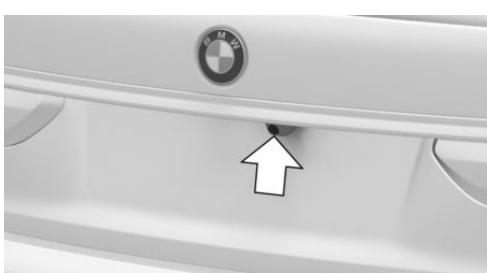
 Park assistance button

 Panorama View

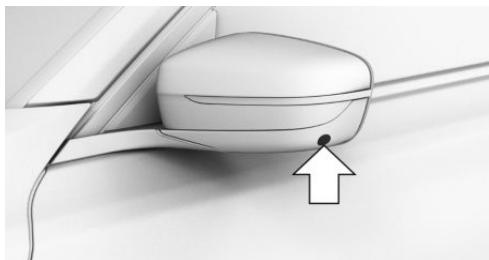
### Cameras



Front camera



Rearview camera



One camera is located at the bottom of each exterior mirror housing.

The image quality may be impaired by dirt on the camera lenses. If required, clean the camera lenses.

## Switching on/off

### Switching on automatically

The system is switched on automatically if selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.

The camera perspective suitable for the respective driving situation is displayed.

### Switching on/off manually



Press park assistance button.

- ▷ On: the LED lights up.
- ▷ Off: the LED goes out.

The rearview camera cannot be switched off if the reverse gear is engaged.

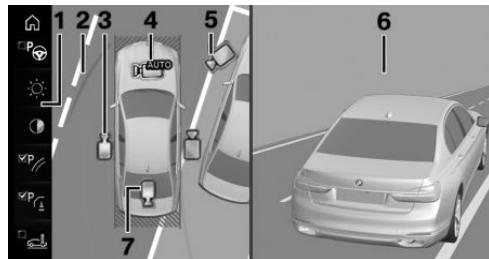
### Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on, if needed.

## Camera perspective

### Overview



1 Function bar

2 Selection window

3 Side view

4 Automatic camera perspective

5 Movable camera perspective

6 Camera image

7 Rearview camera

### Selection window

The individual camera perspectives can be selected in the selection window via iDrive.

### Side view

The side view can be selected for the right or left vehicle side.

This view helps when positioning the vehicle at the curb or with other obstacles on the side by displaying the side surroundings.

The side view looks from rear to front and in case of danger, focuses automatically on possible obstacles.

### Automatic camera perspective

The automatic camera perspective shows a steering-dependent view in the respective driving direction.

This perspective adapts to the respective driving situation.

As soon as obstacles are detected, the view changes to a fixed display of the area in front or

at the rear behind the bumper or, if necessary, changes to a side view.

When reverse gear is engaged, the automatic camera perspective is closed and the system uses a fixed perspective of the rearview camera. If necessary, manually select the automatic camera perspective when reverse gear is engaged. The automatic camera perspective will be retained for the current parking maneuver.

### Movable camera perspective

With selection of the movable camera perspective, a circle appears on the Control Display.

By turning the Controller or via touch function, specified perspectives on the circle can be selected.

The current perspective is marked with a camera symbol.

With BMW Gesture Control: the movable camera perspective can be moved around the circle using BMW Gesture Control, refer to page 32.

To leave the circle, move the Controller sideways and press or tap the active camera symbol via the touchscreen.

### Rearview camera

This view shows the picture of the rearview camera.

### Function bar

Assistance functions, refer to page 214, can be activated via the function bar and settings applied.

- ▷  "Parking Assistant", refer to page 218.
- ▷  "Brightness", refer to page 217.
- ▷  "Contrast", refer to page 217.
- ▷  "Parking aid lines", refer to page 214.
- ▷  "Obstacle marking", refer to page 215.
- ▷  "Car wash", refer to page 215.

- ▷  "Settings": apply settings, for instance to use the activation points for Panorama View.

## Assistance functions

### General information

More than one assistance function can be active at the same time.

The following assistance functions can be manually activated:

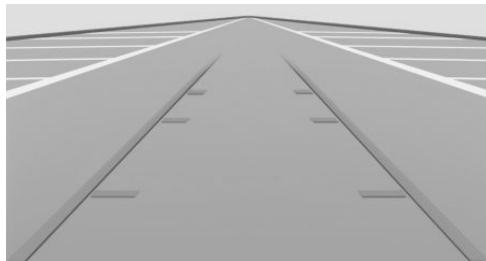
- ▷  "Parking aid lines"
- ▷  "Obstacle marking"
- ▷  "Car wash"

The following assistance functions are automatically displayed:

- ▷ Side protection, refer to page 215.
- ▷ Door opening angle, refer to page 216.

### Parking aid lines

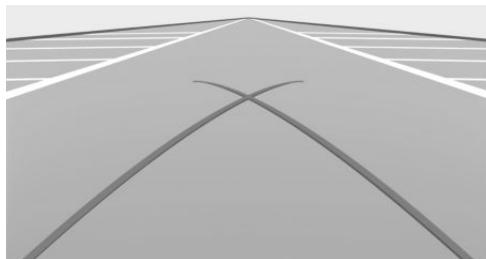
#### Pathway lines



Pathway lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and maneuvering on level roads.

Pathway lines depend on the steering angle and are continuously adjusted to the steering wheel movements.

## Turning radius lines



Turning radius lines can only be superimposed on the camera image together with pathway lines.

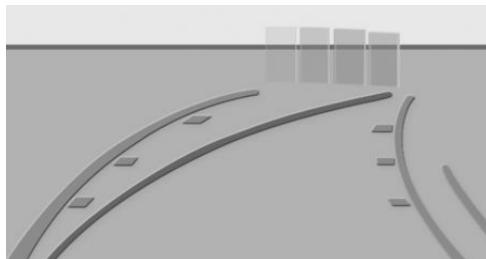
Turning radius lines show the course of the smallest possible turning radius on a level road.

Only one turning radius line is displayed after the steering wheel is turned past a certain angle.

## Parking using pathway and turning radius lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the red turning radius line leads to within the limits of the parking space.
2. Turn the steering wheel to the point where the green pathway line covers the corresponding turning radius line.

## Obstacle marking

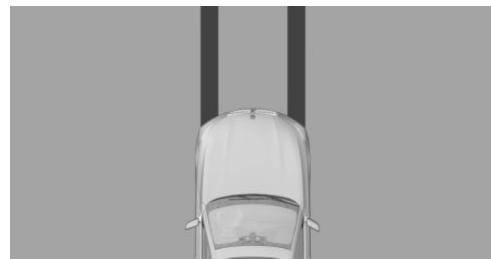


Obstacles behind the vehicle are detected by the PDC Park Distance Control sensors.

Obstacle markings can be shown in the camera image.

The colored thresholds of the obstacle markings match the markings of the PDC Park Distance Control.

## Vehicle wash view



The vehicle wash view assists when entering a vehicle wash by displaying the floor and the vehicle's own track.

## Side protection

### Concept

The system warns of obstacles on the side of the vehicle.

### Display



To protect the sides of the vehicle, obstacle markings are displayed on the vehicle at the sides.

- No markings: no obstacles were detected.
- Color markings: warning against detected obstacles.

## Limits of side protection

The system only displays stationary obstacles that were previously detected by sensors while passing them.

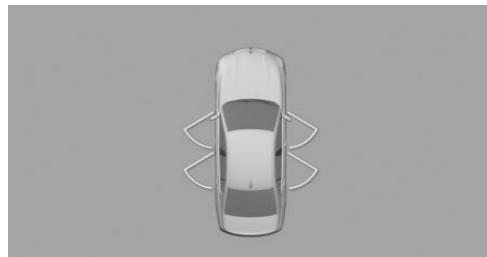
The system does not detect whether an obstacle moves later on. For this reason, at standstill, the markings are not shown anymore in the display after a certain time. The area next to the vehicle must be newly captured.

## Door opening angle

### Concept

The system indicates fixed obstacles that obstruct the opening angles of the doors.

The system does not provide a warning of approaching traffic.



The maximum opening angle of the doors is displayed in selector lever position P.

As soon as the vehicle begins moving, the opening angles are replaced by parking aid lines.

### Limits of the display

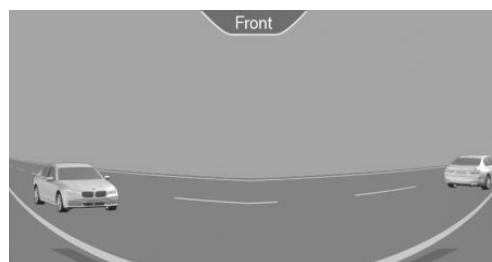
The vehicle surroundings are displayed with distorted image for technical reasons.

Even if the symbols for the door opening angles do not cross other objects on the Control Display, the following needs to be noted when parking next to other objects:

Because of the perspective, higher, protruding objects may be closer than they appear on the Control Display.

## Panorama View

### Concept



The system provides an early look at cross traffic at blind driveways and intersections.

### General information

Road users concealed by obstacles to the left and right of the vehicle can only be detected relatively late from the driver's seat. The cameras in the front and rear capture the sideways traffic area to improve the view.

Yellow lines in the screen display mark the front and rear end of the vehicle.

The camera image shows different levels of distortion in some areas and is thus not suitable for distance estimations.

### Display on the Control Display

 Press the button when the engine is running.

Depending on the driving direction, the image of the respective camera is displayed:

- ▷ "front": front camera image.
- ▷ "rear": rear camera image.

If the vehicle is appropriately equipped, the crossing traffic warning, refer to page 223, can additionally warn against oncoming vehicles using radar sensors.

## With navigation system: activation points

### Concept

Positions at which Panorama View is to switch on automatically can be stored as activation points as soon as a GPS signal is received.

### General information

Up to ten activation points can be stored.

Activation points can be used when driving forward for the front camera.

### Storing activation points

1. Drive to the position at which the system is to be switched on, and stop.
2.  Press button.
3. Move the Controller to the left.
4.  "Add activation point"
- The current position is displayed.
5. "Add activation point"

Activation points are, if possible, stored with town/city and street address, or else with the GPS coordinates.

### Using activation points

The use of activation points can be switched on and off.

1.  Press button.
2. Move the Controller to the left.
3.  "Settings"
4. "Panorama view, GPS-based"
5. "Panorama view, GPS-based"

### Displaying activation points

1.  Press button.
2. Move the Controller to the left.
3.  "Show activation points"

A list of all activation points is displayed.

### Renaming or deleting activation points

1.  Press button.
2. Move the Controller to the left.
3.  "Show activation points"
- A list of all activation points is displayed.
4. Select an activation point as needed.
5.
  - ▷ "Rename"
  - ▷ "Delete this activation point"
  - ▷ "Delete all activation points"

### Setting brightness and contrast

Brightness and contrast can be adjusted with Surround View or Panorama View switched on. Via iDrive:

1. Move the controller to the left.
2.
  - ▷  "Brightness"
  - ▷  "Contrast"
3. Set the desired value.

### Functional limitations

The system can be used only to a limited extent in the following situations:

- ▷ In poor light.
- ▷ In case of soiled cameras.
- ▷ With a door open.
- ▷ With the tailgate open.
- ▷ With exterior mirrors folded in.

Gray hatched areas with symbol, for instance open door, in the camera image mark areas that are currently not displayed.

### System limits

#### Non-visible areas

Because of the camera angle, the areas under the vehicle cannot be viewed by the cameras.

## Detection of objects

Very low obstacles as well as high, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detected by the system.

Some assistance functions also consider data from the PDC Park Distance Control.

Follow, refer to page 205, the notes in the PDC Park Distance Control chapter.

The objects displayed on the Control Display may be closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance from the objects on the display.

## Malfunction

A camera malfunction is displayed on the Control Display.



A yellow symbol is displayed and the recording range of the malfunctioning camera is displayed in black on the Control Display.

## Remote 3D View

### Concept

Using the BMW Connected App and the camera images from Surround View, the vehicle surroundings can be displayed on a mobile device, for instance a smartphone.

The function displays a momentary view of the situation.

### Functional requirements

- ▷ Data transmission must be activated, refer to page 43.
- ▷ BMW Connected App must be installed on the mobile device.

### Switching the function on/off

Using iDrive:

1. With the standby state switched on: "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"

3. "Data privacy"
4. "Remote 3D View"

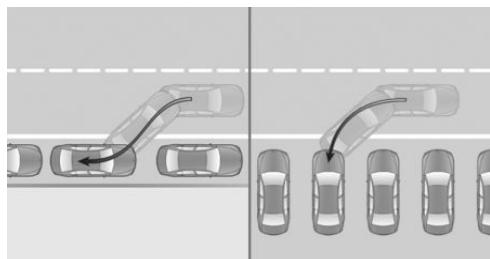
## Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional or may not be available in the following situations:

- ▷ In poor light.
- ▷ In case of soiled cameras.
- ▷ With a door or the tailgate open. Dark fields in the display indicate areas that are not recorded by the system.
- ▷ With exterior mirrors folded in.
- ▷ When other camera functions are being performed in the vehicle.
- ▷ When the vehicle moves faster than walking speed.
- ▷ It may not be possible to use the function in every country.
- ▷ For reasons of data protection, the function can only be used three times within two hours.

## Parking assistant

### Concept



The system supports parking in the following situations:

- ▷ When parking parallel to the road, parallel parking.
- ▷ When reverse parking diagonally to the road, diagonal parking.

## General information

### Handling

Parking assistant handling is divided into three steps:

- ▷ Switching on and activating.
- ▷ Parking space search.
- ▷ Parking.

System status and instructions on required actions are displayed on the Control Display.

Ultrasound sensors measure parking spaces on both sides of the vehicle.

### Steptronic transmission

The parking assistant calculates the best possible parking line and takes control of the following functions during the parking procedure:

- ▷ Steering.
- ▷ Accelerating and braking.
- ▷ Changing the gears.

Press and hold the park assistance button for the duration of the parking procedure. Parking is automatic.

### Safety information



#### WARNING

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀



#### NOTE

The parking assistant can steer the vehicle over or onto curbs. There is a risk of damage to property. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

The safety information of the PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 205, applies in addition.

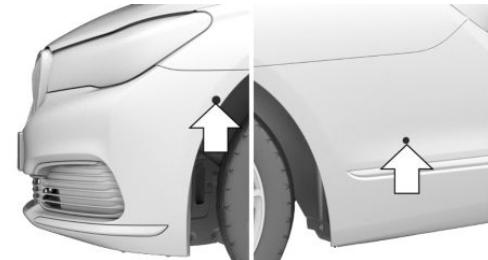
## Overview

### Button in the vehicle



 Park assistance button

### Ultrasound sensors



With the four side ultrasound sensors, arrows, and the ultrasound sensors of PDC Park Distance Control in the bumpers, the parking spaces are measured and the distances to obstacles determined.

### Functional requirements

#### Ultrasound sensors

Ensure full functionality:

- ▷ Do not cover sensors, for instance with stickers.
- ▷ Keep the sensors clean and unobstructed.

#### For measuring parking spaces

- ▷ Maximum speed while driving forward approx. 22 mph/35 km/h.

- ▶ Maximum distance to row of parked vehicles: 5 ft/1.5 m.

## Suitable parking space

General information:

- ▶ Gap behind an object that has a min. length of 1.7 ft/0.5 m.
- ▶ Gap between two objects with a minimum length of approx. 1.7 ft/0.5 m.

Parallel parking to the road:

- ▶ Min. length of gap between two objects: your vehicle's length plus approx. 2.6 ft/0.8 m.
- ▶ Minimum depth: approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.

Diagonal parking:

- ▶ Minimum width of the gap: own vehicle's width plus approx. 2.3 ft/0.7 m.
- ▶ Minimum depth: your vehicle's length.

The depth of diagonal parking spaces must be estimated by the driver. Due to technical limitations, the system is only able to approximate the depth of diagonal parking spaces.

## For parking

- ▶ Doors and tailgate are closed.
- ▶ The parking brake is released.
- ▶ Driver's safety belt is fastened.

## Switching on and activating

### Switching on with the button

 Press park assistance button.  
The LED lights up.

The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.

 Parking assistant is activated automatically.

### Switching on with reverse gear

Shift into reverse.

The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.

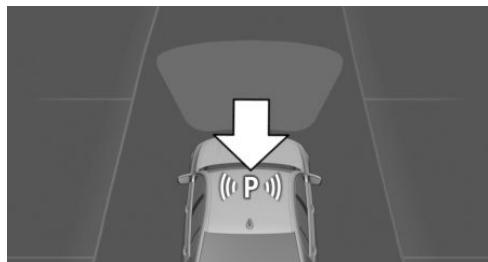
To activate:  "Parking Assistant"

## Display on the Control Display

### System activated/deactivated

Symbol	Meaning
	Gray: the system is not available. White: the system is available but not activated.
	The system is activated.

### Parking space search and system status



- ▶ Symbol P on the vehicle image: the parking assistant is activated and the parking space search is active.
- ▶ Control Display shows suitable parking spaces at the edge of the road next to the vehicle symbol. When the parking assistant is active, suitable parking spaces are highlighted in color and a signal sounds. Switch signal tone on/off, refer to page 222.
- ▶ If a diagonal or parallel parking space is clearly detected, the system automatically adjusts the suitable parking method. In the case of parking spaces suitable for parallel and diagonal parking, a selection menu is displayed. In this case, the desired parking method must be selected manually.

- ▷  The parking procedure is active. Steering control has been taken over by system.
- ▷ Parking space search is always active whenever the vehicle is moving forward slow and straight, even if the system is deactivated. When the system is deactivated, the displays on the Control Display are shown in gray.
- ▷  Steptronic transmission: release the park assistance button during the parking procedure.
- ▷  "Parking Assistant" Select the symbol on the Control Display.

## Interrupting automatically

The system is interrupted automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ If the driver grasps the steering wheel or takes over steering.
- ▷ Possibly on snow-covered or slippery road surfaces.
- ▷ When there are obstacles that are hard to overcome, such as curbs.
- ▷ When there are obstacles that suddenly appear.
- ▷ If the PDC Park Distance Control displays clearances that are too small.
- ▷ If a maximum number of parking attempts or the time taken for parking is exceeded.
- ▷ When switching to another function on the Control Display.
- ▷ When the park assistance button is released.
- ▷ If the tailgate is open.
- ▷ If doors are open.
- ▷ When setting the parking brake.
- ▷ During acceleration.
- ▷ When the brake pedal remains pressed for an extended period while the vehicle is stationary.
- ▷ When unfastening the driver's safety belt.

A Check Control message is displayed.

## Parking using the parking assistant

### Parking

1.  Press the park assistance button or shift into reverse gear to switch on, refer to page 220, the parking assistant. Activate the parking assistant, if needed.  
 Parking assistant is activated.
2. Drive by the row of parked vehicles at a speed of up to approx. 22 mph/35 km/h and at a distance of maximum 5 ft/1.5 m. The status of the parking space search and possible parking spaces are displayed on the Control Display, refer to page 220.
3. Follow the instructions on the Control Display. Press and hold the park assistance button for the duration of the parking procedure. At the end of the parking procedure, the P selector lever position is set. The end of the parking procedure is indicated on the Control Display.
4. Adjust the parking position yourself, if needed.

### Interrupting manually

The parking assistant can be interrupted at any time:

### Resuming

An interrupted parking procedure can be continued, if needed.

Reactivate the parking assistant, refer to page 220, and follow the instructions on the Control Display.

## Switching off

The system can be switched off manually:

 Press park assistance button.

## Switching signal tone for suitable parking spaces on/off

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Parking"
4. "Parking Assistant"
5. "Sound if parking space detected"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

## System limits

### Safety information

 **WARNING**

The system can react not at all, too late, incorrectly, or without justification due to the system limits. There is a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Follow the information regarding the system limits and actively intervene, if needed.◀

### No parking assistance

The parking assistant does not offer assistance in the following situations:

- ▶ In tight curves.
- ▶ For diagonal parking spaces.

### Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- ▶ On bumpy road surfaces such as gravel roads.
- ▶ On slippery ground.
- ▶ On steep uphill or downhill grades.

- ▶ With accumulations of leaves/snow in the parking space.
- ▶ With a mounted emergency wheel.
- ▶ In case of changes to an already-measured parking space.
- ▶ With ditches or edges, e.g., an edge of a port.

### Limits of ultrasonic measurement

Ultrasonic measurements might not function in the following situations:

- ▶ For small children and animals.
- ▶ For persons with certain clothing, for instance coats.
- ▶ With external interference of the ultrasound, for instance from passing vehicles or loud machines.
- ▶ When sensors are dirty, iced over, damaged or out of position.
- ▶ Under certain weather conditions such as high relative humidity, wet conditions, snowfall, extreme heat, or strong wind.
- ▶ With tow bars and trailer couplings of other vehicles.
- ▶ With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- ▶ With moving objects.
- ▶ With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges.
- ▶ With objects with corners, edges, and smooth surfaces.
- ▶ With objects with a fine surface structure such as fences.
- ▶ For objects with porous surfaces.
- ▶ With small and low objects, for instance boxes.
- ▶ With obstacles and persons at the edge of the lane.
- ▶ With soft obstacles or obstacles covered in foam material.
- ▶ With plants and bushes.

- ▷ Low objects already displayed, for instance curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.
- ▷ Cargo that extends beyond the perimeter of the vehicle is not taken into account by the system.

Parking spaces that are not suitable may be detected or suitable parking spaces may not be detected at all.

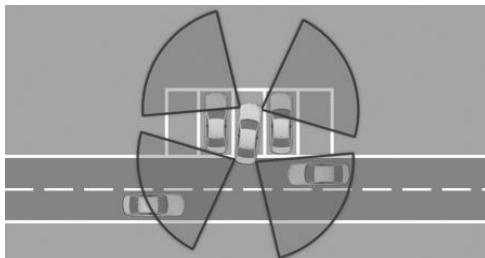
## Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

The parking assistant failed. Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Crossing traffic warning

### Concept



Two radar sensors in the rear bumper monitor the area behind the vehicle.

At blind driveways or when driving out of diagonal parking spaces, approaching cross traffic is detected sooner by the system than is possible from the driver's seat.

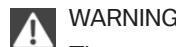
The system indicates approaching traffic.

The respective display is called up on the Control Display. A signal tone may sound and the light in the exterior mirror may flash.

With the respective equipment variant, the traffic area in front of the vehicle is monitored

as well. Two additional radar sensors are located in the front bumpers.

## Safety information

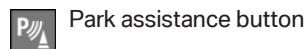


### WARNING

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

## Overview

### Button in the vehicle



### Radar sensors



The radar sensors are located in the rear bumper.



With the respective equipment variant, there are two additional radar sensors in the front bumper.

Always keep the bumper in the area of the radar sensors clean and unobstructed.

## Switching on/off

### Activating/deactivating the system

1.  Press park assistance button.
2. Move the controller to the left.
3.  "Settings"
4. "Cross traffic alert"
5. "Cross traffic alert"

### Switching on automatically

If the system was activated on the Control Display, it is automatically switched on as soon as PDC Park Distance Control or Panorama View is active and a gear is engaged.

If reverse gear is engaged, the rear system is switched on.

If the vehicle is equipped accordingly, the front system is switched on when a forward gear is engaged.

### Switching off automatically

The system is automatically switched off in the following situations:

- ▷ When the speed exceeds walking speed.

- ▷ With the steering and lane control assistant active: when a certain driving distance is exceeded.
- ▷ With an active parking operation of the parking assistant.

## WARNING

### Light in the exterior mirror



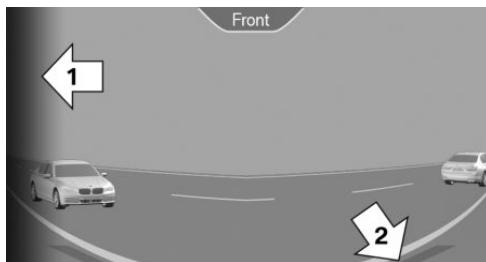
The light in the exterior mirror flashes if vehicles are detected by the rear sensors and your own vehicle is moving backwards.

### Display in the PDC Park Distance Control view



In the PDC Park Distance Control view, the respective boundary area flashes red, if vehicles are detected by the sensors.

## Display in the camera view



The respective boundary area, arrow 1, in the camera view flashes red, if vehicles are detected by the sensors.

Yellow lines, arrow 2, mark the bumper of your own vehicle.

## Acoustic warning

In addition to the optical indicator, a warning signal sounds if your own vehicle moves into the respective direction.

## System limits

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- ▷ If the speed of the approaching vehicle is very high.
- ▷ In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- ▷ In tight curves.
- ▷ If the bumper is dirty, iced up, or covered, for instance by stickers.
- ▷ If cargo protrudes.
- ▷ If crossing objects move at a very slow speed.
- ▷ If other objects are in the capture range of the sensors, that hide cross traffic.

# Driving comfort

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

## Air suspension

### Concept

Air suspension ensures best possible driving comfort under all load conditions. Due to a variable adjustment of the front and rear axles, the damping is adjusted to the vehicle state.

### General information

In the case of an uneven road surface, the vehicle level can be elevated to increase ground clearance.

- ▷ Normal level, for normal road surface.
- ▷ Raised level, when the road surface is poor.

In the SPORT driving mode, refer to page 126, or at higher speeds, the vehicle lowers itself.

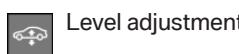
### Safety information

#### **WARNING**

When lowering the vehicle, body parts can be jammed. There is a risk of injury. When lowering the vehicle, make sure that the areas of movement under the vehicle and under the wheel housing are free.◀

### Overview

#### Button in the vehicle



Level adjustment

#### Adjusting the level manually



Press button.

In the low speed range, the vehicle is raised to the raised level with a press of the button.

Starting at a speed of approx. 20 mph/35 km/h the vehicle lowers itself automatically to the normal level.

#### Display

- ▷ LED off: normal level.
- ▷ LED flashes: level is being adjusted.
- ▷ LED lit: raised level.
- ▷ LED flashes rapidly: level adjustment not possible.

#### System limits

With several manual level changes one after another, the system will switch itself off, if necessary. The rapidly flashing LED on the button indicates that the system is temporarily unavailable.

#### Tire change

Before a tire change, deactivate the system:

 Press button and hold for approx. 7 seconds, then release. The LED flashes rapidly.

To activate system:

The system is activated again automatically when you drive away.

Driving mode	Damper tuning
COMFORT	Balanced out
ECO PRO	
COMFORT PLUS	Comfortable
SPORT	Firm

## Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed. The system is impaired. Vehicle handling may be altered and driving comfort may be noticeably reduced. Visit the nearest dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Long periods when vehicle is parked

During long periods when the vehicle is parked, it can lower itself. This is not a malfunction.

If drive-ready state is switched on with the doors closed, the vehicle is raised to the normal level automatically.

## Dynamic Damping Control

### Concept

This system reduces undesirable vehicle motion when using a dynamic driving style or traveling on uneven road surfaces.

This enhances the driving dynamics and driving comfort depending on the road surface condition and driving style.

### General information

The system offers several different damping settings.

The damping settings are assigned to the different driving modes of the Driving Dynamics Control, refer to page [126](#).

# Climate control

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

## Interior air quality

The air quality inside the vehicle is improved by an emissions-tested interior, a microfilter, and a climate-control system for regulating temperature, air flow, and recirculated-air mode.

In addition there are other functions which depend on the vehicle's equipment, for instance microfilter/activated-charcoal filter, ionization, fragrancing, automatic climate control with automatic recirculated-air control AUC, and parked-car ventilation.

## Automatic climate control

### Overview

#### Buttons in the vehicle



### Climate control functions

Button	Function
	Temperature, refer to page 229.
	Climate control operation, refer to page 229.
	Maximum cooling, refer to page 229.
	AUTO program, refer to page 230.
	Recirculated-air mode, refer to page 230.
	Air flow, manual, refer to page 231.
	Air distribution, manual, refer to page 231.
	SYNC program, refer to page 231.
	Defrost and defog window, refer to page 231.
	Rear window defroster, refer to page 232.
	Active seat ventilation, refer to page 103.
	Seat heating, refer to page 102.
	Ambient air package, refer to page 235.

## Climate control functions in detail

### Switching on/off

#### Switching on

Press any button except for the following:

- ▷ Rear window defroster.
- ▷ Left side of air flow button.
- ▷ SYNC program.
- ▷ Seat heating.
- ▷ Seat ventilation.

#### Switching off

- ▷ Complete system:



Press and hold the left button on the driver's side until the control panel switches off.

- ▷ On the front passenger side:



Press and hold the left button on the front passenger side.

### Temperature

#### Concept

The automatic climate control achieves the set temperature as quickly as possible, if needed, by using the maximum cooling or heating capacity, and then keeps it constant.

#### Settings



Turn the ring to set the desired temperature.

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings.

Otherwise, the automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

## Air conditioning

### Concept

The air in the car's interior will be cooled and dehumidified and, depending on the temperature setting, warmed again.

Cooling of the car's interior is possible with the A/C button with drive-ready state switched on.

#### Switching on/off

**A/C** Press button.

The LED is illuminated with air conditioning switched on.

Air conditioning is switched on with the engine running.

Depending on the weather, the windshield and side windows may fog up briefly when drive-ready state is switched on.

The air conditioning is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops and collects underneath the vehicle.

### Maximum cooling

#### Concept

The system is set to the lowest temperature, optimum air flow and recirculated-air mode with the drive-ready state switched on.

#### General information

The function is available with external temperatures above approx. 32 °F/0 °C and with the drive-ready state switched on.

#### Switching on/off

**MAX A/C** Press button.

The LED is illuminated with the system switched on.

Air flows out of the vents to the upper body region. The vents need to be open for this.

Adjust air flow on the driver's side with the program active.

## AUTO program

### Concept

Air flow, air distribution and temperature are controlled automatically.

### Switching on/off

 Press button.

The LED is illuminated with the AUTO program switched on.

Depending on the selected temperature, the intensity of the AUTO program, and outside influences, the air is directed to the windshield, side windows, upper body, and into the floor area.

The air conditioning, refer to page 229, is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

At the same time, a condensation sensor controls the program so as to prevent window condensation as much as possible.

The AUTO program is switched off automatically, when manual air distribution is set.

### Intensity

With the AUTO program switched on, the intensity can be set. This changes the automatic control for the air flow and air distribution.

 Press the left or right side of the button: decrease or increase intensity.

The selected intensity is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

## Automatic recirculated-air control AUC

### Concept

The automatic recirculated-air control AUC recognizes odors or pollutants in the outside

air. The outside air supply is shut off and the interior air is recirculated.

### General information

If the system is activated, a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and controls the shut-off automatically.

If the system is deactivated, outside air continuously flows into the vehicle's interior.

With constant recirculated-air mode, the air quality in the vehicle's interior deteriorates and the fogging of the windows increases.

### Switching on/off

 Press button.

The LED lights up if the system is switched on using the button.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Climate functions"
4. If necessary, "Air quality"
5. "Automatic air recirculation"

If there is window condensation, switch off recirculated-air mode or defog the windows, refer to page 231.

## Recirculated-air mode

### Concept

You may react to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air currently within the vehicle.

### Operation

 Press button repeatedly to select an operating mode:

► LED off: outside air flows in continuously.

- ▷ LED on: the supply of outside air is permanently shut off.

With constant recirculated-air mode, the air quality in the car's interior deteriorates and the fogging of the windows increases.

If there is window condensation, switch off recirculated-air mode or defog the windows, refer to page 231.

## Controlling the air flow manually

### Concept

The air flow for climate control can be adjusted manually.

### General information

To manually adjust air flow turn off AUTO program first.

### Operation

 Press the left or right side of the button: decrease or increase air flow.

The selected air flow is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

The air flow of the automatic climate control may be reduced automatically to save battery power.

## Controlling the air distribution manually

### Concept

The air distribution for climate control can be adjusted manually.

### Operation

 Press button repeatedly to select a program:

- ▷ Windows, upper body region, and floor area.
- ▷ Upper body region and floor area.

- ▷ Floor area.
- ▷ Windows and floor area.
- ▷ Windows: driver's side only.
- ▷ Windows and upper body.
- ▷ Upper body region.

The selected air distribution is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

If there is window condensation, defog the windows, refer to page 231.

## SYNC program

### Concept

Depending on the equipment, the following settings of the driver's side can be transferred to the front-passenger side and the rear:

- ▷ Temperature.
- ▷ Air flow.
- ▷ Air distribution.
- ▷ AUTO program.

## Switching on/off

 Press button.

The LED is illuminated with the SYNC program switched on.

The program is switched off automatically if the settings on the front passenger side or in the rear are changed.

## Defrosting windows and removing condensation

### Concept

Ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

## Switching on/off

 Press button.

The LED is illuminated with the system switched on.

Point the side vents towards the side windows, as needed. The air flow can be adjusted manually with the system switched on.

**AUTO** If there is window condensation, press the button on the driver's side or switch on air conditioning to utilize the condensation sensor. Make sure that air can flow to the windshield.

## Rear window defroster

 Press button. The LED lights up.

The function is available with the engine running.

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

## Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter

The microfilter removes dust and pollen from the incoming air.

The activated-charcoal filter removes gaseous pollutants from the outside air that enters the vehicle.

Have this combined filter changed during vehicle maintenance, refer to page 322.

## Ventilation

### Concept

The air flow directions can be individually adjusted.

### Adjusting the ventilation

#### General information

The air flow directions can be adjusted for direct or indirect ventilation.

### Direct ventilation

The air flow is directed towards the passengers. The air flow heats or cools noticeably, depending on the adjusted temperature.

### Indirect ventilation

The air flow is not directed towards the passengers. The car's interior is warmed or cooled indirectly, depending on the set temperature.

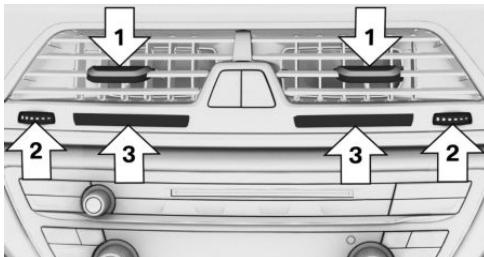
Indirect ventilation can also be adjusted on the Control Display.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Climate functions"
4. "Indirect ventilation"

### Front ventilation

#### Overview



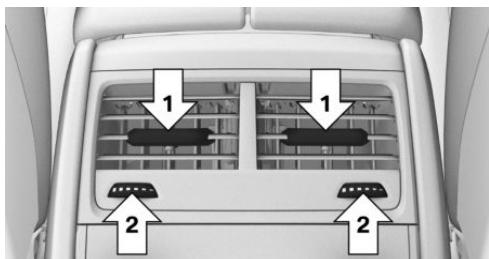
- ▷ Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 1.
- ▷ Thumbwheel for variable opening and closing of the vents, arrow 2.
- ▷ Touch sensor or thumbwheel to vary the ventilation temperature, arrow 3.

With touch sensor, push the marking in the desired direction:

- ▷ Toward blue: colder.
- ▷ Toward red: warmer.

This does not change the set interior temperature for the driver and front passenger.

## Ventilation in rear, center



- ▷ Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 1.
- ▷ Thumbwheel for variable opening and closing of the vents, arrow 2.

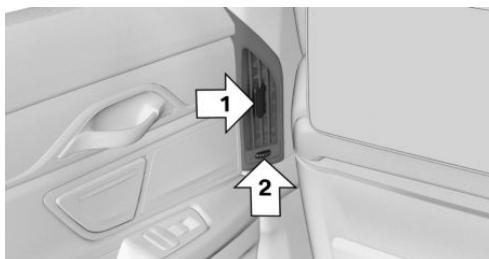
## Rear automatic climate control

### Overview

### Buttons in the vehicle



## Ventilation in the rear, on the side



- ▷ Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 1.
- ▷ Thumbwheel for variable opening and closing of the vents, arrow 2.

### Climate control functions

Button	Function
	Temperature, refer to page 234
	Maximum cooling, refer to page 234.
	AUTO program, refer to page 234.
	Air flow, manual, refer to page 235.
	Air distribution, manual, refer to page 235.
	Active seat ventilation, refer to page 103.
	Seat heating, refer to page 102.
	Seat and armrest heating, refer to page 102.

## Climate control functions in detail

### Switching on/off

#### Via iDrive

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Climate functions"
4. "Rear climate"

The rear automatic climate control is not ready for operation if the automatic climate control is switched off or if the function for defrosting the windows and removing condensation is active.

#### Using the button: switching on

Press any button except for the following:

- ▷ Left side of air flow button.
- ▷ Seat heating.
- ▷ Seat ventilation.

#### Using the button: switching off

 Press and hold the left side of the button.

### Temperature

#### Concept

The automatic climate control achieves the set temperature as quickly as possible, if needed, by using the maximum cooling or heating capacity, and then keeps it constant.

#### Settings



Turn the ring to set the desired temperature.

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings.

Otherwise, the automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

### Maximum cooling

#### Concept

The system is set to the lowest temperature, optimum air flow and recirculated-air mode with the drive-ready state switched on.

#### General information

The function is available with external temperatures above approx. 32 °F/0 °C and with the drive-ready state switched on.

#### Switching on/off

 Press button.

The LED is illuminated with the system switched on.

Air flows out of the vents to the upper body region. The vents need to be open for this.

### AUTO program

#### Concept

Air flow, air distribution and temperature are controlled automatically.

#### Switching on/off

 Press button.

The LED is illuminated with the AUTO program switched on.

Depending on the selected temperature, the AUTO intensity, and outside influences, the air is directed to the upper body and into the floor area.

The air conditioning is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

#### Intensity

With the AUTO program activated, the automatic intensity control can be changed:



Press the left or right side of the button: decrease or increase intensity.

The selected intensity is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

## Controlling the air flow manually

### Concept

The air flow for climate control can be adjusted manually.

### General information

To manually adjust air flow turn off AUTO program first.

### Operation



Press the left or right side of the button: decrease or increase air flow.

The selected air flow is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

## Controlling the air distribution manually

### Concept

The air distribution for climate control can be adjusted manually.

### Operation



Press button repeatedly to select a program:

- ▷ Upper body region.
- ▷ Upper body region and floor area.
- ▷ Floor area.

## BMW Touch Command

Operation of the rear automatic climate control is also possible via BMW Touch Command.

## Ambient air package

### Concept

The Ambient Air Package can be used to clean and scent the interior air with high-quality fragrances.

Ionization is used to clean the air from suspended particles. Together with the selected fragrance, ionization contributes to well-being and relaxation while driving.

### General information

Two different fragrances can be selected in the vehicle. A variety of other fragrances is possible by replacing the fragrance cartridges.

The following criteria can influence the perception of scents in the car's interior:

- ▷ Automatic climate control settings.
- ▷ Temperature and air humidity.
- ▷ Time of day and season.
- ▷ Physical condition of the vehicle occupants, for instance fatigue.

BMW recommends the use of genuine BMW fragrance cartridges.

The genuine BMW fragrance cartridges are not suitable for refilling. When a cartridge is empty, replace it with a new fragrance cartridge.

### Safety information



#### WARNING

Refilled genuine BMW fragrance cartridges can cause the emission of harmful substances, malfunctions, and damage to the system. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Do not refill genuine fragrance cartridges. When a cartridge is empty, replace it with a new fragrance cartridge.◀

## Ionization

### Concept

Ionization cleans the car's interior air of suspended particles.

### Switching on/off

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Climate functions"
4. If necessary, "Air quality"
5. "Ionization"

The climate control display indicates that ionization is switched on.

### Fragrancing

#### General information

Fragrancing is done at intervals in order to avoid a habituation effect.

Two fragrance cartridges in the vehicle allow switching between the fragrances.

The fragrance cartridges are located in the glove compartment.

### Overview

#### Button in the center console



Fragrancing

### Functional requirements

- Fragrance cartridges are sufficiently filled.
- Interior temperature between 41 °F/+5 °C and 104 °F/+40 °C.
- Open the vents to allow the fragrance to flow out.

### Selecting the fragrance

Two different fragrances can be selected in the vehicle.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Climate functions"
4. "Air quality"
5. "Fragrance"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

### Switching fragrancing on/off, adjusting intensity

#### Using the button



Press button once for each intensity level.

Highest intensity if three bars are shown on the climate control display.

Fragrancing is switched off if no bars are displayed.

#### Using iDrive

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Climate functions"
4. "Air quality"
5. "Fragrance"
6. "Level"
7. Select the desired setting.

## Display

### General information

With operation via button, the menu of the Ambient Air Package can be displayed on the Control Display automatically.

### Settings

Further settings can be adjusted.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Climate functions"
4. "Air quality"
5. "Fragrance"
6. "Show fragrance setting"

The menu is shown on the Control Display.

### Fragrance cartridge filling level

The illustrations on the Control Display show the actual filling level of the fragrance cartridges.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Climate functions"
4. "Air quality"
5. "Fragrance"

The fill level of the current fragrance is displayed.

6. Select the desired setting.

When an empty fragrance cartridge is indicated, the cartridge still contains a fluid carrying the fragrance. However, it is not sufficient for fragrancing.

When a fragrance cartridge requires replacement, a Check Control message is displayed

## Inserting fragrance cartridges

The fragrance cartridges are located in the glove compartment.

1. Open the glove compartment, refer to page 251.
2. Press on the bottom of the cartridge holder.

The cartridge holder slides down.



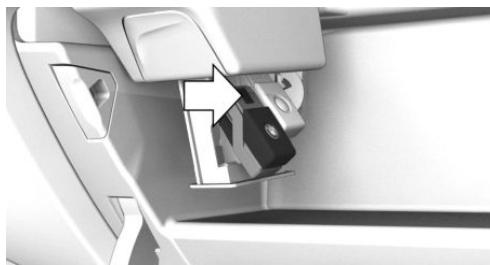
3. Remove the cover of the fragrance cartridge. Hold the cover on the top to slide it from the fragrance cartridge.



4. Insert the removed cover on the back side of the fragrance cartridge.



- Position fragrance cartridge such that the chip faces away from the cartridge holder.



The cartridge holder slides down.



- Insert the fragrance cartridge without pressure into the cartridge holder. The cartridge snaps lightly into place.



- Push the cartridge holder up, until it engages.

Make sure that no objects press against the cartridge holder from below, otherwise the function of the ambient air package could be impacted.

- Close the glove compartment.

### Removing the fragrance cartridge

The fragrance cartridges are located in the glove compartment.

- Open the glove compartment, refer to page 251.
- Press on the bottom of the cartridge holder.

- Pull desired fragrance cartridge from the holder.

Fragrance cartridge, arrow 1: first fragrance indicated on the Control Display.

Fragrance cartridge, arrow 2: second fragrance indicated on the Control Display.



- Pull desired fragrance cartridge from the holder.



### Recycling



Empty fragrance cartridges can be taken to a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop for recycling.

## BMW Touch Command

The Ambient Air Package can also be operated using BMW Touch Command.

## Stationary climate control

### Concept

Stationary climate control cools or heats the car's interior prior to departure to a comfortable temperature.

The system automatically cools, vents, and heats depending on the interior, external, and set temperature. Snow and ice may be removed more easily.

### General information

The stationary climate control can be switched on and off directly or via a pre-set departure time.

- ▷ Switching on/off directly, refer to page 239.
- ▷ Climate control at departure time, refer to page 240.

Stationary climate control can be switched on with a BMW Remote App, refer to page 241.

The air automatically exits through the vents to the windshield, the side windows, the upper body region and into the floor area.

The system switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

If stationary climate control is used during the charging process, less air conditioning capacity will be required while driving. This optimizes the range.

### Functional requirements

- ▷ The vehicle is in idle state or standby state and not in drive-ready state.
- ▷ The high-voltage battery is sufficiently charged or the charging cable is connected.

If the high-voltage battery is heavily discharged, it can take some time after connecting the charging cable, until the stationary climate control will be functional.

- ▷ Direct operation or departure time pre-selected: depends on internal, external, and set desired temperature.
- ▷ Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.
- ▷ To ensure the starting capability of the vehicle, the stationary climate control may be automatically switched off, for instance after repeated switching on: switch the drive-ready state on and off and the system is available again.

Open the vents to allow air to flow out.

### Switching on/off directly

#### Concept

There are different ways to switch the system on or off.

 symbol on the automatic climate control indicates the system is switched on.

The system switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

### Using the button

When the vehicle is in standby state, the system can be switched on or off via the automatic climate control buttons.

The system switches off when the vehicle is exited.

Press any button except:

- ▷ Rear window defroster.
- ▷ Left side of air flow button.
- ▷ Seat heating.
- ▷ Seat ventilation.

## Via iDrive

The system can be switched on or off via iDrive.

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. If necessary, "Climate functions"
4. "Activate comfort climate"
5. "Activate now"

## Via BMW display key

The system can be switched on or off via the BMW display key.

### Switching on

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Departure setting"
3. Select  .
4. "Activate now"
5. "Start"

### Switching off

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Departure setting"
3. Select  .
4. "Stop"

## Climate control at departure time

### Concept

Different departure times can be adjusted to ensure a comfortable interior temperature in the vehicle at the time of departure.

The activation time is automatically determined based on the temperature.

Departure time with weekday: time and day of the week can be set.

On the desired weekdays, the system will be switched on promptly before the set departure time.

The departure time is preselected in two steps:

- ▷ Set departure times.
- ▷ Activate departure times.

## Setting the departure time

### Via iDrive

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. If necessary, "Climate functions"
4. "Activate comfort climate"
5. "Plan comfort climate"
6. Select the desired departure time.
7. Set the departure time.
8. Select day of the week, if needed.

### Via BMW display key

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Departure setting"
3. Select  .
4. Select the desired departure time.
5. Set the departure time.
6. Select day of the week, if needed.
7. "OK"

## Activating the departure time

If a departure time is to influence the switching on or off of the stationary climate control, the respective departure time must be activated first.

### Via iDrive

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. If necessary, "Climate functions"
4. "Activate comfort climate"
5. "Plan comfort climate"
6. "Precondition for departure"

Activate the desired departure time.

- ⌚ The symbol on the automatic climate control signals an activated departure time.
- ⚡ symbol on the automatic climate control indicates the system is switched on.

### Via BMW display key

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Departure setting"
3. Select ⚡ .
4.  Tap on symbol.

Activate the desired departure time.

- ⌚ The symbol on the automatic climate control signals an activated departure time.
- ⚡ symbol on the automatic climate control indicates the system is switched on.

### Activating with BMW Remote app

Using an appropriate BMW App with remote function, the system can be switched on directly or via a preset departure time.

# Interior equipment

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

## Integrated Universal Remote Control

### Concept

The integrated Universal Remote Control in the interior mirror can operate up to 3 functions of remote-controlled systems, such as garage door drives, barriers, or lighting systems.

### General information

The integrated Universal Remote Control replaces up to 3 different hand-held transmitters. To operate the remote control, the buttons on the interior mirror must be programmed with the desired functions. The hand-held transmitter for the particular system is required in order to program the remote control.

Before selling the vehicle, delete the stored functions for the sake of security.

### Safety information

#### **WARNING**

Body parts can be jammed when operating remote-controlled systems, for instance the garage door, using the integrated Universal Remote Control. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area

of movement of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety instructions of the hand-held transmitter.◀

### Compatibility



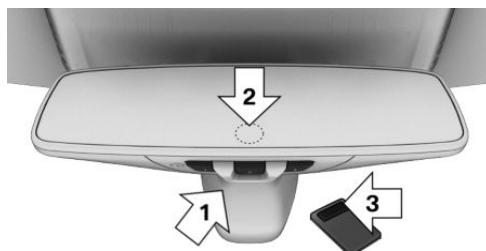
If this symbol is printed on the packaging or in the owner's manual of the system to be controlled, the system is generally compatible with the integrated Universal Remote Control.

If you have any questions, please contact:

- ▷ A dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
- ▷ [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com) on the Internet.

HomeLink is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

### Control elements on the interior mirror



- ▷ Buttons, arrow 1.
- ▷ LED, arrow 2.
- ▷ The hand-held transmitter, arrow 3, is required for programming.

### Programming

#### General information

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Initial setup:

Press and hold the two outer buttons on the interior mirror simultaneously for approximately 10 seconds until the LED flashes green rapidly. This erases all programming of the buttons on the interior mirror.

3. Press the interior mirror button to be programmed. The LED flashes orange.
4. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be controlled approx. 1 to 3 in/2.5 to 8 cm away from the buttons of the interior mirror. The required distance depends on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter. The LED on the interior mirror will begin flashing orange slowly.
6. As soon as the LED flashes green more rapidly or lights up continuously, release the button. Green light indicates that the button on the interior mirror has been programmed. Faster green flashing indicates that it is a rolling code wireless system.  
If the LED does not flash faster after at least 60 seconds, change the distance between the interior mirror and the hand-held transmitter and repeat the step. Several more attempts at different distances may be necessary. Wait at least 15 seconds between attempts.

Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.

7. To program other functions on other buttons, repeat steps 3 to 5.

The systems can be controlled using the interior mirror buttons.

### Special feature of the rolling code wireless system

If you are unable to operate the system after repeated programming, please check if the

system to be controlled features a rolling code radio system.

Read the system's owner's manual, or press the programmed button on the interior mirror longer. If the LED on the interior mirror starts flashing rapidly and then stays lit constantly for 2 seconds, the system features a rolling code radio system. Flashing and continuous illumination of the LED will repeat for approximately 20 seconds.

For systems with a rolling code radio system, the integrated Universal Remote Control and the system also have to be synchronized.

Please read the owner's manual to find out how to synchronize the system.

Synchronizing is easier with the aid of a second person.

Synchronizing the universal remote control with the system:

1. Park the vehicle within range of the remote-controlled system.
2. Program the relevant button on the interior mirror as described.
3. Locate and press the synchronizing button on the system being programmed. You have approx. 30 seconds for the next step.
4. Hold down the programmed button on the interior mirror for approximately 3 seconds and then release it. If necessary, repeat this step up to three times in order to finish synchronization. Once synchronization is complete, the programmed function will be carried out.

### Reprogramming individual buttons

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Press and hold the interior mirror button to be programmed.
3. As soon as the interior mirror LED starts flashing slowly, hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be controlled approx. 1 to 3 in/2.5 to 8 cm away from the buttons of the interior mirror. The required

distance depends on the hand-held transmitter.

4. Likewise, press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Release both buttons as soon as the interior mirror LED flashes more rapidly or lights up continuously. The LED flashing more rapidly or being continuously lit up indicates that the button on the interior mirror has been programmed. The system can then be controlled by the button on the interior mirror.

If the LED does not flash faster after at most 60 seconds, change the distance and repeat the programming starting with step 4. Several more attempts at different distances may be necessary. Wait at least 15 seconds between attempts.

Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.

## Operation



### WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating remote-controlled systems, for instance the garage door, using the integrated Universal Remote Control. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety instructions of the hand-held transmitter.◀

The system, such as the garage door, can be operated using the button on the interior mirror while the drive-ready or standby state is switched on. To do this, hold down the button within receiving range of the system until the function is activated. The interior mirror LED stays lit while the wireless signal is being transmitted.

## Deleting stored functions

Press and hold the two outer buttons on the interior mirror simultaneously for approximately 10 seconds until the LED on the interior mirror flashes green rapidly. All stored functions will be deleted. The functions cannot be deleted individually.

## Sun visor

### Glare shield

Fold the sun visor down or up.

### Glare shield from the side

#### Folding out

1. Fold the sun visor down.
2. Unhook it from the holder and swing it to the side.
3. Move it back to the desired position.

#### Folding up

Proceed in the reverse order to close the sun visor.

## Vanity mirror

A vanity mirror is located in the sun visor behind a cover. When the cover is opened, the mirror lighting switches on.

## Ashtray

### Front center console

#### Opening

1. Push the cover forward until it engages behind the cup holders.



2. Push the cover forward again until it engages behind the storage compartment.
3. Fold the cover upward.



#### Emptying



Grasp the insert on the side and pull it out.

## Rear door

### Opening



Press on the cover.

#### Emptying



Grasp the insert on the side and remove it.

## Cigarette lighter

### Safety information



#### WARNING

Contact with hot heating elements or the hot socket of the cigarette lighter can cause burns. Flammable materials can ignite if the cigarette lighter falls down or is held against the respective objects. There is a risk of fire and injuries. Hold the cigarette lighter by its handle. Make sure that children do not use the cigarette lighter and burn themselves.◀

**NOTE**

If metal objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of property damage. Replace the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket.◀

**Front center console**

1. Push the cover forward until it engages behind the cup holders.



2. Push the cover forward again until it engages behind the storage compartment.



The cigarette lighter is located between the cup holders.

**Rear center console****Without rear console: opening and closing**

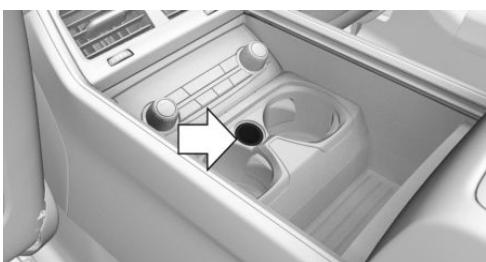
The cigarette lighter is on the right side.

Open: press on the cover.

To close: press the cover closed again.

**With rear console: opening and closing**

Push the cover backward until it engages.



The cigarette lighter is located between the cup holders.

Tap the cover on the handle bar to close it.

## Operation



Push in the lighter.  
The lighter can be removed as soon as it pops back out.

## Sockets

### Concept

The lighter socket can be used as a socket for electrical equipment when standby and drive-ready state are switched on.

### General information

The total load of all sockets must not exceed 140 watts at 12 volts.

Do not damage the socket by using non-compatible connectors.

### Safety information



#### NOTE

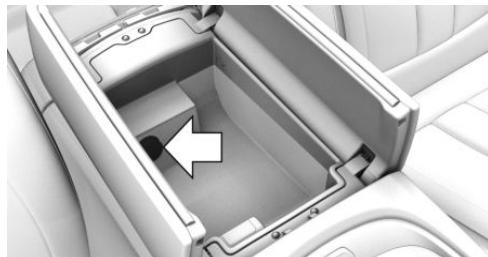
Battery chargers for the vehicle battery can work with high voltages and currents, which means that the 12 volt on-board network can be overloaded or damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.◀



#### NOTE

If metal objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of property damage. Replace the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket.◀

## Front center armrest



The center armrest contains a socket.

## Front center console



Push the cover forward until it engages.

A socket is located between the cup holders.

## Rear center console

### Without rear console: opening and closing



The rear center console contains two sockets.

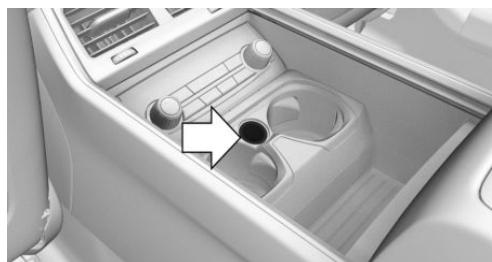
Open: press on the cover.

To close: press the cover closed again.

## With rear console: opening and closing



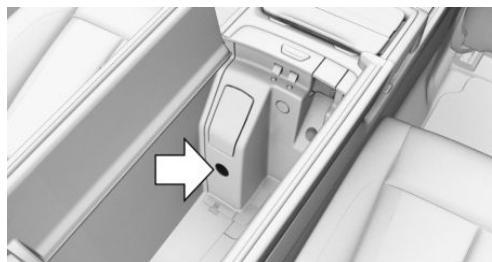
Push the cover backward until it engages.



A socket is located between the cup holders.

Tap the cover on the handle bar to close it.

## With rear console: rear center armrest



The center armrest contains a socket.

## In the cargo area



A socket is located on the right side in the cargo area. Unfold the cover.

## USB interface

### General information

Follow the information regarding the connection of mobile devices to the USB interface in the section on USB connections, refer to page 47.

### In the center armrest



A USB interface is located in the center armrest.

### In the center console



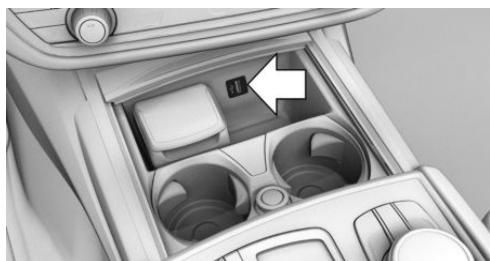
#### NOTE

Objects in the storage compartment, e.g., large USB connectors, may block or damage the cover when it is being opened or closed. There is a risk of damage to property.

Make sure that the area of movement of the cover is clear while opening and closing it.◀



1. Push the cover forward until it engages behind the cup holders.
2. Push the cover forward again until it engages behind the storage compartment.

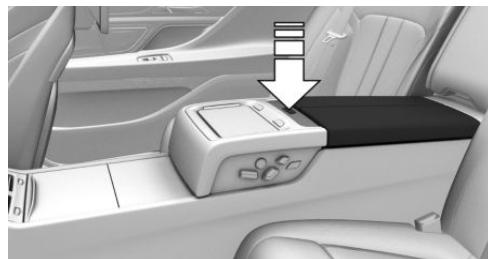


A USB interface is located in the center console.

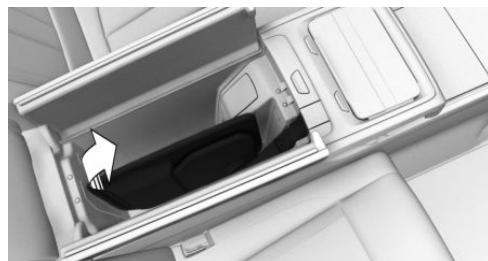
There is a risk of injury. Do not unfold or use folding table while driving.◀

### Folding open the folding table

1. Open the center armrest. Press the button for this purpose.



2. Grasp the folding table at the rear and fold forward in the center armrest.



3. Pull the folding table from the center armrest.
4. Close the cover of the center armrest.
5. Fold the folding table down and adjust as needed.



## Folding table in the rear

### General information

There is a folding table in the center armrest of the rear console.

### Safety information



#### WARNING

A folded-out folding table protrudes into the vehicle's interior and, in case of accident, braking or evasive maneuvers can cause injuries. Objects on the table can be thrown around the vehicle's interior while driving.

## Folding in the folding table

Proceed in reverse order to fold in the folding table.

# Storage compartments

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

- ▷ Storage compartment in the center console, refer to page [252](#).
- ▷ Center armrest, refer to page [253](#).
- ▷ Storage compartment between the rear seats, refer to page [253](#).
- ▷ Storage compartment in the rear center console, refer to page [252](#).
- ▷ Pockets on the backrests of the front seats.

## Safety information



### WARNING

Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, e.g., mobile phones, can be thrown into the vehicle's interior while driving, e.g., in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the vehicle's interior.◀



### NOTE

Anti-slip pads such as anti-slip mats can damage the dashboard. There is a risk of property damage. Do not use anti-slip pads.◀

## Storage compartments

The following storage compartments are available in the car's interior:

- ▷ Glove compartment on the front passenger side, refer to page [251](#).
- ▷ Glove compartment on the driver's side, refer to page [252](#).
- ▷ Compartments in the doors, refer to page [252](#).

## Glove compartment

### Front passenger side

#### Safety information



### WARNING

Folded open, the glove compartment protrudes in the vehicle's interior. Objects in the glove compartment can be thrown into the vehicle's interior while driving, e.g., in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Always close the glove compartment immediately after using it.◀

### Opening



Pull the handle.

The light in the glove compartment switches on.

## Closing

Fold cover closed.

## Locking

The glove compartment can be locked with an integrated key. This prevents access to the glove compartment.

After the glove compartment is locked, the remote control can be handed over without the integrated key, e.g., when the vehicle is parked by valet parking.

## Driver's side

### Safety information

#### **WARNING**

Folded open, the glove compartment protrudes in the vehicle's interior. Objects in the glove compartment can be thrown into the vehicle's interior while driving, e.g., in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Always close the glove compartment immediately after using it.◀

## Opening



Pull the handle.

## Closing

Fold cover closed.

## Compartments in the doors

#### **WARNING**

Breakable objects, for instance glass bottles or glasses, can break in the event of an accident. Broken glass can be scattered in the car's interior. There is a risk of injury. Do not use any breakable objects while driving. Only stow breakable objects in lockable storage compartments.◀

## Storage compartment in the center console

### Opening



1. Push the cover forward until it engages behind the cup holders.
2. Push the cover forward again until it engages behind the storage compartment.

### Closing

1. Touch the cover on the handle bar. The cover closes up to the cup holders.
2. Tap the cover again. The cover closes fully.

## Storage compartment in the rear center console

The rear center console contains a storage compartment.

## Storage compartment between the rear seats

### General information

A storage compartment is located behind the cover between the backrests.

### Opening



Push the cover up until it engages.

### Closing

Push the cover up again.

The cover slides down.

## Center armrest

### Front

#### General information

A storage compartment is located in the center armrest between the seats.

### Opening



Press button.

### Closing

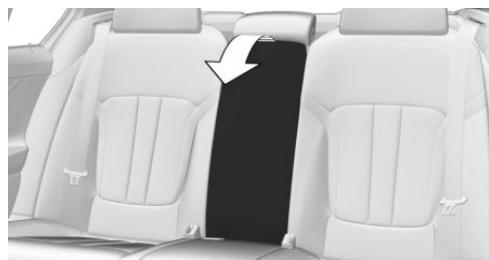
Press cover down until it engages.

### Rear

#### General information

A storage compartment is located in the center armrest between the seats.

### Folding down



Reach into the recess and fold the center armrest forward.

### Opening

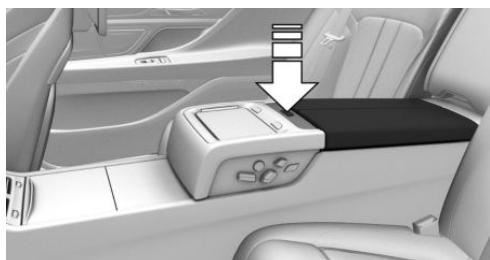
Depending on the equipment, proceed as follows:



Press button, arrow 1, and fold the cover up, arrow 2.



Press button, arrow 1, and fold the cover up, arrow 2.



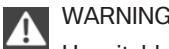
Press button.

### Closing

Press cover down until it engages.

## Cup holders

### Safety information



#### WARNING

Unsuitable containers in the cup holder and hot beverages can damage the cup holder and increase the risk of injury in the event of an accident. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Use light-weight, unbreakable, and sealable containers. Do not transport hot beverages. Do not force objects into the cup holder.◀

### Front

#### Opening



Push the cover forward until it engages.



Two cup holders are located in the center console.

### Closing

Touch the cover on the handle bar. The cover closes.

## Rear

### Safety information

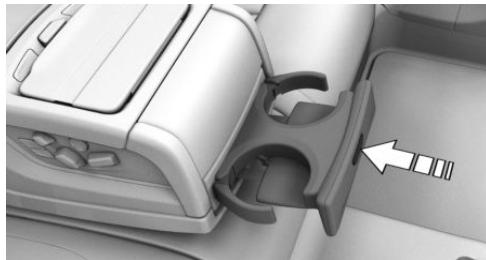


#### NOTE

With an open cup holder, the center armrest cannot be folded back up. There is a risk of property damage. Press back the covers before the center armrest is folded up.◀

### Without rear console: opening and closing

#### Opening



Fold the center armrest forward.

Press button.

#### Closing

Push back the cup holder.

### With rear console: opening and closing

#### Opening



Push the cover backward until it engages.

## Closing

Touch the cover on the handle bar. The cover closes.

## Clothes hooks

### Safety information



#### WARNING

Clothing articles on the clothes hooks can obstruct the view while driving. There is a risk of an accident. When suspending clothing articles from the hooks, ensure that they will not obstruct the driver's view.◀



#### WARNING

Improper use of the clothes hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only hang lightweight objects, e.g., clothing articles, from the clothes hooks.◀

## General information

The clothes hooks are located in the grab handles in the rear and on the door pillar in the rear.

# Cargo area

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

## Loading

### Safety information

#### WARNING

High gross weight can overheat the tires, damage them internally and cause a sudden drop in tire inflation pressure. Driving characteristics may be negatively impacted, reducing lane stability, lengthening the braking distances and changing the steering response. There is a risk of an accident. Pay attention to the permitted load capacity of the tires and never exceed the permitted gross weight.◀

#### WARNING

Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, e.g., mobile phones, can be thrown into the vehicle's interior while driving, e.g., in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the vehicle's interior.◀

#### WARNING

Improperly stowed objects can shift and be thrown into the vehicle's interior, e.g., in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. Vehicle occupants can be hit

and injured. There is a risk of injury. Stow and secure objects and cargo properly.◀

#### NOTE

Fluids in the cargo area can cause damage. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that no fluids leak in the cargo area.◀

### Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs.  $(1,400 - 750) (5 \times 150) = 650 \text{ lbs.}$
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

## Load

$$\text{Person} + \text{4 suitcases} \leq \text{Max. Load}$$

$$\text{Person, woman, man} + \text{3 suitcases} \leq \text{Max. Load}$$

$$\text{4 people} + \text{1 suitcase} \leq \text{Max. Load}$$

The maximum load is the sum of the weight of the occupants and the cargo.

The greater the weight of the occupants, the less cargo that can be transported.

## Stowing and securing cargo

- ▷ Cover sharp edges and corners on the cargo.
- ▷ Heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom of the rear passenger seat backrests.
- ▷ Very heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom of the rear passenger seat backrests.  
When the rear seat is not occupied, secure each of the outer safety belts in the opposite buckle.
- ▷ Smaller and lighter cargo: secure with ratchet straps or with a cargo net or draw straps.
- ▷ Larger and heavy cargo: secure with cargo straps.

## Lashing eyes



There are four lashing eyes in the cargo area for securing cargo.

## Storage compartments in the cargo area

### Multi-function hook

#### General information

A multi-function hook is located on the left side in the cargo area.

#### Safety information



**WARNING**  
Improper use of the multi-function hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only hang lightweight objects, e.g., shopping bags, from the multi-function hooks. Only transport heavy luggage in the cargo area if it has been appropriately secured.◀

## Lashing eyes in the cargo area

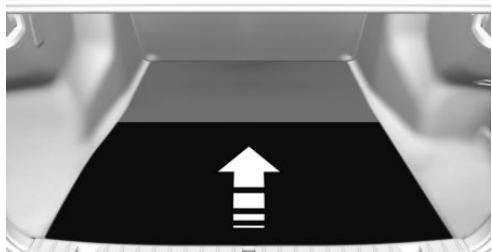
### General information

Attach load securing aids, such as lashing straps, retaining straps, draw straps or cargo nets, to the lashing eyes in the cargo area.

## Folding down



Press on the multi-function hook and turn until it engages.



Fold up the cargo floor panel.

## Side storage compartments

### General information

A storage compartment is located on the left and right sides in the cargo area.



Pull on the straps.

### Storage compartment under the cargo area floor

There is a storage compartment under the cargo floor panel.

## Through-loading system

### Concept

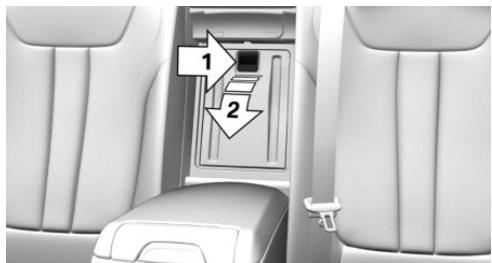
The through-loading system allows the transport of long objects, such as skies.

### Without comfort seats: opening through-loading

1. Fold down the center armrest.
2. Remove flap.



3. Pull handle, arrow 1, down and fold panel forward, arrow 2.



## With comfort seats: opening through-loading

### Without rear console

1. Fold down the center armrest.
2. Pull on the loop.



### With rear console

1. Push the cover up until it engages.



2. Pull on the loop.



## Enlarging the cargo area

### General information

The cargo floor panel can be lowered to stow bulky luggage.

### Safety information



#### NOTE

The spaces under the cargo area floor are intended for the covers of the side storage compartments. Other objects may result in damage to the vehicle electrical system if the cargo area floor should sink down or in an accident. There is a risk of damage to property. Only place the covers of the side storage compartments into the spaces under the cargo area floor.◀

### Enlarging

1. Remove the covers of the side storage compartments.



2. Lift the cargo floor panel.

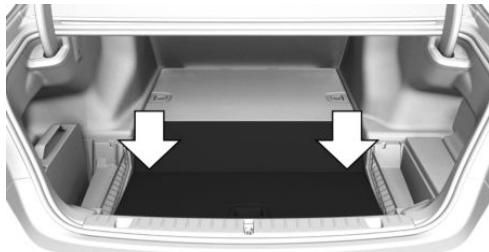


3. Stow the covers of the side storage compartments under the cargo floor panel in the respectively provided recesses.

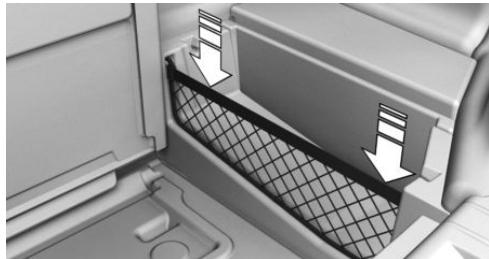


Follow the installation and owner's manual included in the protective jacket.

4. Lift the cargo floor panel by its handle towards the back and up and lower it.



5. Press the side partition nets downward.



### Reducing the size

Proceed in reverse order to make the cargo area smaller again.

### Ski and snowboard bag

The ski and snowboard bag is contained in a protective jacket in the cargo area.





## Driving tips

This chapter provides you with information useful in dealing with specific driving and operating modes.

# Things to remember when driving

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

## Breaking-in period

### General information

Moving parts need to begin working together smoothly.

The following instructions will help you to achieve a long vehicle life and good efficiency.

### Safety information



#### WARNING

Due to new parts and components, safety and driver assistance systems can react with a delay. There is a risk of an accident. After installing new parts or with a new vehicle, drive conservatively and intervene early if necessary. Observe the break-in procedures of the respective parts and components.◀

## Engine, transmission, and axle drive

### Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Do not exceed the maximum engine and road speed:

- For gasoline engine 4,500 rpm and 100 mph/160 km/h.

Avoid full load or kickdown under all circumstances.

### From 1,200 miles/2,000 km

The engine and vehicle speed can gradually be increased.

### Tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand-new; they achieve their full traction potential after a break-in time.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

### Brake system

Brake discs and brake pads only reach their full effectiveness after approx. 300 miles/500 km. Drive moderately during this break-in period.

### Following part replacement

Observe the break-in procedures again, if components mentioned above are replaced.

## General driving notes

### Closing the tailgate

### Safety information



#### WARNING

An open tailgate protrudes from the vehicle and can endanger occupants and other traffic participants or damage the vehicle in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. In addition, exhaust fumes may enter the car's interior. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not drive with the tailgate open.◀

### Driving with the tailgate open

If driving with the tailgate open cannot be avoided:

- ▷ Close all windows and the glass sunroof.
- ▷ Greatly increase the air flow from the vents.
- ▷ Drive moderately.

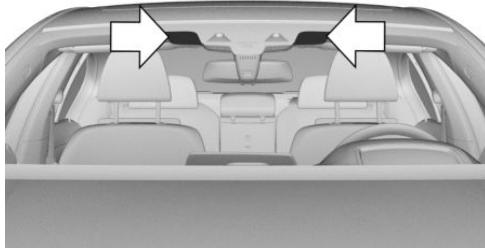
## Hot exhaust system



### WARNING

During driving operation, high temperatures can occur underneath the vehicle body, e.g., caused by the exhaust gas system. If combustible materials, such as leaves or grass, come in contact with hot parts of the exhaust gas system, these materials can ignite. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Do not remove the heat shields installed and never apply undercoating to them. Make sure that no combustible materials can come in contact with hot vehicle parts in driving operation, idle or during parking. Do not touch the hot exhaust system.◀

## Climate control windshield



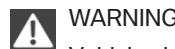
The marked area is not covered with heat reflective coating.

Use this area for garage door openers, devices for electronic toll collection, etc.

## Climate control windshield

The vehicle glass provides full protection against the harmful effects of UV radiation on the skin.

## Mobile communication devices in the vehicle



### WARNING

Vehicle electronics and mobile phones can influence one another. There is radiation due to the transmission operations of mobile phones. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. If possible, in the vehicle's interior use only mobile phones with direct connections to an exterior antenna in order to exclude mutual interference and deflect the radiation from the vehicle's interior.◀

## Hydroplaning

On wet or slushy roads, a wedge of water can form between the tires and road surface.

This phenomenon is referred to as hydroplaning. It is characterized by a partial or complete loss of contact between the tires and the road surface, ultimately undermining your ability to steer and brake the vehicle.

## Driving through water

### General information

When driving through water, follow the following:

- ▷ Drive through calm water only.
- ▷ Drive through water only if it is not deeper than maximum 9.8 inches/25 cm.
- ▷ Drive through water no faster than walking speed, up to 3 mph/5 km/h.

### Safety information



### NOTE

When driving too quickly through too deep water, water can enter into the engine compartment, the electrical system or the transmission. There is a risk of property damage. When driving through water, do not exceed the maximum indicated water level and the maximum speed for driving through water.◀

## Braking safely

### General information

The vehicle is equipped with the Antilock Brake System ABS as a standard feature.

Perform an emergency stop in situations that require such.

Steering is still responsive. You can still avoid any obstacles with a minimum of steering effort.

Pulsation of the brake pedal and sounds from the hydraulic circuits indicate that the Antilock Brake System ABS is in its active mode.

In certain braking situations, the perforated brake discs can emit functional noises. However, functional noises have no effect on the performance and operational reliability of the brake.

### Objects in the area around the pedals

#### WARNING

Objects in the driver's floor area can limit the pedal distance or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of an accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's floor area. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, for instance for cleaning.◀

### Driving in wet conditions

When roads are wet, salted, or in heavy rain, gently press the brake pedal every few miles.

Ensure that this action does not endanger other traffic.

The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

In this way braking efficiency will be available when you need it.

## Hills

### General information

Drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear that requires least braking effort. Otherwise, the brakes may overheat and reduce brake efficiency.

You can increase the engine's braking effect by shifting down, going all the way to first gear, if needed.

### Safety information

#### WARNING

Light but consistent brake pressure can lead to high temperatures, brakes wearing out and possibly even brake failure. There is a risk of an accident. Avoid placing excessive stress on the brake system.◀

#### WARNING

In idle state, in the ECO PRO driving program or with drive-ready state switched off, safety-relevant functions, for instance engine braking effect, braking force boost and steering assistance, are restricted or not available at all. There is a risk of an accident. Do not drive in idle state, in the ECO PRO driving program or with drive-ready state switched off.◀

### Brake disc corrosion

Corrosion on the brake discs and contamination on the brake pads are increased by the following circumstances:

- ▷ Low mileage.
- ▷ Extended periods when the vehicle is not used at all.
- ▷ Infrequent use of the brakes.
- ▷ Aggressive, acidic, or alkaline cleaning agents.

Corrosion buildup on the brake discs will cause a pulsating effect on the brakes in their response - generally this cannot be corrected.

## Condensation water under the parked vehicle

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops and collects underneath the vehicle.

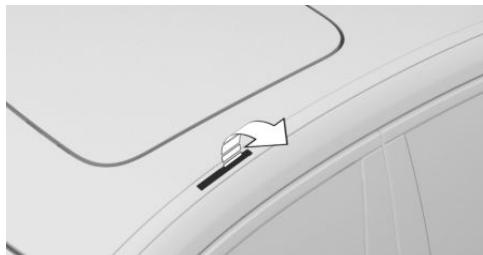
## Roof-mounted luggage rack

### General information

Installation only possible in roof drip rail with flaps. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Roof racks are available as special accessories.

### Roof drip rail with flaps



The fixing points are located in the roof drip rail above the doors.

Fold the cover outward.

### Mounting

Follow the installation instructions of the roof rack.

Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for tilting and opening the glass sunroof.

### Magnetic roof-mounted luggage racks

Because of the aluminum roof, magnetic roof-mounted luggage racks cannot be used.

### Loading

Because roof-mounted luggage racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they have a major effect on vehicle handling and steering response.

Therefore, note the following when loading and driving:

- ▷ Do not exceed the approved roof/axle loads and the approved gross vehicle weight.
- ▷ Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for tilting and opening the glass sunroof.
- ▷ Distribute the roof load uniformly.
- ▷ The roof load should not extend past the loading area.
- ▷ Always place the heaviest pieces on the bottom.
- ▷ Secure the roof luggage firmly, for instance using ratchet straps.
- ▷ Do not let objects project into the opening path of the tailgate.
- ▷ Drive cautiously and avoid sudden acceleration and braking maneuvers. Take corners gently.

## Driving on racetracks

Higher mechanical and thermal loads during racetrack operation lead to increased wear. This wear is not covered by the warranty. The vehicle is not designed for use in motor sports competition.

# Saving fuel

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

## General information

The vehicle contains advanced technologies for the reduction of fuel consumption and emission values.

Fuel consumption depends on a number of different factors.

Carrying out certain measures, such as a moderate driving style and regular maintenance, can influence fuel consumption and the environmental impact.

## Remove unnecessary cargo

Additional weight increases fuel consumption.

## Remove attached parts following use

Remove auxiliary mirrors, roof-mounted or rear luggage racks which are no longer required following use.

Attached parts on the vehicle impair the aerodynamics and increase the fuel consumption.

## Close the windows and glass sunroof

Driving with the glass sunroof and windows open results in increased air resistance and raises fuel consumption.

## Tires

### General information

Tires can affect fuel consumption in various ways, e.g., tire size may influence fuel consumption.

### Check the tire inflation pressure regularly

Check and, if needed, correct the tire inflation pressure at least twice a month and before starting on a long trip.

Low tire inflation pressure increases rolling resistance and thus raises fuel consumption and tire wear.

## Drive away without delay

Do not wait for the engine to warm-up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving right away, but at moderate engine speeds.

This is the quickest way of warming the cold engine up to operating temperature.

## Look well ahead when driving

Driving smoothly and proactively reduces fuel consumption.

Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.

By maintaining a suitable distance to the vehicle driving ahead of you.

## Avoid high engine speeds

Driving at low engine speeds lowers fuel consumption and reduces wear.

If necessary, observe the vehicle's gear shift indicator, refer to page [140](#).

## Use coasting conditions

When approaching a red light, take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle coast to a halt.

For going downhill take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle roll.

The flow of fuel is interrupted while coasting.

The high-voltage battery is charged.

## Charge regularly

Charge the vehicle as often as possible at a charging facility. This will further reduce fuel consumption due to the use of electrical energy.

## Switch off the engine during longer stops

Switch off the engine during longer stops, for instance at traffic lights, railroad crossings or in traffic congestion.

## Switch off any functions that are not currently needed

Functions such as seat heating and the rear window defroster require a lot of energy and increase fuel consumption, especially in city and stop-and-go traffic.

Switch off these functions if they are not needed.

The ECO PRO driving mode supports the energy conserving use of comfort features.

These functions are automatically deactivated partially or completely.

## Have maintenance carried out

Have the vehicle maintained regularly to achieve optimal vehicle efficiency and service life. BMW recommends that maintenance work be performed by a BMW dealer's service center.

For information on the BMW Maintenance System, refer to page [322](#).

## Using the hybrid system efficiently

### Concept

The vehicle's hybrid system runs automatically. Through foresighted driving, the hybrid properties are efficiently used, i.e., fuel consumption and energy recovery are optimized.

### Optimizing energy recovery

#### Types of energy recovery

Energy recovery is used to charge the high-voltage battery. Energy recovery is important for the supply of electrical components and thus a prerequisite for fuel efficiency. Energy recovery appears in three stages during coasting and braking:

- ▷ Low energy recovery: while coasting to a halt without stepping on the brake.
- ▷ Average energy recovery: while decelerating slightly by gently pressing the brake pedal.
- ▷ Maximum energy recovery: when pressing the brake pedal somewhat more firmly provided that the pointer remains in the middle area of the CHARGE indicator in the instrument cluster, refer to page [132](#).

## Optimum energy recovery

Foresighted driving and decelerating helps with optimizing energy recovery.

As soon as the display shows the maximum energy recovery, only press the brake pedal harder if required by the situation.

## Exemplary traffic situations for fuel efficiency

In many driving situations, the hybrid system allows for a particularly efficient energy management.

► Stop-and-go traffic:

The combustion engine is switched on or off automatically by the hybrid system.

► Driving with constant speed:

The electric motor relieves the combustion engine periodically by also being switched on.

## Optimizing fuel consumption

### Charging the vehicle regularly

Charge the vehicle regularly and completely using a suitable charging device. This will reduce fuel consumption due to the use of electrical energy.

Longer idle periods, refer to page 337, can reduce the charge state of the high-voltage battery.

### Avoiding the use of the combustion engine

Observe the following information to avoid using the combustion engine:

- Set the characteristics of the hybrid system to MAX eDRIVE, refer to page 112.
- Observe the indicators in the instrument cluster regarding electric driving, refer to page 131.

## Using the navigation system regularly

Use the navigation system also for familiar and regularly traveled routes. When the navigation system destination guidance is active, the hybrid system uses the existing navigation data. The upcoming course of the road is analyzed. Hybrid operation adapts to the specific route sections.

## ECO PRO

### Concept

ECO PRO supports a driving style that saves on fuel consumption. For this purpose, the engine control and comfort features, for instance the climate control output, are adjusted.

Under certain conditions the engine is automatically decoupled from the transmission in the D selector lever position and the engine is switched off. The D selector lever position remains engaged.

In addition, context-sensitive information, ECO PRO tips, are displayed to assist with an optimized fuel consumption driving style.

### General information

The system includes the following EfficientDynamics functions and EfficientDynamics displays:

- ECO PRO climate control, refer to page 271.
- Driving style analysis, refer to page 271.

### Overview





Button

## Activating ECO PRO



Press button. ECO PRO is displayed in the instrument cluster.

## Configuring ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL

### Opening via the Driving Dynamics Control

1. Activate ECO PRO.
2. "Configure ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL"

### Opening via iDrive

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Driving Experience Control"
4. "Configure ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

### Activating/deactivating ECO PRO functions

The following ECO PRO functions can be activated/deactivated:

- ▷ "ECO PRO speed warning"
- ▷ "ECO PRO seat climate control"
- ▷ "ECO PRO climate control"
- ▷ "ECO PRO sight"

Settings are stored for the driver profile currently used.

### ECO PRO limit

- ▷ Activate the ECO PRO limit:  
"ECO PRO speed warning"
- An ECO PRO tip is displayed if the speed of the set ECO PRO limit is exceeded.
- ▷ Adjust the ECO PRO limit speed:

"Tip at:"

Select the desired speed.

### ECO PRO seat climate control

The output of seat heating and, where applicable, seat ventilation is reduced when ECO PRO is activated.

### ECO PRO climate control

Climate control is set to be fuel-efficient. That is, it is possible to deviate slightly from the set temperature or to heat or cool the car's interior more slowly, to economize on fuel consumption.

The mirror heating is made available when external temperatures are very cold.

### ECO PRO Sight

The output of exterior mirror heating and rear window defroster is reduced.

### Resetting the settings

Reset ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL to the standard settings:

"Reset to ECO PRO STANDARD"

### Driving style analysis

#### Concept

The function helps develop an especially efficient driving style and to conserve fuel.

For this purpose, the driving style is analyzed. The assessment is done in various categories and is displayed on the Control Display.

This display will help you adjust your driving style and save some fuel.

#### General information

The current trip is assessed.

To assist with an efficient driving style, ECO PRO tips are displayed during driving.

The range of the vehicle can be extended by adjusting your driving style.

## Functional requirement

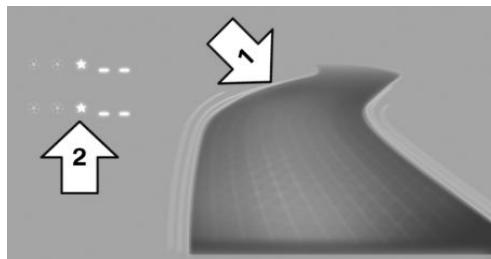
This function is available in ECO PRO mode.

### Calling up ECO PRO driving style analysis

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Technology in action"
3. "Driving style analysis"

### Display on the Control Display



The display of the ECO PRO driving style analysis consists of a symbolized route and a lookup table.

The road symbolizes the efficiency of the driving style. The more efficient the driving style, the smoother the depicted route becomes, arrow 1.

The table of values contains stars. The more efficient the driving style, the more stars are included in the table, arrow 2.

If, on the other hand, the driving style is inefficient, a more wavy road and a reduced number of stars are displayed.





## **Mobility**

In order to always ensure your mobility, you will find important information on operating fluids, wheels and tires, maintenance and Roadside Assistance in the following.

# Charging the vehicle

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

## Concept

The vehicle can be charged using various charging cables at charging stations or household sockets. Control and monitoring of the charging process are handled completely automatically. The charge current strength can be set via iDrive.

## General information

### High-voltage battery

The high-voltage battery is used as an energy accumulator. The high-voltage battery can be charged by energy recovery during the trip or via the power grid.

In order to operate the high-voltage battery optimally, charge the vehicle regularly and completely on a compatible charger.

When charging via the power grid, you can choose between the following variants.

- ▷ Level 1 charging via a household socket.
- ▷ Level 2 charging via a Level 2 charging station.

Level 1 charging is possible via a household socket with a voltage of 120 volts.

For optimal use of the energy from the power mains, charging at a charging station, e.g., BMW Wallbox, is recommended.

### Charge current

#### General information

The charge current strength is indicated in amperes.

The vehicle cannot automatically detect the maximum permissible charge current strength of the power grid during charging via a household socket or charging station.

#### Level 1 charging

Prior to the first Level 1 charging at your own household socket, as well as when charging at external electrical power sockets in Level 1, the allowed charge current strength must be determined, for instance by a qualified electrician.

The charge current strength for Level 1 charging, refer to page 281, can be adjusted in the vehicle in three levels.

At delivery, the charge current for Level 1 charging is set to the lowest level.

Depending on the country-specific version, one of several ampere ratings is printed on the enclosed Level 1 charging cable. This ampere rating is the limit which must be adhered to for the vehicle if the charge current is set to the highest level. Depending on the charge current, the change in charge current strength varies when lower levels are set.

## Overview

Print on charging cable	Charge current setting		
	"Max."	"Reduced"	"Low"
8 A	8 A	6 A	6 A
10 A	10 A	7.5 A	6 A
12 A	12 A	9 A	6 A
15 A	15 A	11.25 A	7.5 A

Depending on the set charge current, the charging duration changes.

- ▶ Household socket and connected circuits.◀

## Maintaining charge state

Should it be necessary, for instance to conserve a certain electrical range for a later point in time on the trip, the current charge state of the high-voltage battery can be maintained or increased with BATTERY CONTROL, refer to page 113.

### WARNING

Damaged or worn charging devices, e.g., worn contacts, can heat up. There is a risk of fire. Only use charging devices in proper state.◀

### WARNING

If a sufficient safety distance from easily flammable materials is not maintained, simultaneous charging and filling with fuel can cause a risk of fire. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Do not fill the vehicle with fuel and charge it simultaneously.◀

### WARNING

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. High voltage is applied at the charging connection. There is a risk of injury or danger to life.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that work on the charging connection, e.g., cleaning, be performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◀

## Safety information

### WARNING

Improper working with electrical current can lead to an electric shock due to high voltages or high currents. There is a risk of fire or danger to life. Observe the general safety regulations when working with electrical current.◀

### WARNING

A faulty and incorrectly designed charging device at the charging location can cause damage to the vehicle and overload the power mains at the charging location. There is a risk of fire and a risk of injury.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that, prior to your first use of a charging location, you have the compatibility of the following components confirmed:

- ▶ Charging cable.
- ▶ Charging station.

## Charging cable

### General information

Use a Level 1 charging cable, Level 2 charging cable or the permanently installed charging cable of a charging station to charge the vehicle. Different charging cables can be required depending on the country.

### Safety information

#### **WARNING**

Non-compatible charging cables or unsuitable charging stations can heat up and cause damage to the vehicle. There is a risk of fire. Use charging cables or charging stations for charging that are suitable for the respective vehicle type.

A dealer's service center will be glad to provide information about suitable charging cables.◀

#### **WARNING**

Improper use of the charging cable can prevent charging and lead to damage, e.g., cable fire. There is a risk of fire. Use the charging cable only for charging the vehicle, and do not extend it using cables or adapters.◀

#### **WARNING**

Damaged charging cables can heat up or lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of fire or a risk of injury. Use undamaged charging cables only.◀

### Level 1 charging cable

With the Level 1 charging cable, it is permissible to perform charging from grounded household sockets. At the power connection of a household socket, charging is done with alternating current.

When a Level 1 charging cable is used, this may produce efficiency values other than indicated on the energy label.

### Level 2 charging cable

The Level 2 charging cable makes it possible to quickly recharge at sockets of designated Level 2 charging stations using a special plug. Charging is performed with alternating current at designated Level 2 charging stations. The charging process can be completed faster than at household sockets.

A charging current strength of up to maximum 16 A is possible.

If necessary, the charging cable is attached to the charging station.

### Storage



The Level 1 charging cable is located in a bag in the cargo area.

If required, store the charging cable with the installed plug cover to prevent moisture in the charging cable plug.

### Connecting

#### Charging socket flap



The charging socket flap is located on the left side of the vehicle.

Always keep charging socket clean and unobstructed.

Keep the charging socket flap closed when the charging socket is not used.

## Connecting the charging cable

To connect, engage selector lever position P, deactivate drive-ready state, and unlock the vehicle. Set the parking brake, if needed.

1. Tap on the charging socket flap, arrow.



2. Connect the Level 1 charging cable to the household socket or the Level 2 charging cable to the port on the charging station.
3. Insert the charging cable plug corresponding to the charging socket, and push it in until it engages.

## Removing

When the vehicle is locked, the charging cable is locked. Unlock the vehicle before removing the cable.

If necessary, clean the area between charging socket flap and charging socket, for instance from snow, before removing it.

1. Unlock the vehicle by remote control if it is locked.  
Charging cable is unlocked.
2. Press the release button on the handle, arrow 1, and grasp the charging cable at the gripping areas.

Charging process is interrupted.



3. Remove the charging cable from the charging socket, arrow 2.
4. Close the charging socket flap.
5. Disconnect Level 1 charging cable from the household socket or Level 2 charging cable from the port on the charging station as needed.
6. Stow the charging cable.

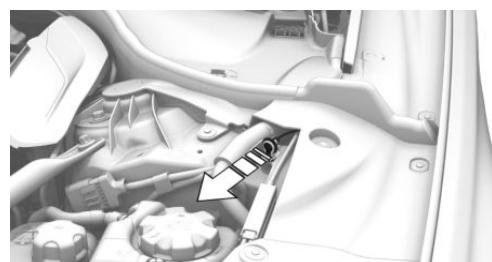
At a charging station, insert the permanently installed charging cable in the place provided for it.

## Manually unlocking the charging cable

The charging cable is locked when the vehicle is locked and during the charging process.

In case of an electrical malfunction, the charging cable can be manually unlocked.

1. Open the hood.
2. Pull knob.  
Charging cable is manually unlocked.



3. Removing the charging cable, refer to page 279.

## Charging process

### Safety information

#### **WARNING**

Improper use of the power mains connection can lead to damage, e.g., cable fire. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Use the charging cable only for charging the vehicle, and do not extend it using cables or adapters.◀

#### **WARNING**

If the charge current strength is adjusted incorrectly, the power mains of the household socket can be overloaded and overheat. There is a risk of fire. Adjust the charge current strength to the power mains prior to charging on household sockets. With unknown power networks, set on the lowest level.◀

### Starting the charging process

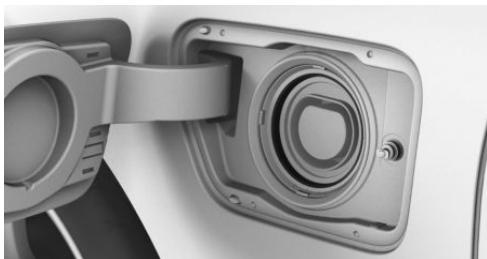
1. Engage selector lever position P. Set the parking brake, if needed.
2. Planning the charging process, refer to page 281.
3. Switch off drive-ready state.
4. Connect Level 1 charging cable to the household socket or Level 2 charging cable to the port on the charging station.
5. Open charging socket flap.
6. Connect charging cable to the vehicle, refer to page 278.
7. Lock vehicle if it is unlocked.

At high temperatures, the high-voltage battery is initially cooled. There may be a delay before charging starts. If the high-voltage battery is discharged, cooling of the high-voltage battery may not be possible. The charging process cannot be started.

The charging process may take longer under extremely low or high temperatures.

### Display of the charging status

#### Indicator light at the charging socket



#### Charging status

Light	Charging status
White	Charging cable can be connected or removed.
Flashes yellow	Charging process is being prepared.
Blue	The charging process starts at the set time.
Flashes blue	Charging process is active.
Flashes red	Fault in the charging process.
Green	Charging process is completed.

When the vehicle is locked, the indicator light goes out after some time.

When the vehicle is unlocked, the blue indicator light flashes continuously. The other indicator lights go out after some time.

To check the charging process, press the  key on the remote control. The charging status is indicated on the indicator light. In some cases the vehicle is locked.

Additional messages about the charging status can be displayed in the instrument cluster, on the BMW display key, or via the BMW Connected app on a smartphone.

## Planning the charging process

### General information

The charging process can be adapted to constraints, such as the cost of electricity or available power sources. The vehicle can control the charging process in such a way that the charging process is completed at the departure time. A departure time must be set for this purpose, refer to page 283.

The following settings are available:

- ▷ Immediate charging.
- ▷ Set time window for favorable charging.
- ▷ Set charging via a Level 1 charging cable.
- ▷ Intelligent charging.

If drive-ready state is switched off, changes can be made via iDrive. Settings for stationary climate control and charging process are also accepted for planned departure times.

Intelligent charging can be ignored for the next charging process.

1. "Charge immediately once"

### Immediate charging

The charging process starts as soon as the charging cable is connected.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Plan charging/climate control"
3. "Charge immediately"

### Setting time window for favorable charging

When departure time is set, a time window for charging with a favorable electricity rate can be set.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Plan charging/climate control"
3. "Charge for departure time"

4. "Set low cost time slot"

5. Set rate begin.

6. Set rate end.

The Digital Charging Service enables the time window to be set automatically for certain locations. Further information about the Digital Charging Service is available on the Internet:

<https://charging.bmwgroup.com>

The vehicle can also start the charging process before the selected time window begins or end it after the selected time window finishes. The starting point of the charging process is adjusted so the vehicle can be fully charged and, if applicable, its climate controlled right up to the departure time.

If drive-ready state is switched off, changes can be made via iDrive.

The set time window can be ignored for the next charging process.

1. "Charge immediately once"

### Setting the charge current for charging via a Level 1 charging cable

Depending on the electrical mains, the vehicle must be charged with a different charging current strength, refer to page 276.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Plan charging/climate control"
3. "Charging rate settings"

Settings are stored. When you change charging locations you also might need to change the setting for charging.

Set the charge current strength at other household sockets to the lowest level.

### Stopping the charging process

The charging process can be stopped at any time by removing the charging cable and continued at a later time by connecting the charging cable. This enables, e.g., the use of other

loads on the power connection or prevents simultaneous high power from multiple loads.

Removing the charging cable, refer to page 279.

## Continuing the charging process

If the charging process is interrupted, e.g., through a temporary power failure, the charging process is automatically continued after the interruption.

## Terminating the charging process

1. Remove the charging cable from the vehicle, refer to page 279.
2. Stow the charging cable as required.
3. Close the charging socket flap.
4. Lock vehicle if it is unlocked.

## Intelligent charging

### Concept

Intelligent charging can adapt the charging process dynamically via the Internet to the environmental condition, such as the availability of solar power or time-variable electricity rates. Intelligent charging is part of BMW's Digital Charging Service.

Further information about the Digital Charging Service is available on the Internet:

<https://charging.bmwgroup.com>

### General information

No time for the end of charging is displayed in the instrument cluster for intelligent charging.

If drive-ready state is switched off, changes can be made via iDrive.

Intelligent charging can be ignored for the next charging process.

1. "Charge immediately once"

### Functional requirements

- Account on the BMW charging portal.

- A subscription to the intelligent charging service has been obtained.
- Suitable Wallbox.
- Departure time set, refer to page 283.
- Charge current strength setting to highest level, refer to page 281.

## Configuring the BMW charging service

Use one of the following to configure the BMW charging service:

- BMW remote app on the smartphone.
- BMW charging portal in the Internet.

## Activating intelligent charging

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Plan charging/climate control"
3. "Charge for departure time"
4. "Intelligent charging"

## Displays in the instrument cluster

The charge state indicator light, refer to page 131, shows the charge state of the high-voltage battery in the instrument cluster, if standby state is switched on. If all bars are filled, the high-voltage battery is fully charged.

Even if no bars are filled, the high-voltage system is still under high voltage.

Information regarding the charging process are shown on the charging screen, refer to page 130.

Display	Meaning
	Blue plug: charging process active or completed. White plug: charging process interrupted.
	End of charging time or set departure time.
	Charging progress bar.
	Indicator in blue: charged electrical range.
	Indicator in white: maximum electrical range.
	Departure time set.
	Climate control activated at departure time.
	Flashing: ventilation active.
	Flashing: heating active.
	Flashing: cooling active.

## Departure time

### Concept

For optimum range and climate control, the departure time can be set before parking the vehicle.

### General information

With a set departure time, the vehicle is pre-heated or pre-cooled during the charging

process if climate control is set. Climate control output is reduced during the trip. This increases the range during electric driving.

The following settings are possible at departure time:

- ▷ Climate control at departure time.
- ▷ Scheduling of up to three regular departure times.

If drive-ready state is switched off, changes can be made via iDrive. Settings for climate control and charging process are also applied for scheduled departure times.

### Climate control at departure time

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Plan charging/climate control"
3. "Precondition for departure"

### Setting the departure time

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Plan charging/climate control"
3. "Set departure time"
4. Set the time and weekday.

Up to three departure times can be set.

### Activating the departure time

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Plan charging/climate control"
3. "Set departure time"

Set departure times are displayed.

4. For instance, activate "Departure time 1".

Up to three departure times can be activated.

The set departure time will be deactivated, if the departure time was ignored three times in a row.

## Climate control

### General information

The following settings for climate control of the vehicle are possible:

- ▷ Activate stationary climate control immediately, refer to page [239](#).  
With stationary climate control activated and no charging cable connected, the range is reduced.
- ▷ Planned climate control at the set departure time, refer to page [240](#).

## Discharged high-voltage and vehicle battery

### General information

In addition to the high-voltage battery, the vehicle has a 12 volt vehicle battery, which is required for operation of the onboard electronics.

If the high-voltage battery is discharged and the combustion engine is started, air conditioning may be limited.

With a discharged vehicle battery, no operation of the vehicle is possible.

### Starting the vehicle

If the vehicle battery is discharged, the combustion engine can be started using the battery of another vehicle and two jumper cables, see Jump-starting, refer to page [330](#).

# Refueling

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

## General information

Follow the fuel recommendation, refer to page 288, prior to refueling.

To also ensure all engine functions under unfavorable conditions, for instance vehicle on a steep incline, at least 3 US gal/10 liters fuel should be refueled.

## Safety information



### WARNING

If a sufficient safety distance from easily flammable materials is not maintained, simultaneous charging and filling with fuel can cause a risk of fire. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Do not fill the vehicle with fuel and charge it simultaneously.◀



### NOTE

With a range of less than 30 miles/50 km it is possible that the engine will no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of property damage. Refuel promptly.◀

## Tank vent

### Concept

The vehicle is equipped with a special fuel tank. The fuel tank is designed for special requirements that arise from hybrid operation of the vehicle, i.e., alternating drive with combustion engine or electric motor.

### General information

In the fuel tank, excess pressure can build up due to gasoline vapors which are dissipated before the fuel cap is opened.

### Overview



The button is located on the driver's floor area.

### Tank venting

1. Switch off drive-ready state.
2. Press button to start the pressure equalization.

The status of the tank venting is displayed in the instrument cluster. In rare cases, the tank venting can last several minutes.

If the tank venting has been completed, a message is displayed in the instrument cluster. The fuel filler flap is released for opening.
3. Open the fuel filler flap.

If the fuel filler flap is not opened within 10 minutes after the fuel filler flap was released, the fuel filler flap relocks. Press button again.

## Fuel cap

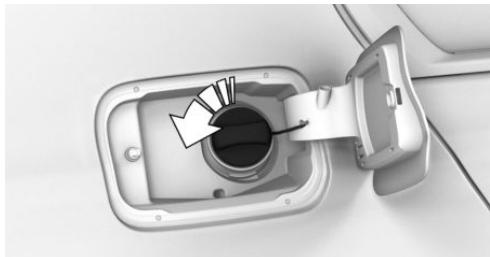
### Opening

Before opening, vent the tank, refer to page 285.

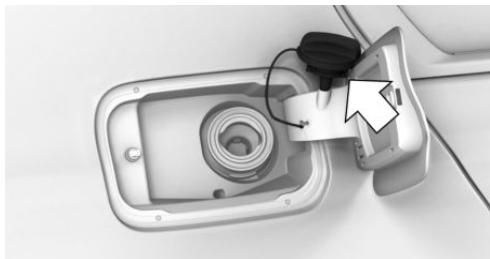
1. Briefly press the rear edge of the fuel filler flap.



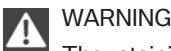
2. Turn the fuel cap counterclockwise.



3. Place the fuel cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.



### Closing



#### WARNING

The retaining strap of the fuel cap can be jammed and crushed during closing. The cap cannot be correctly closed. Fuel or fuel vapors can escape. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Pay attention that the retaining strap is not jammed or crushed when closing the lid.◀

1. Fit the lid and turn it clockwise until you clearly hear a click.
2. Close the fuel filler flap.

### Manually unlocking fuel filler flap

E.g., in the event of an electrical malfunction.

The release is located in the cargo area.

1. Open the cover on the right side trim.



2. Pull the green knob with the fuel pump symbol. This silently releases the fuel filler flap.
3. Briefly press the rear edge of the fuel filler flap. Fuel filler flap is opened.
4. Carefully open the fuel cap. Excess pressure can build up in the fuel tank from gasoline vapor.
5. Fuel the vehicle as usual. The residue pressure in the tank may make refueling difficult, for instance the fuel pump nozzle may shut off frequently.

## Observe the following when refueling

### General information

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off the first time.

Observe safety regulations posted at the gas station.

### Safety information

#### WARNING

If a sufficient safety distance from easily flammable materials is not maintained, simultaneous charging and filling with fuel can cause a risk of fire. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Do not fill the vehicle with fuel and charge it simultaneously.◀

#### NOTE

Fuels are toxic and aggressive. Overfilling of the fuel tank can damage the fuel system. Painted surfaces may be damaged by contact with fuel. Escaping fuel can harm the environment. There is a risk of property damage. Avoid overfilling.◀

# Fuel

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

## Fuel recommendation

### General information

Depending on the region, many gas stations sell fuel that has been customized to winter or summer conditions. Fuel that is available in winter, e.g., helps make a cold start easier.

### Gasoline

#### General information

For the best fuel efficiency, the gasoline should be sulfur-free or very low in sulfur content.

Fuels that are marked on the gas pump as containing metal must not be used.

Fuels with a maximum ethanol content of 10 %, i. e., E10, may be used for refueling.

Ethanol should meet the following quality standards:

US: ASTM 4806-xx

CAN: CGSB-3.511-xx

xx: comply with the current standard in each case.

### Safety information

#### CAUTION

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in harmful engine deposits or damage. Additionally, problems relating to drivability, starting and stalling, especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude, may occur.

If drivability problems are encountered, we recommend switching to a high quality gasoline brand and a higher octane grade — AKI number — for a few tank fills. To avoid harmful engine deposits, it is highly recommended to purchase gasoline from Top Tier retailers.

Failure to comply with these recommendations may result in the need for unscheduled maintenance.◀

#### NOTE

Do not press the Start/Stop button after refueling with the wrong fuel. Furthermore, the catalytic converter is permanently damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Do not refuel or add the following in the case of gasoline engines:

- ▷ Leaded gasoline.
- ▷ Metallic additives, e.g., manganese or iron.

Do not press the Start/Stop button after refueling with the wrong fuel. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◀

#### NOTE

Incorrect fuels can damage the fuel system and the engine. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use fuels with a higher percentage of ethanol than recommended. Do not refuel with fuels containing methanol, e.g. M5 to M100.◀

**! NOTE**

Fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality can compromise engine function or cause engine damage. There is a risk of property damage. Do not fill with fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality.◀

**Recommended fuel grade**

BMW recommends AKI 91.

**Minimum fuel grade**

BMW recommends AKI 89.

If you use gasoline with this minimum AKI Rating, the engine may produce knocking sounds when starting at high external temperatures. This has no effect on the engine life.

**BMW recommends**  
**Shell Quality Fuels** 

# Wheels and tires

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

## Tire inflation pressure

### General information

The tire characteristics and tire inflation pressure influence the following:

- ▷ The service life of the tires.
- ▷ Road safety.
- ▷ Driving comfort.
- ▷ Fuel consumption.

### Safety information



#### WARNING

A tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of an accident. Regularly check the tire inflation pressure, and correct it as needed, e.g., twice a month and before a long trip.◀

### Checking the tire inflation pressure

#### General information

Only check the tire inflation pressure when the tires are cold, i.e.:

- ▷ Driving range of max. 1.25 miles/2 km has not been exceeded.

- ▷ If the vehicle has not moved again for at least 2 hours after a trip.

The tire inflation pressure specifications only relate to cold tires or tires at the same temperature as the ambient temperature.

Tires heat up while driving. The tire inflation pressure increases with the tire temperature.

The displays of inflation devices may under-read by up to 0.1 bar/2 psi.

Tires have a natural, consistent loss of tire inflation pressure.

Check whether all valve caps are screwed onto the tire valves.

### After correcting the tire inflation pressure

For run-flat tires: reinitialize run-flat tires.

For the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM: reset the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM.

### Tire inflation pressure specifications

The tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 291, contains all tire inflation pressure specifications for the specified tire sizes at the ambient temperature. The tire inflation pressure values apply to tire sizes approved by the manufacturer of the vehicle for the vehicle type.

To identify the correct tire inflation pressure, please note the following:

- ▷ Tire sizes of your vehicle.
- ▷ Maximum permitted driving speed.

### Tire inflation pressures up to 100 mph/160 km/h

For speeds of up to 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 291, and adjust as necessary.



These pressure values can also be found on the tire inflation pressure label on the driver's door pillar.

Do not exceed a speed of 100 mph/160 km/h.

### Tire inflation pressure values up to 100 mph/160 km/h

#### 740Le xDrive iPerformance

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
245/50 R 18 100 V M+S A/S RSC	2.2/32	2.4/35
245/50 R 18 100 H M+S RSC		
245/45 R 19 102 V M+S XL A/S RSC	2.4/35	2.6/38
245/45 R 19 102 V M+S XL RSC		
Front: 245/45 R 19 98 Y RSC	2.5/36	-
Rear: 275/40 R 19 101 Y RSC	-	2.5/36

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Front: 245/35 R 21 96 Y XL RSC	3.0/44	-
Rear: 275/30 R 21 98 Y XL RSC	-	3.0/44
Emergency wheel: T 135/80 R 18 104 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h	
	4.2/60	

### Tire inflation pressures at max. speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h



In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph/160 km/h, please observe, and, if necessary, adjust tire pressures for speeds exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h from the relevant table on the following pages. Otherwise, tire damage and accidents could occur.◀

For speeds over 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 291, and adjust as necessary.

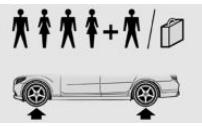
### Tire inflation pressure values over 100 mph/160 km/h

#### 740Le xDrive iPerformance Without high-speed tuning feature

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
245/50 R 18 100 V M+S A/S RSC	2.5/36	2.7/39
245/50 R 18 100 H M+S RSC		

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
245/45 R 19 102 V M+S XL A/S RSC	2.7/39	2.9/42
245/45 R 19 102 V M+S XL RSC		
Front: 245/45 R 19 98 Y RSC	2.5/36	-
Rear: 275/40 R 19 101 Y RSC	-	2.5/36
Front: 245/35 R 21 96 Y XL RSC	3.0/44	-
Rear: 275/30 R 21 98 Y XL RSC	-	3.0/44
Emergency wheel: T 135/80 R 18 104 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2/60	

With high-speed tuning feature

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
245/50 R 18 100 H M+S RSC	2.5/36	2.7/39
245/45 R 19 102 V M+S XL RSC	2.9/42	3.1/45
Front: 245/45 R 19 98 Y RSC	2.7/39	-
Rear: 275/40 R 19 101 Y RSC	-	2.7/39

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Front: 245/35 R 21 96 Y XL RSC	3.3/48	-
Rear: 275/30 R 21 98 Y XL RSC	-	3.3/48
Emergency wheel: T 135/80 R 18 104 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2/60	

## Tire identification marks

### Tire size

245/45 R 18 96 Y

245: nominal width in mm

45: aspect ratio in %

R: radial tire code

18: rim diameter in inches

96: load rating, not for ZR tires

Y: speed rating, before the R on ZR tires

### Maximum tire load

Maximum tire load is the maximum permissible weight for which the tire is approved.

Locate the maximum tire load on the tire sidewall and the Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR – on the certification label on the driver door B-pillar. Divide the tire load by 1.1. It must be greater than one-half of the vehicle's Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR. Note, front vs. rear GAWR and tire loads, respectively.

### Speed letter

Q = up to 100 mph/160 km/h

R = up to 106 mph/170 km/h

S = up to 112 mph/180 km/h

T = up to 118 mph/190 km/h  
 H = up to 131 mph/210 km/h  
 V = up to 150 mph/240 km/h  
 W = up to 167 mph/270 km/h  
 Y = up to 186 mph/300 km/h

## Tire Identification Number

DOT code: DOT xxxx xxx 2117

xxxx: manufacturer code for the tire brand

xxx: tire size and tire design

2117: tire age

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

## Tire age

### Recommendation

Regardless of the tire tread, replace tires at least every 6 years.

### Manufacture date

You can find the manufacture date of the tire on the tire's sidewall.

Designation	Manufacture date
DOT ... 2117	21st week of 2017

## Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

E.g.: Treadwear 200; Traction AA; Temperature A

## DOT Quality Grades

Treadwear

Traction AA A B C

Temperature A B C

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

## Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. E.g., a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half, 1 g, times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

## Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.

Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

## Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger vehicle tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades Band A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.



## WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.◀

## RSC – Run-flat tires

Run-flat tires, refer to page 296, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the sidewall.

## M+S

Winter and all-season tires with better cold weather performance than summer tires.

## Tire tread

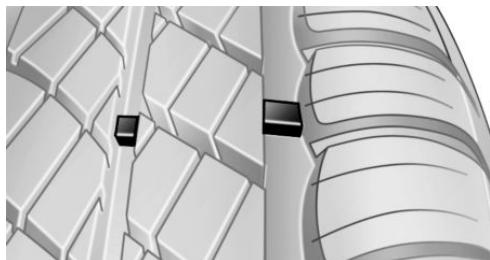
### Summer tires

Do not drive with a tire tread of less than 0.12 in/3 mm, otherwise there is an increased risk of hydroplaning.

### Winter tires

Do not drive with a tire tread of less than 0.16 in/4 mm, as such tires are less suitable for winter operation.

### Minimum tread depth



Wear indicators are distributed around the tire's circumference and have the legally re-

quired minimum height of 0.063 inches/1.6 mm.

The positions of the wear indicators are marked on the tire sidewall with TWI, Tread Wear Indicator.

## Tire damage

### General information

Inspect your tires regularly for damage, foreign objects lodged in the tread, and tread wear.

Driving over rough or damaged road surfaces, as well as debris, curbs and other obstacles can cause serious damage to wheels, tires and suspension parts. This is more likely to occur with low-profile tires, which provide less cushioning between the wheel and the road. Be careful to avoid road hazards and reduce your speed, especially if your vehicle is equipped with low-profile tires.

Indications of tire damage or other vehicle malfunctions:

- ▷ Unusual vibrations.
- ▷ Unusual tire or running noises.
- ▷ Unusual handling such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.

Damage can be caused by the following situations, for instance:

- ▷ Driving over curbs.
- ▷ Road damage.
- ▷ Tire inflation pressure too low.
- ▷ Vehicle overloading.
- ▷ Incorrect tire storage.

### Safety information



## WARNING

Damaged tires can lose tire inflation pressure, which can lead to loss of vehicle control. There is a risk of an accident. If tire damage is suspected while driving, immediately reduce speed and stop. Have wheels and

tires checked. For this purpose, drive carefully to the nearest dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Have vehicle towed or transported as needed.◀

#### **WARNING**

Damaged tires can lose tire inflation pressure, which can lead to loss of vehicle control. There is a risk of an accident. Do not repair damaged tires, but have them replaced.◀

#### **WARNING**

Tires can become damaged by driving over obstacles, e.g., curbs or road damage, at high speed. Larger wheels have a smaller tire cross-section. The smaller the tire cross-section, the higher the risk of tire damage. There is a danger of accidents and property damage. If possible, drive around obstacles, or drive over them slowly and carefully.◀

Following tire damage, have the original wheel/tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

## **Safety information**

#### **WARNING**

Wheels and tires which are not suitable for your vehicle can damage parts of the vehicle, for instance due to contact with the body due to tolerances despite the same official size rating. There is a risk of an accident. The manufacturer of your vehicle strongly suggests that you use wheels and tires that have been recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for your vehicle type.◀

#### **WARNING**

Mounted steel wheels can cause technical problems, e.g., independent loosening of the lug bolts, damage to the brake discs. There is a risk of an accident. Do not mount steel wheels.◀

## **Recommended tire brands**



For each tire size, the manufacturer of the vehicle recommends certain tire brands. The tire brands can be identified by a star on the tire sidewall.

## **New tires**

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand-new; they achieve their full traction potential after a break-in time.

# **Changing wheels and tires**

## **Mounting and wheel balancing**

Have mounting and wheel balancing carried out by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## **Wheel and tire combination**

### **General information**

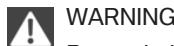
You can ask the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop about the correct wheel/tire combination and wheel rim versions for the vehicle.

Incorrect wheel/tire combinations impair the function of a variety of systems such as ABS or DSC.

To maintain good handling and vehicle response, use only tires with a single tread configuration from a single manufacturer.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

## Retreaded tires



Retreaded tires can have different tire casing structures. With advanced age the service life can be limited. There is a risk of an accident. The manufacturer of your vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.◀

The manufacturer of your vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

## Winter tires

### General information

Winter tires are recommended for operating on winter roads.

Although so-called all-season M+S tires provide better winter traction than summer tires, they usually do not provide the same level of performance as winter tires.

### Maximum speed of winter tires

If the maximum speed of the vehicle is higher than the permissible speed for the winter tires, then attach a label showing the permissible maximum speed in the field of view. The label is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

With winter tires mounted, observe and do not exceed the permissible maximum speed.

### Run-flat tires

If you are already using run-flat tires, for your own safety you should replace them only with the same kind. No spare tire is available in the case of a flat tire. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Rotating wheels between axles

Different wear patterns can occur on the front and rear axles depending on individual driving conditions. The tires can be rotated in pairs between the axles to achieve even wear. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. After rotating, check the tire pressure and correct, if needed.

Rotating the tires is not permissible on vehicles with different tire sizes or rim sizes on the front and rear axles.

## Storing tires

### Air pressure

Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the side wall of the tire.

### Storage

Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry and dark place.

Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease, and solvents.

Do not leave tires in plastic bags.

Remove dirt from wheels or tires.

## Run-flat tires

### Concept

Run-flat tires permit continued driving under restricted conditions even in the event of a complete loss of tire inflation pressure.

### General information

The wheels consist of tires that are self-supporting, to a limited degree, and possibly special rims.

The support of the sidewall allows the tire to remain drivable to a restricted degree in the event of a tire inflation pressure loss.

Follow the instructions for continued driving with a flat tire.

## Safety information

### WARNING

Your vehicle handles differently with a run-flat with no or low inflation pressure; for instance, your lane stability when braking is reduced, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of an accident.

Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.◀

## Label



The tires are marked on the tire sidewall with RSC Run-flat System Component.

## Repairing a flat tire

### Safety measures

- ▷ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.
- ▷ Switch on the hazard warning system.
- ▷ Secure the vehicle against rolling away by setting the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- ▷ Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain out-

side the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.

- ▷ If necessary, set up a warning triangle at an appropriate distance.

## Mobility System

### Concept

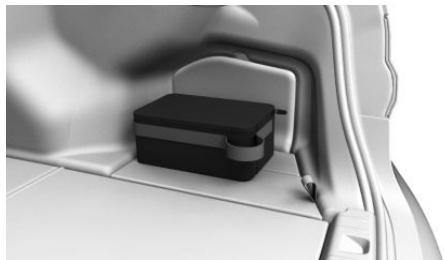
With the Mobility System, minor tire damage can be sealed temporarily to enable continued travel. To accomplish this, sealant is pumped into the tires, which seals the damage from the inside.

### General information

- ▷ Follow the instructions on using the Mobility System found on the compressor and sealant container.
- ▷ Use of the Mobility System may be ineffective if the tire puncture measures approx. 1/8 inches/4 mm or more.
- ▷ Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop if the tire cannot be made drivable.
- ▷ If possible, do not remove foreign bodies that have penetrated the tire. Only remove foreign objects if they are visibly protruding from the tire.
- ▷ Pull the speed limit sticker off the sealant container and apply it to the steering wheel.
- ▷ The use of a sealant can damage the TPM wheel electronics. In this case, have the electronics checked and replaced at the next opportunity.
- ▷ The compressor can be used to check the tire inflation pressure.

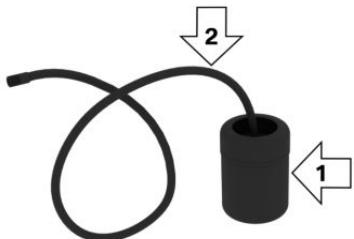
## Overview

### Storage



The Mobility System is in a bag on the right side of the cargo area.

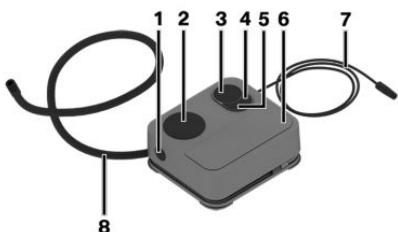
### Sealant container



- ▷ Sealant container, arrow 1.
- ▷ Filling hose, arrow 2.

Observe use-by date on the sealant container.

### Compressor



- 1 Sealant container unlocking
- 2 Sealant container holder
- 3 Tire pressure gage

- 4 Reduce tire inflation pressure button
- 5 On/off switch
- 6 Compressor
- 7 Connector/cable for socket
- 8 Connection hose

### Safety measures

- ▷ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.
- ▷ Switch on the hazard warning system.
- ▷ Secure the vehicle against rolling away by setting the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- ▷ Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
- ▷ If necessary, set up a warning triangle at an appropriate distance.

### Filling the tire with sealant

#### Safety information



#### DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can enter into the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.◀



#### NOTE

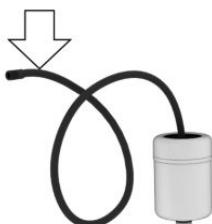
The compressor can overheat during extended operation. There is a risk of property damage. Do not run the compressor for more than 10 min.◀

## Filling

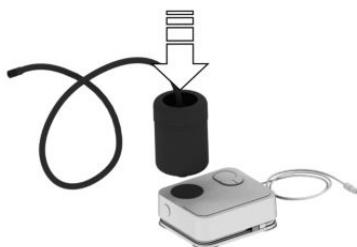
1. Shake the sealant container.



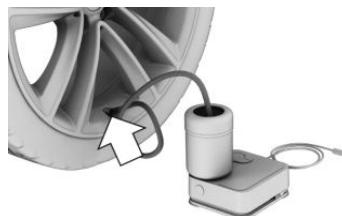
2. Pull filling hose completely out of the cover of the sealant container. Do not kink the hose.



3. Slide the sealant container into the holder on the compressor housing, ensuring that it engages audibly.



4. Screw the filling hose of the sealant container onto the tire valve of the nonworking wheel.



5. With the compressor switched off, insert the plug into the power socket inside the vehicle.



6. With standby state switched on or the engine running, switch on the compressor.



Let the compressor run for max. 10 minutes to fill the tire with sealant and achieve a tire inflation pressure of approx. 2.5 bar.

While the tire is being filled with sealant, the tire inflation pressure may sporadically reach approx. 5 bar. Do not switch off the compressor at this point.

## Checking and adjusting the tire inflation pressure

### Checking

1. Switch off the compressor.
2. Read the tire inflation pressure on the tire pressure gage.

To continue the trip, a tire inflation pressure of at least 2 bar must be reached.

4. Insert the connector into the power socket inside the vehicle.



### Removing and stowing the sealant container

1. Unscrew the filling hose of the sealant container from the tire valve.
2. Press the red unlocking device.
3. Remove the sealant container from the compressor.
4. Wrap and store the sealant container in suitable material to avoid dirtying the cargo area.

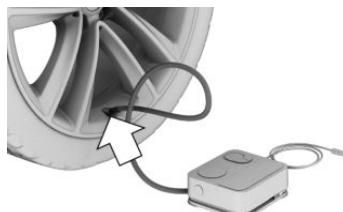
5. With standby state switched on or the engine running, switch on the compressor. If a tire inflation pressure of at least 2 bar cannot be reached, contact your dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

If a tire inflation pressure of at least 2 bar is reached, see Minimum tire inflation pressure is reached.

6. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the tire valve.
7. Pull the connector out of the power socket inside the vehicle.
8. Stow the Mobility System in the vehicle.

### Minimum tire inflation pressure is not reached

1. Pull the connector out of the power socket inside the vehicle.
2. Drive 33 ft/10 m forward and back to distribute the sealant in the tire.
3. Screw the connection hose of the compressor directly onto the tire valve stem.



### Minimum tire inflation pressure is reached

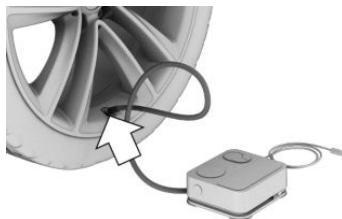
1. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the tire valve.
2. Pull the connector out of the power socket inside the vehicle.
3. Stow the Mobility System in the vehicle.
4. Immediately drive approx. 5 miles/10 km to ensure that the sealant is evenly distributed in the tire.

Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

If possible, do not drive at speeds less than 12 mph/20 km/h.

## Adjustment

1. Stop at a suitable location.
2. Screw the connection hose of the compressor directly onto the tire valve stem.



3. Insert the connector into the power socket inside the vehicle.



4. Correct the tire inflation pressure to at least 2.0 bar.
  - ▷ Increase tire inflation pressure: with standby state switched on or the engine running, switch on the compressor.
  - ▷ Reduce tire inflation pressure: press the button on the compressor.
5. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the tire valve.
6. Pull the connector out of the power socket inside the vehicle.
7. Stow the Mobility System in the vehicle.

## Continuing the trip

Do not exceed the maximum permissible speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 307.

Reset the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 302.

Replace the nonworking tire and the sealant container of the Mobility System promptly.

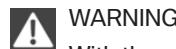
## Snow chains

### Fine-link snow chains

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends use of fine-link snow chains. Certain types of fine-link snow chains have been tested by the manufacturer of the vehicle and recommended as road-safe and suitable.

Information regarding suitable snow chains is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

### Use



#### WARNING

With the mounting of snow chains on unsuitable tires, the snow chains can come into contact with vehicle parts. There is a risk of accidents or risk of property damage. Only mount snow chains on tires that are designated by their manufacturer as suitable for the use of snow chains.◀

Use only in pairs on the rear wheels, equipped with the tires of the following size:

- ▷ 245/50 R 18.
- ▷ 245/45 R 19.

Follow the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

Make sure that the snow chains are always sufficiently tight. Re-tighten as needed according to the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

Do not initialize the run-flat tires after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

Do not reset the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

When driving with snow chains, briefly activate Dynamic Traction Control DTC to optimize the forward momentum.

### Maximum speed with snow chains

Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h when using snow chains.

### Rear axle steering during operation with snow chains

#### General information

In order to guarantee free running of the wheels when operating with snow chains, rear axle steering of the integral active steering must be switched off when snow chains are mounted.

#### Safety information

##### **WARNING**

When rear wheel steering is switched on and snow chains are mounted, there can be contact between snow chains and the chassis. There is a risk of accidents or risk of property damage. With mounted snow chains, switch off the rear wheel steering. 

### Switching off rear wheel steering

The rear wheel steering is switched off by specifying that snow chains are installed.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Tire chains"
4. "Tire chains installed"

Starting with the permissible maximum speed with snow chains of 30 mph/50 km/h the rear axle steering will be switched on again automatically.

## Tire Pressure Monitor TPM

### Concept

The system monitors tire inflation pressure in the four mounted tires. The system warns you if there is a loss of pressure in one or more tires.

### General information

Sensors in the tire valves measure the tire inflation pressure and tire temperature.

When operating the system, also note the additional information found in the Tire inflation pressure, refer to page 290, chapter.

### Functional requirements

The following conditions must be met for the system; otherwise, reliable flagging of a loss of tire inflation pressure is not assured:

- ▷ After a tire or wheel replacement, a reset was performed with the correct tire inflation pressure.
- ▷ After the tire inflation pressure was adjusted to a new value, a reset was performed.
- ▷ Wheels with TPM wheel electronics.

### Status display

#### Current status

The system status can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g., whether or not the system is active.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (!) "Tire Pressure Monitor"

The current status is displayed.

### Current tire temperature

Depending on the model, the current tire temperatures are displayed.

The current tire temperatures may change while driving or due to the external temperature.

## Tire conditions

### General information

Tire and system status are indicated by the color of the wheels and a SMS text message on the Control Display.

### All wheels green

The system is active and bases warnings on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

### One to four yellow wheels

A flat tire or major drop in the tire inflation pressure has occurred in the indicated tires.

### Gray wheels

It may not be possible to identify tire pressure losses.

Possible causes:

- ▷ Malfunction.
- ▷ The system is being reset.

## Performing a reset

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tire Pressure Monitor"
4. Switch on drive-ready state and do not drive off.
5. Reset tire inflation pressure: "Perform reset".
6. Drive away.

The wheels are displayed in gray and the following is displayed "Resetting Tire Pressure Monitor...".

After driving faster than 19 mph/30 km/h for a short period, the set tire inflation pressures are

accepted as the target tire inflation pressures. The reset is completed automatically while driving.

After a successfully completed reset, the wheels on the Control Display are shown in green and the following is displayed: "Tire Pressure Monitor active. See label for recommended pressures.".

You may interrupt this trip at any time. When you continue the reset resumes automatically.

## Messages

### General information

A low tire inflation pressure may cause the DSC Dynamic Stability Control to be switched on.

### Safety information

#### WARNING

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. Run-flat tires can maintain limited stability. There is a risk of an accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is equipped with normal tires. Follow the information on run-flat tires and continued driving with these tires.◀

### If a tire inflation pressure check is required

#### Message

A symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

**Symbol** Possible cause

Inflation was not carried out according to specifications, e.g., the tire has not been sufficiently inflated.

The system has detected a wheel change, but no reset was done.

The tire inflation pressure has fallen below the level of the last reset.

No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

**Measure**

1. Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.
2. Perform a system reset.

**If the tire inflation pressure is too low****Message**

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

**Symbol** Possible cause

There is a tire inflation pressure loss.

No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

**Measure**

1. Reduce the vehicle speed. Do not exceed a speed of 80 mph/130 km/h.
2. At the next opportunity, for instance at a gas station, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires and correct if necessary.

3. Reset the system.

**If there is a significant loss of tire inflation pressure****Message**

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with the affected tire appears in a Check Control message on the Control Display.

**Symbol** Possible cause

There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.

No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

**Measure**

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with normal tires or run-flat tires.

Run-flat tires, refer to page 296, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire's sidewall.

**Actions in the event of a flat tire****Normal tires**

1. Identify the damaged tire.

Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure gage of a flat tire kit.

If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been reset. In this case, perform the reset.

If tire damage cannot be found, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## 2. Repair the flat tire, e.g., with a flat tire kit or by changing the wheel.

Use of sealant, for instance from the flat tire kit, may damage the TPM wheel electronics. Have the electronics replaced at the next opportunity.

## Run-flat tires

### Safety information



#### WARNING

Your vehicle handles differently with a run-flat with no or low inflation pressure; for instance, your lane stability when braking is reduced, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of an accident.

Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.◀

### Maximum speed

You may continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

### Continued driving with a flat tire

Follow the following when continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
3. Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been reset. In this case, perform the reset.

### Possible driving range with a depressurized tire

The possible driving range varies depending on the how the vehicle is loaded and used, e.g., speed, road conditions, external temperature. The driving range may be less but may also be more if an economical driving style is used.

If the vehicle is loaded with an average weight and used under favorable conditions, its possible driving range will be up to 50 miles/80 km.

### Vehicle handling with damaged tires

Vehicles driven with a damaged tire will handle differently, potentially leading to conditions such as the following:

- ▶ Greater likelihood of swerving off course.
- ▶ Longer braking distances.
- ▶ Changed self-steering properties.

Modify your driving style. Avoid abrupt steering maneuvers or driving over obstacles, for instance curbs or potholes.

### Final tire failure

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire.

Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident.

Do not continue driving. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

### System limits

#### Temperature

The tire inflation pressure depends on the tire's temperature.

Driving or exposure to the sun will increase the tire's temperature, thus increasing the tire inflation pressure.

The tire inflation pressure is reduced when the tire temperature falls again.

These circumstances may cause a warning when temperatures fall very sharply.

### Sudden tire pressure loss

The system cannot indicate sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances.

### Failure to perform a reset

The system does not function properly if a reset has not been carried out, for instance a flat tire is reported though tire inflation pressures are correct.

## Malfunction

### Message

 The yellow warning light flashes and is then illuminated continuously. A Check Control message is displayed. It may not be possible to identify tire pressure losses.

### Measure

- ▷ A wheel without TPM wheel electronics is mounted: have the wheels checked, if needed.
- ▷ Malfunction: have the system checked.
- ▷ Interference caused by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.
- ▷ The system was unable to complete the reset. Perform a system reset again.

### Declaration according to NHTSA/ FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Each tire, including the spare (if provided) should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the

proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.) As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale. Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

# FTM Flat Tire Monitor

## Concept

The system detects tire inflation pressure loss on the basis of rotation speed differences between the individual wheels while driving.

In the event of a tire inflation pressure loss, the diameter and therefore the rotational speed of the corresponding wheel changes. The difference will be detected and reported as a flat tire.

The system does not measure the actual inflation pressure in the tires.

## Functional requirements

The following conditions must be met for the system; otherwise, reliable flagging of a loss of tire inflation pressure is not assured:

- ▷ After a tire or wheel replacement, an initialization was performed with the correct tire inflation pressure.
- ▷ After the tire inflation pressure was adjusted to a new value, an initialization was performed.

## Status display

The current status of the flat tire monitor can be displayed, e.g., whether the RPA is active.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (1) "Flat Tire Monitor"

The status is displayed.

## Initialization required

An initialization must be performed in the following situations:

- ▷ After the tire inflation pressure has been adjusted.
- ▷ After a tire or wheel replacement.

## Performing initialization

When initializing, the set tire inflation pressures serve as reference values in order to detect a flat tire. Initialization is started by confirming the tire inflation pressures.

Do not initialize the system when driving with snow chains.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Flat Tire Monitor"
4. Switch on drive-ready state and do not drive off.
5. Start the initialization with: "Perform reset"
6. Drive away.

The initialization is completed while driving, which can be interrupted at any time.

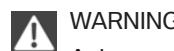
The initialization automatically continues when driving resumes.

## Messages

### General information

When a flat tire is indicated, DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if needed.

### Safety information



#### WARNING

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. Run-flat tires can maintain limited stability. There is a risk of an accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is equipped with normal tires. Follow the information on run-flat tires and continued driving with these tires.◀

### Indication of a flat tire



A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

#### Symbol Possible cause



There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.

#### Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with normal tires or run-flat tires.

Run-flat tires, refer to page 296, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire's sidewall.

#### Actions in the event of a flat tire

##### Normal tires

1. Identify the damaged tire.

To do this, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure gage of a flat tire kit.

If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

If identification of flat tire damage is not possible, please contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

2. Repair the flat tire, e.g., with a flat tire kit or by changing the wheel.

##### Run-flat tires

##### Safety information



##### WARNING

Your vehicle handles differently with a run-flat with no or low inflation pressure; for instance, your lane stability when braking is reduced, braking distances are longer and the

self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of an accident.

Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.◀

#### Maximum speed

You may continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

#### Continued driving with a flat tire

Follow the following when continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
3. Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

#### Possible driving range with a depressurized tire

The possible driving range varies depending on the how the vehicle is loaded and used, e.g., speed, road conditions, external temperature.

The driving range may be less but may also be more if an economical driving style is used.

If the vehicle is loaded with an average weight and used under favorable conditions, its possible driving range will be up to 50 miles/80 km.

#### Vehicle handling with damaged tires

Vehicles driven with a damaged tire will handle differently, potentially leading to conditions such as the following:

- ▷ Greater likelihood of swerving off course.
- ▷ Longer braking distances.
- ▷ Changed self-steering properties.

Modify your driving style. Avoid abrupt steering maneuvers or driving over obstacles, for instance curbs or potholes.

### Final tire failure

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire.

Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident.

Do not continue driving. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

### System limits

The system could be delayed or malfunction in the following situations:

- ▷ A natural, even tire inflation pressure loss in all four tires will not be recognized. Therefore, check the tire inflation pressure regularly.
- ▷ Sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances cannot be recognized in advance.
- ▷ When the system has not been initialized.
- ▷ When driving on a snowy or slippery road surface.
- ▷ Sporty driving style: spinning traction wheels, high lateral acceleration (drifting).
- ▷ When driving with snow chains.

## Changing wheels/tires

### General information

When using run-flat tires or a flat tire kit, a wheel does not always need to be changed immediately when there is a loss of tire inflation pressure due to a flat tire.

If needed, the tools for changing wheels are available as accessories from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

### Safety information

#### DANGER

The vehicle jack is only provided for short-term lifting of the vehicle for wheel changes. Even if all safety measures are observed, there is a risk of the raised vehicle falling, if the vehicle jack tilts over. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. If the vehicle is raised, do not lie under the vehicle and do not start the engine.◀

#### WARNING

The vehicle jack is provided by the vehicle manufacturer for changing wheels in the event of a flat tire. The vehicle jack is not designed for frequent use, for instance for changing from summer to winter tires. Using the vehicle jack frequently may cause it to jam or become damaged. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only use the vehicle jack to change an emergency wheel or a spare tire in the event of a flat tire.◀

#### WARNING

On soft, uneven or slippery ground, for example snow, ice, tiles, etc., the vehicle jack can slip away. There is a risk of injury. If possible, change the wheel on a flat, solid, and slip-resistant surface.◀

#### WARNING

The vehicle jack is optimized for lifting the vehicle and for the jacking points on the vehicle only. There is a risk of injury. Do not lift any other vehicle or cargo using the vehicle jack.◀

#### WARNING

If the vehicle jack is not inserted into the jacking point provided for this purpose, the vehicle may be damaged or the vehicle jack may slip when it is being cranked up. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. When cranking up the vehicle jack, ensure that it is

inserted in the jacking point next to the wheel housing.◀

### **⚠ WARNING**

A vehicle that is raised on a vehicle jack may fall off of the jack if lateral forces are exerted on it. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. While the vehicle is raised, do not exert lateral forces on the vehicle or pull abruptly on the vehicle. Have a stuck wheel removed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◀

### **⚠ WARNING**

Incorrect handling of the vehicle jack can damage the vehicle's underbody and expose high-voltage components. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. When cranking up the vehicle jack, ensure that it is inserted in the jacking point next to the wheel housing. Make sure not to damage any of the underbody paneling parts.◀

## Securing the vehicle against rolling

### General information

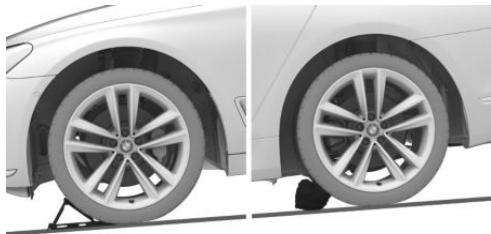
The vehicle manufacturer recommends to additionally secure the vehicle against rolling away when changing a wheel.

### On a level surface



Place wheel chocks or other suitable objects in front and behind the wheel that is diagonal to the wheel to be changed.

### On a slight downhill gradient



If you need to change a wheel on a slight downhill grade, place chocks and other suitable objects, for instance a rock, under the wheels of both the front and rear axles against the rolling direction.

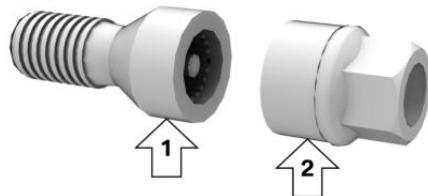
## Lug bolt lock

### Concept

The wheel lug bolts have a special coding. The lug bolts can only be released with the adapter which matches the coding.

### Overview

The adapter of the lug bolt lock is in the on-board vehicle tool kit or in a storage compartment close to the onboard vehicle tool kit.



▷ Lug bolt, arrow 1.

▷ Adapter, arrow 2.

### Unscrewing

1. Attach the adapter to the lug bolt.
2. Unscrew the lug bolt.

3. Remove the adapter after unscrewing the lug bolt.

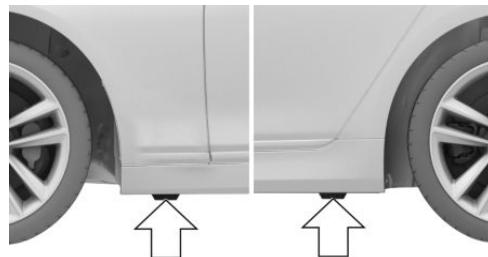
### Screwing on

1. Attach the adapter to the lug bolt. If necessary, turn the adapter until it fits on the lug bolt.
2. Screw on the lug bolt. The tightening torque is 140 Nm.
3. Remove the adapter and stow it after screwing on the lug bolt.

### Preparing the vehicle

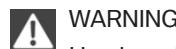
- ▷ Park the vehicle on solid and non-slip ground at a safe distance from traffic.
- ▷ Switch on the hazard warning system.
- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ Engage a gear or move the selector lever to position P.
- ▷ As soon as permitted by the traffic flow, have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
- ▷ Depending on the vehicle equipment, get wheel change tools and, if necessary, the emergency wheel from the vehicle.
- ▷ If necessary, set up a warning triangle or portable hazard warning light at an appropriate distance.
- ▷ Do not place wood blocks or similar items under the vehicle jack; otherwise, it cannot reach its carrying capacity because of the restricted height.
- ▷ Secure the vehicle additionally against rolling.
- ▷ Loosen the lug bolts a half turn.
- ▷ Deactivate the air suspension level adjustment, refer to page 226.

### Jacking points for the vehicle jack



The jacking points for the vehicle jack are located at the indicated positions.

### Jacking up the vehicle

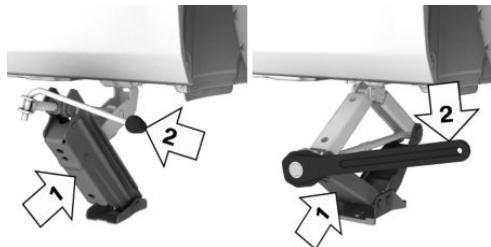


#### WARNING

Hands and fingers can be jammed when using the vehicle jack. There is a risk of injury. Comply with the described hand position and

do not change this position while using the vehicle jack. ◀

1. Hold the vehicle jack with one hand, arrow 1, and grasp the vehicle jack crank or lever with your other hand, arrow 2.



2. Insert the vehicle jack into the rectangular recess of the jacking point closest to the wheel to be changed.



3. Extend the vehicle jack by turning the vehicle jack crank or lever clockwise.



4. Take your hand away from the vehicle jack as soon as the vehicle jack is under load and continue turning the vehicle jack crank or lever with one hand.

5. Make sure that the vehicle jack foot is extended vertically.



6. Make sure that the vehicle jack foot stands vertically and perpendicularly beneath the jacking point after extending the vehicle jack.



7. Crank the vehicle up, until the vehicle jack is with the entire surface on the ground and the relevant wheel is maximum 1.2 inches/3 cm above ground.

## Mounting a wheel

Mount one emergency wheel only, as required.

1. Unscrew the lug bolts.
2. Remove the wheel.
3. Put the new wheel or emergency wheel on and screw in at least two lug bolts in a crosswise pattern until hand-tight.
- If non-original light-alloy wheels of the vehicle manufacturer are mounted, the accompanying lug bolts may have to be used as well.
4. Hand-tighten the remaining lug bolts and tighten all lug bolts well in a crosswise pattern.

5. Turn the vehicle jack crank counterclockwise to retract the vehicle jack and lower the vehicle.
6. Remove the vehicle jack and stow it securely.

## After the wheel change

1. Tighten the lug bolts crosswise. The tightening torque is 101 lb ft/140 Nm.
2. Stow the nonworking wheel in the cargo area, if necessary.

The nonworking wheel cannot be stored under the cargo floor panel because of its size.
3. Check tire inflation pressure at the next opportunity and correct as needed.
4. Reinitialize the run-flat tires.

Reset the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM.
5. Check to make sure the lug bolts are tight with a calibrated torque wrench.
6. Have the damaged tire replaced at the nearest dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

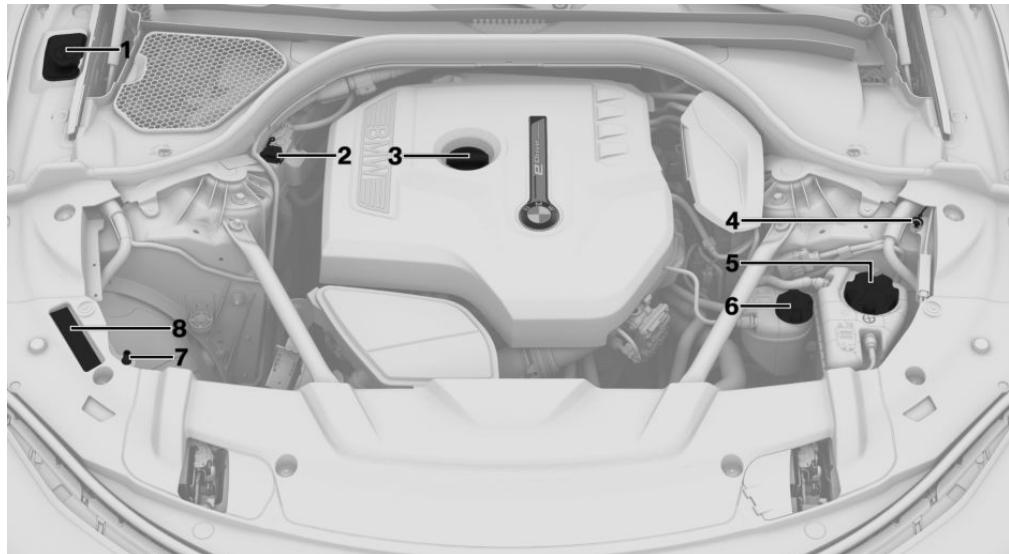
# Engine compartment

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due

to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

## Important features in the engine compartment



- 1 Filler neck for washer fluid
- 2 Jump-starting, positive battery terminal
- 3 Oil filler neck
- 4 Manual unlocking, charging cable

- 5 Coolant reservoir, engine
- 6 Coolant reservoir, auxiliary cooling
- 7 Jump-starting, negative battery terminal
- 8 Vehicle identification number

## Hood

### Safety information



Improperly executed work in the engine compartment can damage vehicle components and impair vehicle functions. There is a

risk of personal and property damage. The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that, in the effort to avoid such risks, work in the engine compartment be performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◀



### WARNING

The engine compartment accommodates moving components. Certain components in the engine compartment can also move with the vehicle switched off, for instance the radiator fan. There is a risk of injury. Do not reach into the area of moving parts. Keep articles of clothing and hair away from moving parts.◀



### WARNING

There are protruding parts, for instance locking hook, on the inside of the hood. There is a risk of injury. If the hood is open, pay attention to protruding parts and keep clear of these areas.◀



### WARNING

An incorrectly locked hood can open while driving and restrict visibility. There is a risk of an accident. Stop immediately and correctly close the hood.◀



### WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when opening and closing the hood. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the hood is clear during opening and closing.◀



### NOTE

Folded-away wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.◀

## Opening

1. Pull lever, arrow 1.

Hood is unlocked.

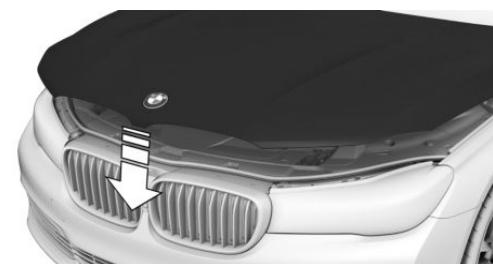


2. After the lever is released, pull the lever again, arrow 2.

Hood can be opened.

3. Be careful of protruding parts on the hood.

## Closing



Let the hood drop from a height of approx. 16 inches/40 cm and push down on it to lock it fully.

The hood must engage on both sides.

# Engine oil

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

## General information

The engine oil consumption is dependent on the driving style and driving conditions.

Therefore, regularly check the engine oil level after refueling by taking a detailed measurement.

The engine oil consumption can increase in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ Sporty driving style.
- ▷ Break-in of the engine.
- ▷ Idling of the engine.
- ▷ With use of engine oil types that are classified as not suitable.

Different Check Control messages appear on the Control Display depending on the engine oil level.

## Safety information



### NOTE

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of property damage. Immediately add engine oil.◀



### NOTE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of property damage. Do not add too much engine oil. When too much engine oil is added, have oil level corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◀

## Electronic oil measurement

### General information

The electronic oil measurement has two measuring principles:

- ▷ Monitoring.
- ▷ Detailed measurement.

When making frequent short-distance trips or using a dynamic driving style, for instance when taking curves aggressively, regularly perform a detailed measurement.

### Monitoring

#### Concept

The engine oil level is monitored electronically while driving and can be shown on the Control Display.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is displayed.



A red indicator light indicates that the engine oil pressure is too low.

### Functional requirements

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of normal driving with the combustion engine running.

## Displaying the engine oil level

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Engine oil level"

The engine oil level is displayed.

## System limits

When making frequent short-distance trips or using a dynamic driving style, it may not be possible to calculate a measured value. In this case, the measured value for the last, sufficiently long trip is displayed.

## Detailed measurement

### Concept

The engine oil level is checked when the vehicle is stationary and displayed via a scale.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is displayed.

### General information

During the measurement, the idle speed is increased somewhat.

### Functional requirements

- ▷ Vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- ▷ Drive-ready state is established.
- ▷ Selector lever in selector lever position N or P and accelerator pedal not depressed.
- ▷ The combustion engine is at operating temperature.

### Performing a detailed measurement

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Engine oil level"

4. "Measure engine oil level"

5. "Start measurement"

The engine oil level is checked and displayed via a scale.

## Adding engine oil

### General information

Only add engine oil when the message is displayed in the instrument cluster. The quantity to be added is indicated in the message shown on the Control Display.

Only add suitable types of engine oil, refer to page [318](#).

Safely park the vehicle and switch off drive-ready state before adding engine oil.

Take care not to add too much engine oil.

### Safety information

#### WARNING

Operating materials, e.g., oils, greases, coolants, fuels, can contain harmful ingredients. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Observe the instructions on the containers. Avoid the contact of articles of clothing, skin or eyes with operating materials. Do not refill operating materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children.◀

#### NOTE

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of property damage. Immediately add engine oil.◀

#### NOTE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of property damage. Do not add too much engine oil. When too much engine oil is added, have oil level corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◀

## Overview

The oil filler neck is located in the engine compartment, refer to page 314.

## Adding engine oil

1. Open the hood, refer to page 315.
2. Turn the lid counterclockwise.



3. Add engine oil.

## Engine oil types to add

### General information

The engine oil quality is critical for the life of the engine.

### Safety information



#### NOTE

Oil additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of property damage. Do not use oil additives.◀



#### NOTE

Incorrect engine oil can cause malfunctions in the engine or damage it. There is a risk of property damage. When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil has the correct oil rating.◀

### Suitable engine oil types

Add engine oils that meet the following oil rating standards:

#### Gasoline engine

BMW Longlife-01 FE.

BMW Longlife-14 FE+.

The oil rating BMW Longlife-14 FE+ is only suitable for particular gasoline engines.

More information about suitable engine oil ratings and viscosities of engine oils can be requested from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

### Alternative engine oil types

If an engine oil suitable for continuous use is not available, up to 1 US quart/liter of an engine oil with the following oil rating can be added:

#### Gasoline engine

BMW Longlife-01.

API SL, API SM, or API SN.

### Viscosity grades

Gasoline engine:

When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil has the viscosity grade SAE 0W-30 or SAE 0W-20. The suitable viscosity grade is indicated on a label in the engine compartment.

Viscosity class SAE 0W-20 is only suitable for particular engines.

More information about suitable engine oil ratings and viscosities of engine oils can be requested from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Engine oil change



#### NOTE

Engine oil that is not changed in timely fashion can cause increased engine wear and thus engine damage. There is a risk of property

damage. Do not exceed the service data indicated in the vehicle.◀

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop change the engine oil.

BMW recommends  
**Original BMW Engine Oil.**

# Coolant

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

## General information

Coolant consists of water and additives.

Not all commercially available additives are suitable for the vehicle. Information about suitable additives is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Safety information

### **WARNING**

With the engine hot and the cooling system open, coolant can escape and lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury. Only open the cooling system with the engine cooled down.◀

### **WARNING**

Additives are harmful and incorrect additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not allow additives to come into contact with skin, eyes or articles of clothing. Use suitable additives only.◀

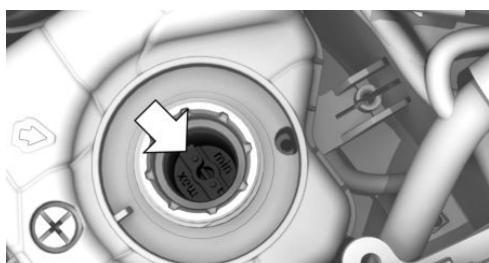
## Coolant level

### General information

The vehicle features two cooling circuits. Always check the coolant levels of both coolant reservoirs and refill as needed.

### Checking the coolant level in the filler neck

1. Let the engine cool.
2. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.
3. Open the coolant reservoir lid.
4. The coolant level is correct if it lies between the minimum and maximum marks in the filler neck.



### Adding

1. Let the engine cool.
2. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.
3. Open the coolant reservoir lid.
4. If the coolant is low, slowly add coolant up to the specified level; do not overfill.
5. Close the cap.
6. Have the cause of the coolant loss eliminated as soon as possible.

## Disposal



Comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant and coolant additives.

# Maintenance

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

## BMW maintenance system

The maintenance system indicates required maintenance measures, and thereby provides support in maintaining road safety and the operational reliability of the vehicle.

In some cases, scopes and intervals may vary according to the country-specific version. Replacement work, spare parts, fuels and lubricants, and wear materials are calculated separately. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Condition Based Service CBS

### Concept

Sensors and special algorithms take into account the driving conditions of the vehicle. CBS uses these to calculate the need for maintenance.

The system makes it possible to adapt the amount of maintenance corresponding to your user profile.

### General information

Information on service requirements, refer to page 139, can be displayed on the Control Display.

### Service data in the remote control

Information on the required maintenance is continuously stored in the remote control. The dealer's service center can read this data out and suggest a maintenance scope for the vehicle.

Therefore, hand the service advisor the remote control with which the vehicle was driven most recently.

### Storage periods

Storage periods during which the vehicle battery was disconnected are not taken into account.

If this occurs, have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop update the time-dependent maintenance procedures, such as checking brake fluid and, if necessary, changing the engine oil and the microfilter/activated-charcoal filter.

## Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

Please consult your Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models for additional information on service requirements.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that maintenance and repair be performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified

service center or repair shop. Records of regular maintenance and repair work should be retained.

## Socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis

### Safety information



#### NOTE

The socket for Onboard Diagnosis is an intricate component intended to be used in conjunction with specialized equipment to check the vehicle's primary emissions system. Improper use of the socket for Onboard Diagnosis, or contact with the socket for Onboard Diagnosis for other than its intended purpose, can cause vehicle malfunctions and creates risks of personal and property damage. Given the foregoing, the manufacturer of your vehicle strongly recommends that access to the socket for Onboard Diagnosis be limited to a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or other persons that have the specialized training and equipment for purposes of properly utilizing the socket for Onboard Diagnosis.◀

### Position



There is an OBD socket on the driver's side for checking the primary components in the vehicle's emissions.

## Emissions



- ▶ The warning lamp lights up: Emissions are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.
- ▶ The warning lamp flashes under certain circumstances:  
This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.  
Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

# Replacing components

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

## Onboard vehicle tool kit



The onboard vehicle tool kit is located in the left storage compartment of the cargo area.

Remove charging cable as needed.

## Wiper blade replacement

### Safety information



#### NOTE

If the wiper arm falls onto the windshield without the wiper blades installed, the windshield can be damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Secure the wiper arm when replacing the wiper blades and do not fold down the wipers without the wiper blades installed.◀



#### NOTE

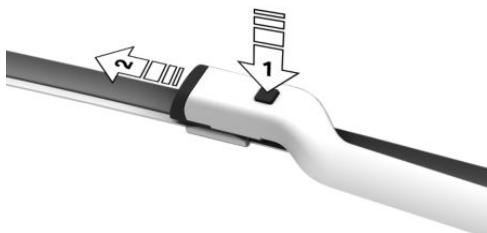
Folded-away wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.◀

### Replacing the front wiper blades

1. To change the wiper blades, fold up the wiper arms, refer to page 120.
2. Lift the wiper all the way off of the windshield.



3. Press button, arrow 1, and pull out the wiper blade, arrow 2.



4. Insert the new wiper blade and press it on until it you hear it snap into the holder.
5. Fold down the wipers.

## Lights and bulbs

### General information

Lights and bulbs make an essential contribution to vehicle safety.

All headlights and lights are made using LED or laser technology.

Some items of equipment use light-emitting diodes installed behind a cover as a light source. These light-emitting diodes, which are related to conventional lasers, are officially designated as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you let a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop perform the work in case of a malfunction.

### Safety information



#### WARNING

Focused laser light can irritate or permanently damage the retina of the eye. There is a risk of injury. The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that the work on the lighting system including bulb replacement be performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◀



#### WARNING

Too intensive brightness can irritate or damage the retina of the eye. There is a risk of injury. Do not look directly into the headlights or other light sources. Do not remove the LED covers.◀

### Headlight glass

Condensation can form on the inside of the external lights in cool or humid weather. When driving with the lights switched on, the condensation evaporates after a short time. The headlight glass does not need to be changed.

If despite driving with the headlights switched on, increasing humidity forms, for instance water droplets in the light, have the headlights checked.

## Vehicle battery

### General information

The battery is maintenance-free.

The added amount of acid is sufficient for the service life of the battery.

More information about the battery can be requested from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that you have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop register the vehicle battery to the vehicle after the battery has been replaced. Once the battery has been registered again, all comfort features will be available without restriction and any Check Control messages displayed which relate to comfort features will disappear.

### Safety information



#### NOTE

Vehicle batteries that are not compatible can damage vehicle systems and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of personal and property damage. Only vehicle batteries that are compatible with your vehicle type should be installed in your vehicle. Information on compatible vehicle batteries is available at your dealer's service center.◀

### Charging the battery

### General information

Make sure that the battery is always sufficiently charged to guarantee that the battery remains usable for its full service life.



A discharged battery is indicated by a red indicator light.

The battery may need to be charged in the following cases:

- ▷ When making frequent short-distance drives.

- ▶ If the vehicle is not used for more than a month.

## Safety information



### NOTE

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery can work with high voltages and currents, which means that the 12 volt on-board network can be overloaded or damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.◀

## Starting aid terminals

In the vehicle, only charge the battery via the starting aid terminals, refer to page [331](#), in the engine compartment with the engine off.

## Power failure

After a power loss, some equipment needs to be newly initialized or individual settings updated, for example:

- ▶ Memory function: store the positions again.
- ▶ Time: update.
- ▶ Date: update.
- ▶ Glass sunroof: initialize the system.

## Disposing of old batteries



Have old batteries disposed of by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or take them to a collection point.

Maintain the battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Secure the battery so that it does not tip over during transport.

## Fuses

### Safety information



### WARNING

Incorrect and repaired fuses can overload electrical lines and components. There is a risk of fire. Never attempt to repair a blown fuse. Do not replace a nonworking fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating.◀

## Replacing a fuse



Open the cover on the right side trim.

Information on the fuse types and locations is found on a separate sheet.

# Breakdown assistance

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

## Hazard warning flashers



The button is located in the center console. The red light in the button flashes when the hazard warning flashers are activated.

## Warning triangle



The warning triangle is located on the inside of the tailgate.

Press on the release, arrow 1, and swivel the cover down, arrow 2.

## First-aid kit

### General information

Some of the articles have a limited service life. Check the expiration dates of the first-aid kit contents regularly. Replace the articles prior to their expiration date.

### Storage



The first-aid kit is located under a cover on the left in the cargo area.

## Roadside Assistance

### General information

Roadside Assistance can be reached around the clock in many countries, and provides support in the event of a breakdown or an accident.

For more information, see the Integrated Owner's Manual, Online Owner's Manual, BMW Driver's Guide app or, if necessary, the Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication.

## Roadside Assistance

### Concept

BMW Roadside Assistance can be contacted if assistance is needed in the event of a breakdown.

### General information

In the event of a breakdown, data on the vehicle's condition are sent directly to Roadside Assistance.

Roadside Assistance can also be contacted via a Check Control message, refer to page 137.

### Requirements

- ▷ Active ConnectedDrive contract, equipment version with Intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- ▷ Cellular network reception.
- ▷ Ignition or standby state is switched on.

### Starting Roadside Assistance

If the vehicle is equipped with Teleservices, support is offered through Teleservice Diagnosis.

Using iDrive:

1. "ConnectedDrive"
2. "BMW Assist"
3. "BMW Roadside Assistance"

A voice connection is established.

### Teleservice Diagnosis

Teleservice Diagnosis enables the wireless transmission of detailed vehicle data that is important for vehicle diagnosis. This data is transmitted automatically.

A voice connection is established to Roadside Assistance.

### Starting Teleservice Help

Teleservice Help enables an in-depth diagnosis of the vehicle by Roadside Assistance via wireless transmission.

You can launch Teleservice Help by requesting it through Roadside Assistance.

1. Park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Set the parking brake.
3. Control Display is switched on.
4. "Teleservice Help"

The driving ability of the vehicle can be restored for specific functions.

If this is not possible, further measures will be initiated, for instance Roadside Assistance will be informed.

## BMW Accident Assistance

### Concept

BMW Group Accident Assistance can be contacted if assistance is needed in the event of an accident.

### General information

If the vehicle sensors detect a minor to moderately severe accident, which did not trigger any airbags, a Check Control message appears on the instrument cluster. In addition, a text message appears on the Control Display.

When BMW Accident Assistance is activated, data on the vehicle's condition is sent to BMW.

### Requirements

- ▷ Active ConnectedDrive contract, equipment version with Intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- ▷ Cellular network reception.
- ▷ Ignition or standby state is switched on.

## Starting BMW Accident Assistance

### If an accident is detected automatically

A text message prompting you to call BMW Accident Assistance appears on the Control Display.

The connection can be established directly: "BMW Accident Assist."

The Check Control message for BMW Accident Assistance can also be called up from the stored Check Control messages, refer to page 137, for a certain length of time.

### Starting manually

BMW Accident Assistance can also be contacted independently of the automatic accident detection function.

Using iDrive:

1. "ConnectedDrive"
2. "BMW Assist"
3. "BMW Accident Assistance"

Follow the displays on the Control Display. A voice connection is established.

4. "End call"
- The voice connection can be terminated.

## Intelligent emergency call

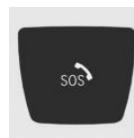
### Concept

In case of an emergency, an Emergency Request can be made through the system.

### General information

Only press the SOS button in an emergency. For technical reasons, the Emergency Request cannot be guaranteed under unfavorable conditions.

## Overview



SOS button in the roofliner.

### Functional requirements

- ▷ The SIM card integrated in the vehicle has been activated.
- ▷ Standby state is switched on.
- ▷ The Assist system is functional.

### Initiating an Emergency Request automatically

Under certain conditions, for instance if the airbags trigger, an Emergency Request is automatically initiated immediately after an accident of corresponding severity. Automatic Collision Notification is not affected by pressing the SOS button.

### Initiating an Emergency Request manually

1. Touch the cover.
2. Press the SOS button and hold until the LED on the microphone lights up green.

▷ The LED is illuminated green when an Emergency Request has been initiated. If a cancel prompt appears on the Control Display, the Emergency Request can be aborted.

If the situation allows, wait in your vehicle until the voice connection has been established.

- The LED flashes green when a connection to the BMW Response Center has been established.

The BMW Response Center then makes contact with you and takes further steps to help you.

Even if you are unable to respond, the BMW Response Center can take further steps to help you under certain circumstances.

For this, data is transmitted to the BMW Response Center which serves to determine the necessary rescue measures. E.g., the current position of the vehicle, if it can be established.

Even if you can no longer hear the BMW Response Center through the loudspeakers, the BMW Response Center may still be able to hear you.

The BMW Response Center ends the Emergency Request.

## What to do after an accident

### Safety information

#### WARNING

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. After an accident, do not touch any high-voltage components such as orange colored high-voltage cables or parts that are in contact with exposed high-voltage cables.◀

#### WARNING

Fluids in the high-voltage battery are corrosive. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch fluids escaping from the high-voltage battery.◀

### General information

After an accident, compliance with the following safety precautions is required with regard to the high-voltage system:

- Secure the crash site.
- Immediately notify rescue forces, police, or firefighters of the fact that your vehicle is equipped with a high-voltage system.
- Engage selector lever position P, set the parking brake and switch off operating and drive-ready state.
- Lock the vehicle after exiting.
- Do not inhale any gases escaping from the high-voltage battery; if needed, maintain a safe distance from the vehicle.

## Jump-starting

### General information

If the battery is discharged, the engine can be started using the battery of another vehicle and two jumper cables. Only use jumper cables with fully insulated clamp handles.

Vehicles with hybrid drive cannot be used for jump-starting.

### Safety information

#### DANGER

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.◀

#### WARNING

If the jumper cables are connected in the incorrect order, sparking may occur. There is a risk of injury. Pay attention to the correct order during connection.◀



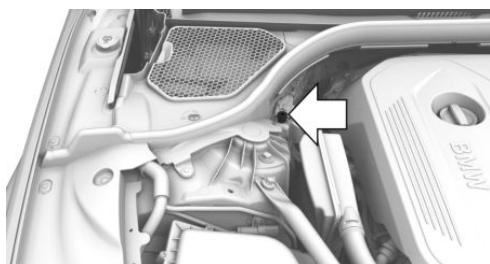
## NOTE

In the case of body contact between the two vehicles, a short circuit can occur during jump-starting. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that no body contact occurs.◀

## Preparation

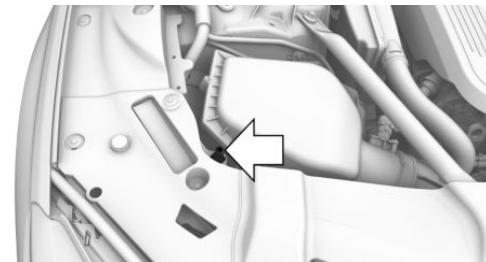
1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 volts. The voltage information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any electronic systems/power consumers in both vehicles.

## Starting aid terminals



The starting aid terminal in the engine compartment acts as the battery's positive terminal.

Open the cover of the starting aid terminal.



A special nut serves as the negative terminal of the battery.

## Connecting the cables

Before you begin, switch off all unnecessary electronic systems/power consumers, such as the radio, on the assisting and receiving vehicle.

1. Open the cover of the starting aid terminal.
2. Attach one terminal clamp of the positive jumper cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the terminal clamp on the other end of the cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle to be started.
4. Attach one terminal clamp of the negative jumper cable to the negative terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of assisting vehicle.
5. Attach the second terminal clamp to the negative terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

## Establishing drive-ready state

1. Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and let it run for several minutes at an increased idle speed.
2. Establish the drive-ready state for the vehicle to be started as usual.

If the first starting attempt is not successful, wait a few minutes before making another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.

3. Disconnect the jumper cables in the reverse order.

Check the battery and recharge, if needed.

## Tow-starting and towing

### Safety information

#### **WARNING**

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of an accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.◀

### Transporting the vehicle

#### General information

The vehicle is not permitted to be towed.

### Safety information

#### **NOTE**

The vehicle can be damaged when towing the vehicle with a single lifted axle. There is a risk of property damage. The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.◀

#### **NOTE**

The vehicle can become damaged when lifting and securing it.

There is a risk of damage to property.

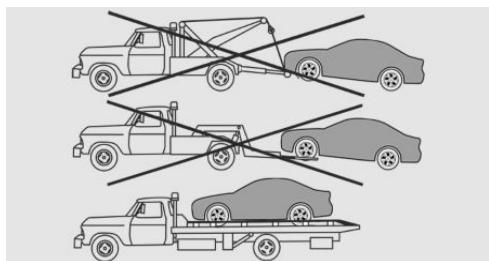
- ▶ Lift the vehicle using suitable means.
- ▶ Do not lift or secure the vehicle by its tow fitting, body parts, or suspension parts.◀

### Pushing the vehicle

To remove a broken-down vehicle from the danger area, it can be pushed for a short distance.

Roll or push, refer to page 123, the vehicle.

### Tow truck



The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.

### Towing other vehicles

#### General information

Switch on the hazard warning system, depending on local regulations.

If the electrical system has failed, clearly identify the vehicle being towed by placing a sign or a warning triangle in the rear window.

### Safety information

#### **WARNING**

If the approved gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is lighter than the vehicle to be towed, the tow fitting can tear off or it will not be possible to control the vehicle's response. There is a risk of an accident! Make sure that the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is heavier than the vehicle to be towed.◀

#### **NOTE**

If the tow bar or tow rope is attached incorrectly, damage to other vehicle parts can occur. There is a risk of property damage. Correctly attach the tow bar or tow rope to the tow fitting.◀

### Tow bar

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles.

Should it prove impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an offset angle, please observe the following:

- ▷ Maneuvering capability is limited going around corners.
- ▷ The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is secured with an offset.

## Tow rope

When starting to tow the vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

Use nylon ropes or straps, which will enable the vehicle to be towed without jerking.

## Tow fitting

### General information



The screw-in tow fitting should always be carried in the vehicle.

The tow fitting can be screwed in at the front or rear of the vehicle.

The tow fitting is found in the onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page [324](#).

- ▷ Use only the tow fitting provided with the vehicle and screw it all the way in.
- ▷ Use the tow fitting for towing on paved roads only.
- ▷ Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, for instance do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting.

## Safety information



### NOTE

If the tow fitting is not used as intended, there may be damage to the vehicle or to the tow fitting. There is a risk of damage to property. Observe the notes on using the tow fitting.◀

## Screw thread for tow fitting



Press on the mark on the edge of the cover to push it out.

## Tow-starting

Do not tow-start the vehicle.

Start the engine by jump-starting, refer to page [330](#), if possible.

Have the reasons for the starting difficulties corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

# Care

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

## Washing the vehicle

### General information

Regularly remove foreign objects such as leaves in the area below the windshield when the hood is raised.

Wash your vehicle frequently, particularly in winter. Intense soiling and road salt can damage the vehicle.

### Steam blaster and high-pressure washer

#### Safety information



**NOTE** When cleaning with high-pressure washers, components can be damaged due to the pressure or temperatures being too high. There is a risk of property damage. Maintain sufficient distance and do not spray too long continuously. Follow the operating instructions for the high-pressure washer.◀

### Distances and temperature

- ▶ Maximum temperature: 140 °F/60 °C.
- ▶ Minimum distance from sensors, cameras, seals: 12 in/30 cm.

- ▶ Minimum distance from glass sunroof: 31.5 in/80 cm.

### Automatic vehicle washes

#### Safety information



#### NOTE

Improper use of automatic vehicle washes can cause damage to the vehicle. There is a risk of damage to property. Follow the following instructions:

- ▶ Give preference to cloth vehicle washes or those that use soft brushes in order to avoid paint damage.
- ▶ Avoid vehicle washes with guide rails higher than 4 in/10 cm to avoid damage to the chassis.
- ▶ Observe the tire width of the guide rail to avoid damage to tires and rims.
- ▶ Fold in exterior mirrors to avoid damage to the exterior mirrors.
- ▶ Deactivate the wiper and, if necessary, rain sensor to avoid damage to the wiper system.◀

### Driving into a vehicle wash with a Steptronic transmission

#### Safety information



#### NOTE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. There is a risk of property damage. Do not switch standby state off in vehicle washes.◀

#### General information

In a vehicle wash, the vehicle must be able to roll freely.

Roll or push the vehicle, refer to page 123.

Some vehicle washes do not permit persons in the vehicle. The vehicle cannot be locked from the outside when in selector lever position N. A signal sounds when an attempt is made to lock the vehicle.

## Driving out of a vehicle wash

Make sure that the remote control is in the vehicle.

Switch on drive-ready state, refer to page 109.

## Headlights

Do not rub wet headlights dry and do not use abrasive or acidic cleaning agents.

Soak areas that have been dirtied, for instance from insects, with shampoo and wash off with water.

Thaw ice with de-icing spray; do not use an ice scraper.

## After washing the vehicle

After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them; otherwise, braking action can be reduced. The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Completely remove all residues on the windows, to minimize loss of visibility due to smearing and to reduce wiper noises and wiper blade wear.

# Vehicle care

## Vehicle care products

### General information

BMW recommends using vehicle care and cleaning products from BMW. Suitable care products are available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Safety information

### WARNING

Cleansers can contain substances that are dangerous and harmful to your health. There is a risk of injury. When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows. Only use products intended for cleaning vehicles. Follow the instructions on the container.◀

## Vehicle paint

### General information

Regular care contributes to driving safety and value retention. Environmental influences in areas with elevated air pollution or natural contaminants, such as tree resin or pollen can affect the vehicle's paintwork. Tailor the frequency and extent of your vehicle care to these influences.

Aggressive substances such as spilled fuel, oil, grease or bird droppings, must be removed immediately to prevent the finish from being altered or discolored.

### Matte finish

Only use cleaning and care products suitable for vehicles with matte finish.

### Leather care

Remove dust from the leather regularly, using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Otherwise, particles of dust and road grime chafe in pores and folds, and lead to increased wear and premature degradation of the leather surface.

To guard against discoloration, such as from clothing, clean leather and provide leather care roughly every two months.

Clean light-colored leather more frequently because soiling on such surfaces is substantially more visible.

Use leather care products; otherwise, dirt and grease will gradually break down the protective layer of the leather surface.

## Upholstery material care

### General information

Vacuum the upholstery regularly with a vacuum cleaner.

If upholstery is very dirty, e.g., with beverage stains, use a soft sponge or microfiber cloth with a suitable interior cleaner.

Clean the upholstery down to the seams using large sweeping motions. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.

### Safety information

#### NOTE

Open Velcro® fasteners on articles of clothing can damage the seat covers. There is a risk of property damage. Ensure that any Velcro® fasteners are closed.◀

## Caring for special components

### Light-alloy wheels

When cleaning the vehicle, use only neutral wheel cleaners having a pH value from 5 to 9. Do not use abrasive cleaning agents or steam jets above 140 °F/60 °C. Follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Aggressive, acidic or alkaline cleaning agents can destroy the protective layer of adjacent components, such as the brake disc.

After cleaning, apply the brakes briefly to dry them. The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

### Chrome surfaces

Carefully clean components such as the radiator grille or door handles with an ample supply of water, possibly with shampoo added, partic-

ularly when they have been exposed to road salt.

## Rubber components

Environmental influences can cause surface soiling of rubber parts and a loss of gloss. Use only water and suitable cleaning agents for cleaning.

Treat especially worn rubber parts with rubber care agents at regular intervals. When cleaning rubber seals, do not use any silicon-containing vehicle care products in order to avoid damage or noises.

## Fine wood parts

Clean fine wood facing and fine wood components only with a moist rag. Then dry with a soft cloth.

### Kenaf

Only treat parts made of Kenaf fibers using suitable care products.

## Plastic components

#### NOTE

Cleansers that contain alcohol or solvents, such as lacquer thinners, heavy-duty grease removers, fuel, or such, can damage plastic parts. There is a risk of property damage. Clean with a microfiber cloth. Dampen cloth lightly with water.◀

Plastic components are e.g.:

- ▷ Imitation leather surfaces.
- ▷ Roofliner.
- ▷ Light lenses.
- ▷ Matt black spray-coated components.
- ▷ Painted parts in the car's interior.

Clean with a microfiber cloth.

Dampen cloth lightly with water.

Do not soak the roofliner.

## Safety belts



### WARNING

Chemical cleansers can destroy the safety belt webbing. Missing protective effect of the safety belts. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Use only a mild soapy solution for cleaning the safety belts.◀

Dirty belt straps impede the reeling action and thus have a negative impact on safety.

Use only a mild soapy solution for cleaning the installed belt straps.

Do not retract the safety belts until they are dry.

## Carpets and floor mats



### WARNING

Objects in the driver's floor area can limit the pedal distance or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of an accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's floor area. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, for instance for cleaning.◀

The floor mats can be removed from the car's interior for cleaning.

If the floor carpets are very dirty, clean with a microfiber cloth and water or a textile cleaner. To prevent matting of the carpet, rub back and forth in the direction of travel only.

## Sensor/camera lenses

To clean sensors and camera lenses, use a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass detergent.

## Displays, screens, and protective glass of the Head-Up Display



### NOTE

Chemical cleansers, moisture or fluids of any kind can damage the surface of displays and screens. There is a risk of property damage. Clean with a clean, antistatic microfiber cloth.◀



### NOTE

The surface of displays can be damaged with improper cleaning. There is a risk of property damage. Avoid pressure that is too high and do not use any scratching materials.◀

Clean with a clean, antistatic microfiber cloth.

Clean the protective glass of the Head-up Display, refer to page 147, using a microfiber cloth and commercially available dish-washing soap.

## Long idle times and long-term vehicle storage

### Concept

For idle phases that last several weeks, park the vehicle with a fully charged battery if possible.

Do not park the vehicle for longer than 14 days if the electric range is exhausted.

With storage times of up to three months, if possible plug the vehicle into a compatible power source or park it in a nearly fully charged state.

### General information

Your dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop can advise you on what to consider when storing the vehicle for longer than three months.

## Safety information



### NOTE

The high-voltage battery can be damaged by excessive discharge. There is a risk of property damage. Before storing the vehicle for an extended period, ensure that the high-voltage battery is fully charged. During the idle period, connect the vehicle to a charging station at a compatible charging location. If necessary, the high-voltage battery will be charged automatically. Make sure that the charging process takes place. Regularly check the charge state.

Do not allow the vehicle to sit idle for longer than three months with a charge state below approx. 50 %.◀





## Reference

This chapter contains the technical data and an index that will quickly take you to the information you need.

# Technical data

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due

to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

## General information

The technical data and specifications in this Owner's Manual are used as guidance values. The vehicle-specific data can deviate from this, e.g., due to the selected special equipment, country version or country-specific measurement method. Detailed values can be found in the approval documents, on labels on the vehi-

cle or can be obtained from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

The information in the vehicle documents always has priority over the information in this Owner's Manual.

## Dimensions

The dimensions can vary depending on the model version, equipment or country-specific measurement method.

The specified heights do not take into account attached parts, e.g., a roof antenna, roof racks

or spoiler. The heights can deviate, e.g., due to the selected special equipment, tires, load and chassis version.

### BMW 7 Series Sedan

Width with mirrors	inches/mm	85.4/2,169
Width without mirrors	inches/mm	74.9/1,902
Height	inches/mm	57.8/1,467
Height L-models	inches/mm	58.2/1,479
Length	inches/mm	201.1/5,108
Length L-models	inches/mm	206.6/5,248
Wheelbase	inches/mm	120.9/3,070
Wheelbase L-models	inches/mm	126.4/3,210

## BMW 7 Series Sedan

Smallest turning radius diam.	ft/m	41.1/12.5
Smallest turning radius diam. L-models	ft/m	42.0-42.4/12.8-12.9

## Weights

## 740Le xDrive iPerformance

Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs/kg	5,904/2,678
Load	lbs/kg	899/408
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	2,690/1,220
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	3,300/1,497
Approved roof load capacity	lbs/kg	100/45

## Capacities

	US gal/liters	Notes
Fuel tank, approx.	12.1/46.0	Fuel quality, refer to page 288

# Appendix

Any updates to the Owner's Manual of the vehicle are listed here.

## Updates made after the editorial deadline

These chapters of the printed Owner's Manual contain updates made after the editorial deadline.

- ▷ Information: vehicle identification number, refer to page 12.
- ▷ Safety: approach control warning with braking function, refer to page 162.
- ▷ PDC Park Distance Control: emergency braking function, refer to page 207.

## License Texts and Certifications

The following applies in addition to the radio transmission license texts of the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

### Remote Control

#### Argentina

Titular: APPROVE - IT S.A.

CUIT/CUIL: 30-71193155-0

Expediente: EXPAPFTIC 1986/2015

Tipo de Equipo: TRANSCEPTOR PORTATIL

Número de Inscripción: C-15097

Marca: VALEO

Modelo: ID2A

Disposición: 544 DINAPTIC 2015

Vigencia Desde: 13/11/2015

Hasta: 13/11/2018

#### Bahrain

Authority	DLM/	J: 0000002186
Refer- ence	0000001249	P: 0000000039
	Reference no.:	S: 0000000039
0000001572		
Date of Grantee	07/05/15	
Name of Grantee	BATEC Villa #1279, Road #3327, Block #332 Mahooz, Kingdom of Bahrain	
Manufactured by	Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance Europarc -76 rue Auguste Perret F-94046 CRETEIL FRANCE	
Model/ Type/No.	ID 2A	
Equip- ment De- scription	Car Smart Key "ID-Geber"	
Frequen- cies/ Fre- quency Bands	ch1: 433.20 MHz, ch2: 434 MHz	
Output Power	-15.92 dBm	
Emission	FSK	
Remarks	—	
Validity	06/05/2018	

**Brazil**

ANATEL: 2901-15-8605

Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.

**China**

CMIIT ID: 2015DJ3039

**Egypt**

TAC.02081510322.WIR

**TYPE APPROVAL CERTIFICATE**

This is to certify that the product VALEO ID2A has been approved by NTRA to the following standards & conditions:

Certificate Holder: VALEO COMFORT AND DRIVING ASSISTANCE

Product Description: RKE/ ENGINE START UNIT

Brand: VALEO

Model: ID2A

Manufacturer: VALEO COMFORT AND DRIVING ASSISTANCE

Country of Origin: France

Standards: EN300 220-1/-2, EN301 489-1/-3, EN60950-1

Issue Date: 09. August 2015

**Europe****Remote control****Čeština**

Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance tímto prohlašuje, že tento ID2A je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími príslušnými ustanoveními smernice 1999/5/ES.

**Hrvatski**

Ovime, Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance izjavljuje da je model ID2A je u skladu sa osnovnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

**Dansk**

Undertegnede Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr ID2A overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

**Deutsch**

Hiermit erklärt Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance, dass sich das Modell ID2A in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.

**Eesti**

Käesolevaga kinnitab Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance seadme ID2A vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud dir-

ektiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.

### English

Hereby, Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance, declares that the model ID2A is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

### Español

Por medio de la presente Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance declara que ID2A cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.

### Ελληνικά

Με την παρουσία Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance δηλώνει οτι ID2A συμμορφωνεται προς τις ουσιωδεισ απαιτησεις και τις λοιπεσ σχετικεσ διαταξεις τησ οδηγιασ 1999/5/EK.

### Français

Par la présente Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance déclare que les appareils modèle ID2A sont conformes aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.

### Italiano

Con la presente Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance dichiara che questo ID2A è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.

### Latviski

Ar šo Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance deklarē, ka ID2A atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.

### Lietuvių

Šiuo Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance deklaruoja, kad šis ID2A atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.

### Nederlands

Hierbij verklaart Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance dat het toestel ID2A in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.

### Malta

Hawnhekk, Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance, jiddikkjara li dan ID2A jikkonforma mal-ħtiġiġiet esenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.

### Magyar

Alulírott, Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance nyilatkozom, hogy a ID2A megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.

### Polski

Niniejszym Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance oświadcza, że ID2A jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.

### Português

Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance declara que este ID2A está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Diretiva 1999/5/CE.

### Slovensko

Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance izjavlja, da je ta ID2A v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.

### Slovensky

Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance týmto vyhlasuje, že ID2A splňa základné požiadavky a

všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.

### Suomi

Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance vakuuttaa täten että ID2A tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.

### Svenska

Hämed intygar Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance att denna ID2A står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

### Íslenska

Hér með lýsir Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance yfir því að ID2A er í samræmi við grunnrör og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.

### Norsk

Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance erklærer herved at utstyret ID2A er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

### Hong Kong

Name & Address of Certificate Holder: Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance Europarc –76 rue Auguste Perret, F-94046 CRETEIL, FRANCE

Name & Address of Manufacturer: Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance Europarc –76 rue Auguste Perret, F-94046 CRETEIL, FRANCE

#### Equipment information

- ▷ Type of Equipment: Short Range Device (433Mhz Band)
- ▷ Brand name: Valeo
- ▷ Model number: ID2A
- ▷ Trade name: N/A

Specification/ Issue date: HKTA 1061 Issue 1 (May 2011)

Certification Number: HK0021500093

### India

No. J — 22022/176/2015-RLO(NR)/1625

Date: 30/10/2015

EQUIPMENT TYPE APPROVAL (No. NR-ETA/3148)

This Equipment Type Approval Certificate is hereby granted for the under mentioned devices / equipments with the following parameters / conditions:

1 Equipment	Transmitter Smart Key
2 Model No.	ID2A
3 Manufactured by	Valeo comfort and Driving Assistance, Europe
4 Frequency Range (in MHz)	433–434 MHz
5 Max Output Power (EIRP)	-15.92 dBm
6 Type of Modulation	FSK
7 Name of Grantee	Vincular Testing Labs India Pvt. Ltd.
8 Remarks	Nil

### Indonesia

41159I/SDPPI/2015

5153

Date of issue: 14/07/2015

### Israel

ID2A : (ידא) Model name

: (שם הייצור וכותבתו) Manufacturer and address

Valeo Comfort and Driving

**Japan**

209-LSD029

This is to certify that the above-mentioned certification by type has been granted in accordance with the provisions of Article 38-24, Paragraph 1 of the Radio Law.

**Kuwait**

Ref: 2410

Issue Date: 19/05/2015

Applicant: Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance Europarc -76 rue auguste Perret F-94046 CRETEIL/ FRANCE

Manufactuer: Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance Europarc -76 rue auguste Perret F-94046 CRETEIL/ FRANCE

Equipment Description: The Smart Key (ID-Geber)

Model: ID2A

Frequency: 433.20 – 434.64 Mhz

Power output: Less than 10 mW

**Malaysia**

RAAU/18C/0615/S (15-1996)

**Mexico**

CERTIFICADO DE HOMOLOGACION

Clase: PROVISIONAL

Número: RCPVAID15-1456

Vigencia: 24 de agosto de 2016

**Morocco**

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC

Numéro d'agrément: MR 10533 ANRT 2015

Date d'agrément: 29/06/2015

**Namibia**

TELECOMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT  
TYPE APPROVAL NUMBER

TA-2106/793

The Communications Regulatory Authority of Namibia, in the exercise of powers conferred upon it by the Communications Act No. 8 of 2009, the Regulations in respect of Type Approval and Technical Standards for Telecommunications Equipment and such conditions as have been and may be imposed from time to time hereby issues a Telecommunications Equipment Type Approval Certificate in respect of the equipment listed below and in the name of the following Entity / person whose name and particulars are listed below:

**ENTITY / PERSON PARTICULARS**

Name: Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance  
Street Address: 76 Rue Auguste Perret, 94046 Creteil, France

Telephone Number: +33 1 48 8457 14

Facsimile Number: +N/A

Registration Number: 017 251 067 RCS CRETEIL

**DESCRIPTION OF TELECOMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT**

Category: Access Control (including door and gate openers)

Model: ID2A

Frequency Range: 433.2 MHz

ITU Emission Code: F1D

Modulation: FSK

Channel Spacing: N/A

Power Output: 0.03 mW

Features: Smart Key

**Oman**

OMAN TRA

Aproval number: TRA/TA-R/2583/15

Applicant number: D080134

Mode Name/No.: ID2A

ISM Frequency Band: 433.05 – 434.79 Mhz

Max. Radiated Power/ Field Strength: 10 mW  
EIRP or 94.8 dBuV/m at 10 m

SRD/LPD usage: Car Key

Date of Registration: 12 MAY 2015

Date of Expiry: 30 APRIL 2020

**Philippines**TYPE ACCEPTANCE CERTIFICATE:  
ESD-1511132C**South Africa****Qatar**

Approval Ref: CRA/SA/2015/R-4797

TA-2015/543

APPROVED

**Saudi Arabia**

Certificate No: TA 30042015-30042016-7326

Applicant: CETECOM ICT Services GmbH

Issue Date: 30/04/2015

Validity Period: 30/04/2016

Product Name: ID-Geber

Product model: ID2A

Manufacturer: Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance Systems

Operating Frequency: 433.20 MHZ:-15.92 Watt

Maximum Output Power allowed (EIRP):  
433.64–434.64 MHZ:-15.92 Watt

Device comply with CITEC technical Specification No.: RI054



MSIP-CRM-VCD-ID2C

Trade Name or Applicant: VALEO COMFORT AND DRIVING ASSISTANCE

Equipment name: 특정소출력 무선기기(데이터 전송용 무선기기)

Basic Model Number: ID2C

Cetification No.: MSIP-CRM-VCD-ID2C

Manufacturer and Country of origin: VALEO COMFORT AND DRIVING ASSISTANCE/ 프랑스

**Singapore**

Registration Number: N1533-15

Brand/Trade Name: VALEO

Date of Certification: 2015-09-21

It is verified foregoing equipment has been certificated under the Clause 2, Article 58-2 of Radio Waves Act.

## Taiwan



CCAE15LP2230T9

## UAE

TRA REGISTERED No: ER40670/15

Name of Registered Dealer: VALEO COMFORT AND DRIVING ASSISTANCE

## Ukraine



109

## USA, Canada

### For US & Canada owners only

The transmitter unit and receiver comply with part 15 of the FCC/Federal Communication Commission regulations. and with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is governed by the following:

For Transmitter:

FCC ID: N5F-ID2A

IC: 3248A-ID2A

### Compliance statement:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s).

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any unauthorized modifications or changes to these devices could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

### Pour les propriétaires au Canada seulement:

L'unité émetteur et le récepteur sont conformes à la partie 15 des règlements de la Commission FCC / Federal Communication. et avec Industrie Canada exempts de licence standard RSS (s). Le fonctionnement est régi comme suit :

Pour l'émetteur:

FCC ID: N5F-ID2A

IC: 3248A-ID2A

### Déclaration de conformité:

Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

- (1) l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et
- (2) l'utilisateur de l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement

**Side Radar Sensor****Malaysia**

HIDF15000171

Approval #: E 030680

# Everything from A to Z

## Index

### A

ABS, Antilock Brake System [188](#)  
Accessories and parts [8](#)  
Accident Assistance [328](#)  
Accident prevention, see Active Protection [185](#)  
Accident, what to do [330](#)  
ACC, see Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function [195](#)  
Acoustic pedestrian protection [113](#)  
AC quick charging cable, see Level 2 charging cable [278](#)  
Activated-charcoal filter [232](#)  
Active Blind Spot Detection [178](#)  
Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function, ACC [195](#)  
Active damping control, see Dynamic Damping Control [227](#)  
Active Guard, see Intelligent Safety [160](#)  
Active Protection [185](#)  
Active seat ventilation [103](#)  
Active Steering, integral [190](#)  
Adaptive brake assistant [188](#)  
Adaptive brake lights, see Brake force display [185](#)  
Adaptive Light Control [151](#)  
ADAPTIVE, see Driving Dynamics Control [126](#)  
Additives, engine oil types [318](#)  
Advance climate control, see Stationary climate control [239](#)  
Airbags [157](#)  
Airbags, indicator/warning light [159](#)  
Air circulation, see Recirculated-air mode [230](#)  
Air conditioning [229](#)  
Air, dehumidifying, see Air conditioning [229](#)  
Air distribution, manual [231](#)  
Air flow, automatic climate control [231](#)  
Air outlets, see Ventilation [232](#)  
Air pressure, tires [290](#)  
Air suspension [226](#)  
Alarm system [78](#)  
Alarm, unintentional [79](#)  
Alertness assistant [186](#)  
All-season tires, see Winter tires [296](#)  
All-wheel-drive, see xDrive [190](#)  
Ambient air package [235](#)  
Ambient highlight [155](#)  
Ambient light [154](#)  
Animal detection, see Night Vision [171](#)  
Antifreeze, see Washer fluid [121](#)  
Antilock Brake System, ABS [188](#)  
Anti-slip control, see DSC [188](#)  
Anti-theft protection, locking [61](#)  
Anti-theft protection, see Lug bolt lock [310](#)  
App, BMW Driver's Guide app [6](#)  
Apple CarPlay, connection to the vehicle [49](#)  
Approach control warning with City light braking function [162](#)  
Approach control warning with light braking function [162](#)  
Approved axle load [343](#)  
Apps, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)  
Armrest heating [102](#)  
Arrival time [143](#)  
Artificial engine noise, see Acoustic pedestrian protection [113](#)  
Ashtray [245](#)  
Ashtray, front [245](#)  
Ashtray, rear [245](#)  
Assistance for the combustion engine [114](#)  
Assistance when driving off, see Drive-off assistant [188](#)  
Assistance with breakdown [327](#)  
AUC Automatic Recirculating Air Control [230](#)  
Audio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)  
AUTO H button, see Parking brake [115](#)  
Automatic climate control [228](#)  
Automatic cruise control with Stop&Go function [195](#)  
Automatic Curb Monitor, exterior mirror [97](#)  
Automatic deactivation, Front-seat passenger airbags [159](#)

Automatic headlight control [150](#)  
 Automatic Hold, see Parking brake [115](#)  
 Automatic locking [77](#)  
 Automatic Recirculating Air Control AUC [230](#)  
 Automatic Soft Closing [74](#)  
 Automatic transmission, see Steptronic transmission [122](#)  
 Automatic unlocking [78](#)  
 Automatic vehicle wash [334](#)  
 AUTO program, automatic climate control [230](#)  
 AUTO program, intensity [230](#)  
 Auto Start/Stop function [110](#)  
 AUX-IN port, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)  
 Average speed and average fuel consumption [144](#)  
 Axle loads, weights [343](#)

## B

Backrest curvature, see Lumbar support [88](#)  
 Backrest, seats [86](#)  
 Backrest tilt [88](#)  
 Backrest, width [87](#)  
 Bandages, see First-aid kit [327](#)  
 Bar for tow-starting/towing [332](#)  
 Basic position, rear seats [89](#)  
 Battery, changing, remote control of the vehicle [63](#)  
 Battery, charge state indicator [131](#)  
 BATTERY CONTROL, electric driving [113](#)  
 Battery, disposing of [326](#)  
 Battery, vehicle [325](#)

Being towed, see Tow-starting and towing [332](#)  
 Belts, see Safety belts [91](#)  
 Beverage holder, see Cup holders [254](#)  
 Blocking, power window, see Safety switch [81](#)  
 Bluetooth connection [45](#)  
 Blu-ray, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)  
 BMW 360° ELECTRIC Portal, see Intelligent charging [282](#)  
 BMW Assist, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)  
 BMW display key [64](#)  
 BMW display key, malfunction [67](#)  
 BMW Driver's Guide app [6](#)  
 BMW eDRIVE, see Hybrid system [55](#)  
 BMW Gesture Control [32](#)  
 BMW maintenance system [322](#)  
 BMW Touch Command [38](#)  
 Bottle holder, see Cup holder [254](#)  
 Brake assistant [188](#)  
 Brake assistant, adaptive [188](#)  
 Brake discs, breaking in, see Brake system [264](#)  
 Brake force display [185](#)  
 Brake lights, brake force display [185](#)  
 Brake pads, breaking in, see Brake system [264](#)  
 Brake system [264](#)  
 Braking, information [266](#)  
 Breakdown assistance [327, 328](#)  
 Breakdown, see FTM Flat Tire Monitor [307](#)  
 Break-in [264](#)

Brightness, Control Display [42](#)  
 Bulbs, replacing, see Lights and bulb [325](#)  
 Buttons on the steering wheel [16](#)  
 Button, SOS, see Intelligent emergency call [329](#)  
 Button, Start/Stop [109](#)  
 Bypassing, see Jump-starting [330](#)

## C

Cable for tow-starting/towing [333](#)  
 Calendar, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)  
 California Proposition 65 Warning [8](#)  
 Calling up mirror adjustment [77](#)  
 Calling up seat adjustment [77](#)  
 Calling up steering wheel adjustment [77](#)  
 Camera-based assistance systems, see Intelligent Safety [160](#)  
 Camera-based cruise control, see Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function [195](#)  
 Camera lenses, care [337](#)  
 Camera, rearview camera, without Surround View [209](#)  
 Camera, see Surround View [211](#)  
 Can holder, see Cup holders [254](#)  
 Captain's Chair, see Executive Lounge Seating [100](#)  
 Care, Head-Up Display [337](#)  
 Care of displays, screens [337](#)  
 Care, see Washing the vehicle [334](#)

Care, vehicle 335  
Cargo area 256  
Cargo area, enlarging, cargo floor panel 259  
Cargo area, loading, see Stowing and securing cargo 257  
Cargo area, storage compartments 257  
Cargo, stowing and securing 257  
Cargo straps, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 257  
Carpet, care 337  
CarPlay, connection to the vehicle 49  
Car seats, see Transporting children safely 104  
Cartridge replacement, see Ambient air package 235  
Car wash 334  
Car washing 334  
Catalytic converter, see Hot exhaust system 265  
CBS Condition Based Service 322  
CD, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6  
Cell phone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6  
Center armrest 253  
Center console 18  
Central Information Display (CID), see Control Display 23  
Central locking system 69  
Central screen, see Control Display 23  
Changes, technical, see For Your Own Safety 8  
Changing parts 324  
Changing wheels 309  
Changing wheels/tires 295  
CHARGE, energy recovery 114  
Charge state indicator of the high-voltage battery 131  
Charging cable, storing, see Storage 278  
Charging cable, unlocking manually 279  
Charging screen 130  
Charging, see Charging the vehicle 276  
Charging, see Vehicle charging 276  
Charging status, see Display of the charging status 280  
Charging the battery, see Vehicle charging 276  
Charging the vehicle 276  
Charging the vehicle, see Vehicle charging 276  
Charging to save fuel 269  
Chassis number, see Vehicle identification number 12  
Check Control 134  
Checking the engine oil level electronically 316  
Checking the oil level electronically 316  
Children, seating position 104  
Children, transporting safely 104  
Child restraint system LATCH 106  
Child restraint systems, mounting 105  
Child restraint systems, see Transporting children safely 104  
Child safety locks 108  
Child seat, mounting 105  
Child seats, see Transporting children safely 104  
Chrome-plated surfaces, care 336  
Chrome surfaces, care 336  
Cigarette lighter 245  
Cigarette lighter, front 246  
Cigarette lighter, rear 246  
Cleaning displays, screens 337  
Cleaning, Head-Up Display 337  
Climate control 228  
Climate control windshield 265  
Clothes hooks 255  
Coasting 113  
Combination switch, see Turn signals 118  
Combination switch, see Washer/wiper system 118  
Comfort Access 69  
COMFORT PLUS, see Driving Dynamics Control 126  
COMFORT, see Driving Dynamics Control 126  
Communication, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6  
Comparison of entries, see Entry comparison 26  
Compartments in the doors 252  
Compatible devices, see Suitable devices 45  
Compressor 298  
Computer, see Onboard Computer in the instrument cluster 142  
Concierge Service, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6  
Condensation, removing from the windows 231  
Condensation water under the parked vehicle 267  
Condition Based Service CBS 322

Confirmation signal from the vehicle 77

ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6

Connecting device 44

Connecting electrical devices, see Sockets 247

Connecting, mobile devices 44

Connecting mobile phone 44

Connecting smartphone 44

Connecting telephone 44

Connections, Screen Mirroring 49

Contacts, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

Contact with water, hybrid system 57

Container for washer fluid 121

Continued driving with a flat tire 305, 308

Control Display 23

Control Display, settings 40

Controller 24

Control systems, driving stability 188

Convenient closing with the remote control 62

Convenient opening with the remote control 61

Coolant 320

Coolant level 320

Cooling, maximum 229

Cooling system 320

Cornering light 151

Corrosion on brake discs 266

Cosmetic mirror 244

Coupling, mobile devices, see Connections 44

Crossing traffic warning 223

Cruise control 192

Cruise control, active with Stop&Go function 195

Cruise control with distance control, see Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function 195

Cruise control without distance control, see cruise control 192

Cruising range 138

Cup holder 254

Cup holder, front 254

Cup holder, rear 255

Current fuel consumption, Onboard Computer 144

Cushions for the electric head restraints 95

**D**

Damage, tires 294

Damping control, dynamic 227

Data memory 9

Data protection, settings 43

Data, see Deleting personal data in the vehicle 43

Data, technical 342

Date 41

Daytime running lights 151

Deactivation of the hybrid system 57

Defogging the windows 231

Defrosting the windows 231

Dehumidifying, air 229

Deleting personal data 43

Departure times, stationary climate control 240

Destination distance 143

Device list, displaying 50

Devices, managing 50

Diagnosis connection 323

Digital clock 138

Dimensions 342

Dimmable exterior mirrors 97

Dimmable interior mirror 97

Direct dial buttons, see Programmable memory buttons 30

Direction indicator, see Turn signals 118

Display, engine temperature 145

Display in the windshield, see Head-up Display 147

Display key, malfunction 67

Display key, see BMW display key 64

Display lighting, see Instrument lighting 153

Displays 129

Displays and symbols 6

Displays, hybrid system 131

Displays, screens 337

Disposal, coolant 321

Disposal, vehicle battery 326

Distance control, see PDC 205

Distance to destination 143

Divided screen view, see Split screen 29

Door handle lighting, see welcome lights 150

Door lock, see Remote control 60

Drive-off assistant 188

Drive-off assistant, see DSC 188

Driver assistance, see Intelligent Safety 160

Drive-ready state, electric 109

Drive-ready state, engine start 109

Drive-ready state, idle state, and standby state 21

Driver profiles 74

Driver profiles, welcome screen 74

Driver's Guide app, see BMW Driver's Guide app 6

Driving Assistant, see Intelligent Safety **160**  
Driving comfort **226**  
Driving Dynamics Control **126**  
Driving instructions, break-in **264**  
Driving instructions, hybrid system **269**  
Driving mode, ECO PRO **270**  
Driving mode, see Driving Dynamics Control **126**  
Driving notes, general **264**  
Driving on racetracks **267**  
Driving stability control systems **188**  
Driving style analysis, ECO PRO **271**  
Driving tips **264**  
Driving with combustion engine, POWER **114**  
DSC Dynamic Stability Control **188**  
DTC Dynamic Traction Control **189**  
DVD, Video, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication **6**  
Dynamic Damping Control **227**  
Dynamic Stability Control DSC **188**  
Dynamic Traction Control DTC **189**

**E**

eASSIST, assistance for the combustion engine **114**  
eBOOST, assistance for the combustion engine **114**  
ECO PRO **270**  
ECO PRO driving style analysis **271**

ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL, see Driving Dynamics Control **126**  
ECO PRO, see Driving Dynamics Control **126**  
eDRIVE button **112**  
eDRIVE, see Hybrid system **55**  
Electric drive-ready state **109**  
Electric driving, BATTERY CONTROL **113**  
Electric driving, ePOWER **111**  
Electric driving, MAX eDRIVE **112**  
Electric sunroof, glass **82**  
Electronic oil measurement **316**  
Electronic Stability Program ESP, see DSC **188**  
e-mail, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication **6**  
Emergency Request **329**  
Emergency service, see Accident Assistance **328**  
Emergency service, see Breakdown assistance **328**  
Emergency service, see Roadside Assistance **327**  
Emergency unlocking, charging cable **279**  
Emergency unlocking, fuel filler flap **286**  
Emergency unlocking, tailgate **74**  
Emergency unlocking, transmission lock **125**  
Energy recovery, CHARGE **114**  
Energy savings, see Gear shift indicator **140**  
Engine, automatic Start/Stop function **110**  
Engine compartment **314**

Engine compartment, working in **314**  
Engine coolant **320**  
Engine noise, artificial, see Acoustic pedestrian protection **113**  
Engine oil **316**  
Engine oil, adding **317**  
Engine oil change **318**  
Engine oil filler neck **317**  
Engine oil types, suitable **318**  
Engine oil types to add **318**  
Engine start, jump-starting **330**  
Engine start, see drive-ready state **109**  
Engine stopping, see drive-ready state **109**  
Engine temperature display **145**  
Entering a destination, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication **6**  
Entering an address, navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication **6**  
Entertainment, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication **6**  
Entry comparison, navigation **26**  
ePOWER, electric driving **111**  
Equipment, interior **242**  
Error displays, see Check Control **134**  
ESP Electronic Stability Program, see DSC **188**  
Evasion assistance **166**  
Exchanging wheels/tires **295**  
Executive Lounge Seat-ing **100**  
Exhaustion warner **186**

Exhaust system 265  
 Exterior lighting during unlocking 61  
 Exterior lighting with the vehicle locked 62  
 Exterior mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor 97  
 Exterior mirror, automatic dimming feature 97  
 Exterior mirrors 96  
 Exterior mirrors, malfunction 96  
 External start 330  
 External temperature 138  
 Eyelet for towing 333  
 Eyes, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 257

**F**

Failure message, see Check Control 134  
 False alarm, see Avoiding unintentional alarms 79  
 Fan, see Air flow 231  
 Filler neck for engine oil 317  
 Finding charging stations, see Charging stations and points of interest, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6  
 Fine wood parts, care 336  
 First-aid kit 327  
 Flat tire, changing wheels 309  
 Flat tire, continued driving 305, 308  
 Flat tire message, FTM 307  
 Flat tire message, TPM 304  
 Flat Tire Monitor FTM 307  
 Flat tire, repairing 297  
 Flat tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 302  
 Flat tire warning light, FTM 307

Flat tire warning light, TPM 304  
 Flooding 265  
 Floor carpet, care 337  
 Floor mats, care 337  
 Fog, removing from the windows 231  
 Fold-away position of the wipers 120  
 Folding table in rear 249  
 Foot brake 266  
 For Your Own Safety 8  
 Fragrance cartridge, see Ambient air package 235  
 Fragrance, see Ambient air package 235  
 Fragrancing, see Ambient air package 235  
 Front airbags 157  
 Front center armrest 253  
 Front fog light, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 325  
 Front fog lights 153  
 Front lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 325  
 Front passenger seat, adjusting from the rear 90  
 Front passenger seat, adjusting, see Gentleman function 88  
 Front-seat passenger airbags, automatic deactivation 159  
 Front-seat passenger airbags, indicator lamp 160  
 Front seats 86  
 FTM Flat Tire Monitor 307  
 Fuel 288  
 Fuel cap 286  
 Fuel consumption display, Onboard Computer 144  
 Fuel filler flap 286  
 Fuel filler flap, unlocking manually 286  
 Fuel gauge 138  
 Fuel quality 288  
 Fuel recommendation 288

Fuel, tank capacity 343  
 Functions, hybrid system 55  
 Fuses 326

**G**

Garage door opener, see Integrated Universal Remote Control 242  
 Gasoline 288  
 Gear change, Steptronic transmission 122  
 Gear shift indicator 140  
 General driving notes 264  
 General settings 40  
 Gentleman function 88  
 Gesture Control 32  
 Gestures, see BMW Gesture Control 32  
 Glare shield, see Sun visor 244  
 Glare shield, sun visor 244  
 Glass sunroof, electric 82  
 Glass sunroof, initialize the system 85  
 Glove compartment 251  
 GPS geolocation, vehicle position 41  
 GPS, navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6  
 Gross vehicle weight, approved 343

**H**

Handbrake, see Parking brake 115  
 Hand-held transmitter, alternating code 243  
 Hands-free kit, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6  
 Hazard warning flashers 327

Head airbags 157  
Headlight control, automatic 150  
Headlight courtesy delay feature 150  
Headlight courtesy delay feature, switching on 62  
Headlight flasher 118  
Headlight glass 325  
Headlights, care 335  
Headlights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 325  
Head restraints, front 92  
Head restraints, rear 94  
Head-up Display 147  
Head-Up Display, care 337  
Head-up Display, see Memory function 98  
Heavy cargo, stowing cargo 257  
High-beam Assistant 151  
High beams 118  
High beams/low beams, see High-beam Assistant 151  
High-voltage battery, charge state indicator 131  
Hills 266  
Hill start assistant, see Drive-off assistant 188  
Holder for beverages, see Cup holders 254  
Homepage 6  
Hood 314  
Horn 16  
Hotel function, tailgate, see Locking separately 73  
Hot exhaust system 265  
Hotline, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6  
Humidity in the headlight, see Headlight glass 325  
Hybrid system, adapting to the course of the road 133  
Hybrid system, at a glance 55  
Hybrid system, automatic deactivation 57  
Hybrid system, contact with water 57  
Hybrid system, displays 131  
Hybrid system, safety 57  
Hybrid system, working on 57  
Hydroplaning 265

**I**

iBrake – PostCrash 186  
Ice warning, see External temperature 138  
Icy roads, see External temperature 138  
Identification marks, tires 292  
Identification number, see Vehicle identification number 12  
Idle state, standby state, and drive-ready state 21  
iDrive 23  
Ignition key, see Remote control 60  
Indicator/warning lights, see Check Control 134  
Individual air distribution 231  
Individual settings, see driver profiles 74  
Inductive charging, see Wireless charging, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6  
Inflation pressure monitor, see Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 302  
Inflation pressure, tires 290  
Inflation pressure warning FTM, tires 307  
Information 6  
Initialization, Flat Tire Monitor FTM 307

Initialize, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 303  
Instrument cluster 129  
Instrument lighting 153  
Integral Active Steering 190  
Integrated key 68  
Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle 53  
Integrated Universal Remote Control 242  
Intelligent charging 282  
Intelligent emergency call 329  
Intelligent Safety 160  
Intended use 8  
Intensity, AUTO program 230  
Interior equipment 242  
Interior lights 153  
Interior lights during unlocking 61  
Interior lights with the vehicle locked 62  
Interior mirror 96  
Interior mirror, automatic dimming feature 97  
Interior motion sensor 79  
Internet connection 48  
Internet hotspot 48  
Internet page 6  
Intersection warning, see Approach control warning with light braking function 162  
Interval display, see Service requirements 139  
Ionization, see Ambient air package 235

**J**

Jacking points for the vehicle jack 311  
Jam protection system, glass sunroof 84  
Jam protection system, windows 80

Joystick, Steptronic transmission [122](#)  
Jump-starting [330](#)  
Jump-starting terminals [331](#)

## K

Kenaf, care [336](#)  
Keyless Go, see Comfort Access [69](#)  
Key, mechanical [68](#)  
Key, see BMW display key [64](#)  
Kickdown, Steptronic transmission [122](#)  
Knee airbag [158](#)

## L

Label on recommended tires [295](#)  
Lane control assistant, see Steering and lane control assistant [201](#)  
Lane control assistant with active side collision protection, see Side collision warning [181](#)  
Lane departure warning [175](#)  
Lane threshold, warning [175](#)  
Language, setting on the Control Display [40](#)  
Laser headlights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs [325](#)  
Laser high beams [153](#)  
Lashing eyes in the cargo area [257](#)  
LATCH child restraint fixing system [106](#)  
Leather care [335](#)  
LED front fog light, replacing, see Lights and bulbs [325](#)  
LED headlights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs [325](#)  
LEDs, light-emitting diodes, replacing, see Lights and bulbs [325](#)

Letters and numbers, entering [26](#)  
Level 1 Charging [281](#)  
Level 1 charging cable [278](#)  
Level 2 charging cable [278](#)  
Light-alloy wheels, care [336](#)  
Light carpet, see welcome lights [150](#)  
Light control, adaptive [151](#)  
Light-emitting diodes, LEDs, replacing, see Lights and bulbs [325](#)  
Lighter, cigarettes [245](#)  
Lighting [149](#)  
Lighting, speakers [155](#)  
Light in the exterior mirror, see Active Blind Spot Detection [178](#)  
Light in the exterior mirror, see crossing traffic warning [223](#)  
Light replacement, see Lights and bulbs [325](#)  
Lights [149](#)  
Lights and bulbs [325](#)  
Light switch [149](#)  
List of all messages [42](#)  
Load [257](#)  
Loading [256](#)  
Location, vehicle position [41](#)  
Locking, automatic [77](#)  
Locking, settings [76](#)  
Locking using the remote control [61](#)  
Lock, lug bolts [310](#)  
Locks, child safety [108](#)  
Longer idle times and long-term vehicle storage [337](#)  
Long-term vehicle storage [337](#)  
Low beams [149](#)  
Low beams, automatic, see High-beam Assistant [151](#)  
Lower back support [88](#)  
Lug bolt lock [310](#)

Luggage rack, see Roof-mounted luggage rack [267](#)  
Lumbar support [88](#)

## M

Maintaining charge state, BATTERY CONTROL [113](#)  
Maintenance [322](#)  
Maintenance requirements, see Condition Based Service CBS [322](#)  
Maintenance, see Service requirements [139](#)  
Maintenance system, BMW [322](#)  
Make-up mirror [244](#)  
Malfunction, BMW display key [67](#)  
Malfunction displays, see Check Control [134](#)  
Malfunction, remote control [63](#)  
Manual air distribution [231](#)  
Manual air flow [231](#)  
Manual brake, see Parking brake [115](#)  
Manual mode, Steptronic transmission [122](#)  
Manual operation, fuel filler flap [286](#)  
Map update, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)  
Marking, run-flat tire [296](#)  
Massage seat, front [99](#)  
Massage seat, rear [99](#)  
Master key, see Remote control [60](#)  
Matte finish [335](#)  
MAX eDRIVE, electric driving [112](#)  
Maximum cooling [229](#)  
Maximum speed display, see Speed Limit Info [140](#)

Maximum speed of winter tires [296](#)  
Measurement, units of [41](#)  
Medical supplies, see First-aid kit [327](#)  
Memory function [98](#)  
Menu, instrument cluster, see Selection lists [142](#)  
Menus, operating, see iDrive [23](#)  
Messages [42](#)  
Messages, see Check Control [134](#)  
Microfilter [232](#)  
Minimum tread depth, tires [294](#)  
Mirror [96](#)  
Mirror, see Memory function [98](#)  
Mobile communication devices in the vehicle [265](#)  
Mobile devices, managing [50](#)  
Mobile phone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)  
Mobility System [297](#)  
Mode, ECO PRO [270](#)  
Modifications, technical, see For Your Own Safety [8](#)  
Monitor, see Control Display [23](#)  
Mounting of child restraint systems [105](#)  
MP3 player, see Audio, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)  
Multi-function hook [257](#)  
Multifunction steering wheel, buttons [16](#)  
Multimedia, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)

Music hard disk, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)

## N

Navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)  
Neck restraints, front, see Head restraints [92](#)  
Neck restraints, rear, see Head restraints [94](#)  
Neutral cleaner, see Light-alloy wheels [336](#)  
New wheels and tires [295](#)  
Night Vision device, see Night Vision [171](#)  
Night Vision with pedestrian and animal detection [171](#)  
Notes, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)  
No-touch opening and closing of the tailgate [71](#)  
Nylon rope for tow-starting/towing [333](#)

## O

OBD Onboard Diagnosis [323](#)  
Object detection, see Night Vision [171](#)  
Obstacle marking, rearview camera [211, 215](#)  
Octane rating, see Recommended fuel grade [289](#)  
Odometer and trip odometer [143](#)  
Officially use hybrid system [269](#)  
Oil [316](#)  
Oil, adding [317](#)  
Oil change [318](#)

Oil change interval, see Service requirements [139](#)

Oil filler neck [317](#)  
Oil types, suitable [318](#)  
Oil types to add, engine [318](#)  
Onboard Computer in the instrument cluster [142](#)

Onboard Computer on the Control Display [145](#)  
Onboard Diagnosis OBD [323](#)  
Onboard vehicle tool kit [324](#)  
Online Entertainment, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)  
Opening and closing [60](#)  
Operating concept, iDrive [23](#)  
Operating with the Controller [25](#)  
Operation via touchscreen [27](#)  
Outside air, see AUC [230](#)  
Overwintering, care [337](#)

## P

Paint, vehicle [335](#)  
Pairing, mobile devices, see Connections [44](#)  
Panic alarm, see Panic mode [79](#)  
Panic mode [79](#)  
Panorama View, see Surround View [211](#)  
Panoramic glass sunroof [82](#)  
Park Distance Control PDC [205](#)  
Parked vehicle ventilation, see Stationary climate control [239](#)  
Parking aid, see PDC [205](#)  
Parking assistant [218](#)  
Parking brake [115](#)  
Parking lights [149](#)  
Parking with Automatic Hold, see Parking brake [115](#)  
Parts and accessories [8](#)

Passenger's side mirror, tilting, see Automatic Curb Monitor, exterior mirror 97 Pathway lines, rearview camera 210, 214 PDC Park Distance Control 205 Pedestrian detection, see Night Vision 171 Pedestrian protection, acoustic 113 Performance display, see Sport displays 146 Personal data, deleting 43 Personal profile, see driver profiles 74 Person warning with City light braking function 168 Plastic parts, care 336 PostCrash – iBrake 186 POWER, driving with combustion engine 114 Power failure 326 Power sunroof, glass 82 Power windows 80 Prescribed engine oil types 318 Pressure monitor, see Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 302 Pressure, tire air pressure 290 Pressure warning FTM, tires 307 Profiles, see driver profiles 74 Programmable memory buttons, iDrive 30 Protective function, glass sunroof, see Jam protection system 84 Protective function, windows, see Jam protection system 80 Push-and-turn reel, see Controller 24

## Q

Queuing Assistant, see Steering and lane control assistant 201 Quick charging cable, see Level 2 charging cable 278

## R

Racetrack operation 267 Radiator fluid 320 Radio-operated key, see Remote control 60 Radio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6 Rain sensor 119 Rear automatic climate control 233 Rear axle steering, see Integral Active Steering 190 Rear center armrest 253 Rear collision prevention 184 Rear collision warning, see Rear collision prevention 184 Rear lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 325 Rear seat backrest tilt 90 Rear seats 89 Rear storage 253 Rear vanity mirror 97 Rearview camera, see Surround View 211 Rearview camera, without Surround View 209 Rear window defroster 232 Recirculated-air filter, see Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter 232 Recirculated-air mode 230 Recommended fuel grade 289 Recommended tire brands 295 Refueling 285 Regular charging 269 Remote 3D View 218 Remote control 60 Remote control, additional 63 Remote control for audio, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6 Remote control, integrated key 68 Remote control, loss 63 Remote control, malfunction 63 Remote control of the vehicle, changing the battery 63 Remote control, universal 242 Remote control with display, malfunction 67 Remote control with display, see BMW display key 64 Remote services, App, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6 Replacing parts 324 Replacing wheels/tires 295 Reporting safety malfunctions 12 RES CNCL button, see Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function 195 RES CNCL button, see Cruise control 192 Reserve warning, see Range 138 Reset, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 303 Retreaded tires 296 Roadside Assistance 327 Roadside Assistancee, see Breakdown assistance 328 Roadside Assistance, see Accident Assistance 328 Roadside parking lights 150

Roller sunblind, rear window 81  
Roller sunblinds, rear side windows 82  
Rolling code hand-held transmitter 243  
RON recommended fuel grade 289  
Roofliner 20  
Roof load capacity 343  
Roof-mounted luggage rack 267  
Rope for tow-starting/towing 333  
Route, navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6  
RSC Run-flat System Component, see Run-flat tires 296  
RTTI, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6  
Rubber components, care 336  
Run-flat tire 296

**S**

Safe braking 266  
Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and front passenger seat 92  
Safety belts 91  
Safety belts, care 337  
Safety belts, rear 92  
Safety locks, doors and windows 108  
Safety of the hybrid system 57  
Safety package, see Active Protection 185  
Safety switch, windows 81  
Safety systems, see Airbags 157

Safety systems, see Intelligent Safety 160  
Saving fuel 268  
Screen Mirroring, connection 49  
Screensaver 42  
Screen, see Control Display 23  
Screen tilt, adjusting 90  
Screwdriver, see Onboard vehicle tool kit 324  
Sealant, see Mobility System 297  
Seat and armrest heating 102  
Seat belts, see Safety belts 91  
Seat heating 102  
Seating position for children 104  
Seat, see Memory function 98  
Seats, front 86  
Seats, rear 89  
Seat ventilation, active 103  
Securing cargo 257  
Selection list in instrument cluster 142  
Selector lever, Steptronic transmission 122  
Self-leveling suspension, see Air suspension 226  
Self-supporting tires, see Run-flat tires 296  
Sensors, care 337  
Service and warranty 9  
Service Center, see Accident Assistance, see Accident Assistance 328  
Service requirements 139  
Service requirements, see Condition Based Service CBS 322  
Services, ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Manual for

Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6  
SET button, see Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function 195  
SET button, see Cruise control 192  
Set speed, see Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function 195  
Settings, locking/unlocking 76  
Settings on Control Display 40  
Shift paddles on the steering wheel 122  
Side airbag 157  
Side collision warning 181  
Side protection without Surround View 207  
Side protection with Surround View 215  
Signaling, horn 16  
Signals when unlocking, see Confirmation signals from the vehicle 77  
Sitting safely 86  
Size 342  
Ski and snowboard bag 260  
Slide/tilt glass roof, see Glass sunroof 82  
Smartphone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6  
Smoker's package 245  
SMS, see Short messages, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6  
SMS text message, supplementary 137  
Snow chains 301  
Socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis 323  
Sockets 247

Software update 51  
 SOS button, see Intelligent emergency call 329  
 Sound output, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6  
 Speaker lighting 155  
 Special equipment, see Vehicle features and options 7  
 Speed limit display, see Speed Limit Info 140  
 Speed Limit Info 140  
 Speed, see Average speed and average fuel consumption 144  
 Speed warning 146  
 Split screen 29  
 Sport displays 146  
 SPORT INDIVIDUAL, see Driving Dynamics Control 126  
 Sport program, Steptronic transmission 122  
 SPORT, see Driving Dynamics Control 126  
 Stability control systems 188  
 Standard charging cable, see Level 1 charging cable 278  
 Standard charging, see Level 1 Charging 281  
 Standard equipment, see Vehicle features and options 7  
 Standby state, idle state and drive-ready state 21  
 Start/stop, automatic function 110  
 Start/Stop button 109  
 Starting aid terminals 331  
 Starting, see drive-ready state 109  
 Starting the engine, see drive-ready state 109  
 Stationary climate control 239  
 Stations, AM/FM, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6  
 Status control display, tires 303  
 Status field symbols 30  
 Status information, iDrive 30  
 Status of Owner's Manual 7  
 Status, vehicle 146  
 Steering and lane control assistant incl. Traffic Jam Assist 201  
 Steering, see Integral Active Steering 190  
 Steering wheel, adjusting 97  
 Steering wheel, buttons 16  
 Steering wheel heating 98  
 Steering wheel, see Memory function 98  
 Steptronic transmission 122  
 Stopping the engine, see drive-ready state 109  
 Storage, charging cable 278  
 Storage compartment between the rear seats 253  
 Storage compartment in the center console 252  
 Storage compartments in the cargo area 257  
 Storage compartments, locations 251  
 Storage, tires 296  
 Storing the vehicle 337  
 Stowing and securing cargo 257  
 Straps for cargo, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 257  
 Suitable devices 45  
 Suitable mobile phones 45  
 Summer tires, tread 294  
 Sun visor 244  
 Sun visor, sliding 244  
 Supplementary SMS text message 137  
 Surface heating, see Seat and armrest heating 102  
 Surround View 211  
 Suspension settings, see Driving Dynamics Control 126  
 Switches, see Cockpit 16  
 Switch for driving dynamics, see Driving Dynamics Control 126  
 Symbols and displays 6  
 SYNC program, automatic climate control 231

## T

Table, see Folding table in the rear 249  
 Tablet 38  
 Tachometer 138  
 Tailgate 72  
 Tailgate, emergency unlocking 74  
 Tailgate, hotel function, see Locking separately 73  
 Tailgate, opening and closing with no-touch activation 71  
 Tailgate via remote control 62  
 Tail lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 325  
 Tank unlocking, see Tank vent 285  
 Tank vent 285  
 Technical changes, see For Your Own Safety 8  
 Technical data 342  
 Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6  
 Teleservices, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

Television, TV, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6  
Temperature, automatic climate control 229  
Temperature display, engine 145  
Temperature display, see External temperature 138  
Theft alarm system, see Alarm system 78  
Thermal camera, see Night Vision 171  
Thigh support 87  
Through-loading system 258  
Tilt alarm sensor 79  
Tilt, backrest 88  
Tilting the passenger's side mirror, see Automatic Curb Monitor, exterior mirror 97  
Time 40  
Time of arrival 143  
Tire brands, recommended 295  
Tire damage 294  
Tire identification marks 292  
Tire inflation pressure 290  
Tire inflation pressure monitor, see FTM Flat Tire Monitor 307  
Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 302  
Tire repair kit, see Mobility System 297  
Tires and wheels 290  
Tires, changing 295  
Tire sealant, see Mobility System 297  
Tires, run-flat 296  
Tire tread 294  
Tone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6  
Tool 324

Torque display, see Sport displays 146  
Total range, onboard computer 144  
Total vehicle weight 343  
Touch Command 38  
Touchpad 28  
Touchscreen 27  
Tow bar 332  
Tow fitting 333  
Towing 332  
Tow rope 333  
Tow-starting 332  
TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 302  
Traction control 189  
TRACTION, driving dynamics 189  
Traffic bulletins, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6  
Traffic Jam Assist, see Steering and lane control assistant 201  
Transmission lock, electronic unlocking 125  
Transmission, see Steptronic transmission 122  
Transporting children safely 104  
Travel information, see Onboard Computer on the Control Display 145  
Tray, see Folding table in the rear 249  
Tread, tires 294  
Trip computer 145  
Triple turn signal activation 118  
Trip odometer 143  
Trip recorder, see Trip odometer 143  
Trunk, emergency unlocking 74  
Trunk lid, see Tailgate 72

Turning radius lines, rearview camera 211, 215  
Turn signal, replacing bulbs, see Lights and bulbs 325  
Turn signals, high beams, headlight flasher 118  
TV, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

## U

Unintentional alarm, avoiding 79  
Units of measurement 41  
Universal remote control 242  
Unlock button, Steptronic transmission 122  
Unlocking, automatic 78  
Unlocking, settings 76  
Unlocking with the remote control 61  
Updates made after the editorial deadline 7  
Update, software 51  
Upholstery material care 336  
Upper backrest, front 87  
Upper backrest, rear 89  
USB connection 47  
USB interface, position in vehicle 248  
Used battery, disposing of 326  
Use, intended 8

## V

Vanity mirror 244  
Variable steering, see Integral Active Steering 190  
Vehicle battery 325  
Vehicle breakdown, see Breakdown assistance 327  
Vehicle, break-in 264  
Vehicle care 335  
Vehicle care products 335

Vehicle features and options [7](#)  
 Vehicle identification number [12](#)  
 Vehicle key, see Remote control [60](#)  
 Vehicle paint [335](#)  
 Vehicle position, vehicle location [41](#)  
 Vehicle status [146](#)  
 Vehicle wash [334](#)  
 Vehicle, washing [334](#)  
 Ventilation [232](#)  
 Venting, see Stationary climate control [239](#)  
 Venting, see Ventilation [232](#)  
 Vent, see Ventilation [232](#)  
 Video, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication [6](#)  
 VIN, see Vehicle identification number [12](#)  
 Vitality program [101](#)  
 Vitalization programs, see Vitality program [101](#)  
 Voice activation system [35](#)  
 Voice command response, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)

**W**

Warning/indicator lights, see Check Control [134](#)  
 Warning against cross traffic [223](#)  
 Warning light in the exterior mirror, see Active Blind Spot Detection [178](#)  
 Warning light in the exterior mirror, see crossing traffic warning [223](#)  
 Warning messages, see Check Control [134](#)  
 Warning triangle [327](#)

Warranty [8](#)  
 Washer fluid [121](#)  
 Washer nozzles, windshield [120](#)  
 Washer system [118](#)  
 Washing the vehicle [334](#)  
 Water, hybrid system [57](#)  
 Water on roads [265](#)  
 Water, see Condensation water under the parked vehicle [267](#)  
 Website [6](#)  
 Weights [343](#)  
 Welcome Light Carpet, see welcome lights [150](#)  
 Welcome light during unlocking [61](#)  
 Welcome lights [150](#)  
 Welcome screen, driver profiles [74](#)  
 Wheel cleaner, light-alloy wheels [336](#)  
 Wheels and tires [290](#)  
 Wheels, changing [295](#)  
 Wheels, see FTM Flat Tire Monitor [307](#)  
 WiFi connection [48](#)  
 Window defroster, rear [232](#)  
 Window, defrosting and de-fogging [231](#)  
 Windows, powered [80](#)  
 Windshield, climate control [265](#)  
 Windshield washer fluid, see Washer fluid [121](#)  
 Windshield washer nozzles [120](#)  
 Windshield washer system, see washer/wiper system [118](#)  
 Windshield wiper, see Wiper system [118](#)  
 Winter storage, vehicle [337](#)  
 Winter tires [296](#)  
 Winter tires, tread [294](#)  
 Wiper blades, replacing [324](#)

Wiper fluid, see Washer fluid [121](#)  
 Wiper, fold-away position [120](#)  
 Wiper, see Washer/wiper system [118](#)  
 Wiper system [118](#)  
 Wireless charging dock, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)  
 Wireless charging, see Wireless charging, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)  
 Wood parts, care [336](#)  
 Wordmatch principle, see Entry comparison [26](#)  
 Working on the hybrid system [57](#)  
 Wrench, see Onboard vehicle tool kit [324](#)

**X**

xDrive [190](#)



More about BMW

[bmwusa.com](http://bmwusa.com)



The Ultimate  
Driving Machine®

